



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

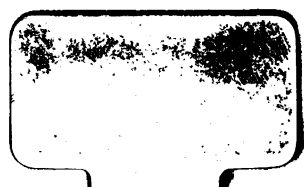
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

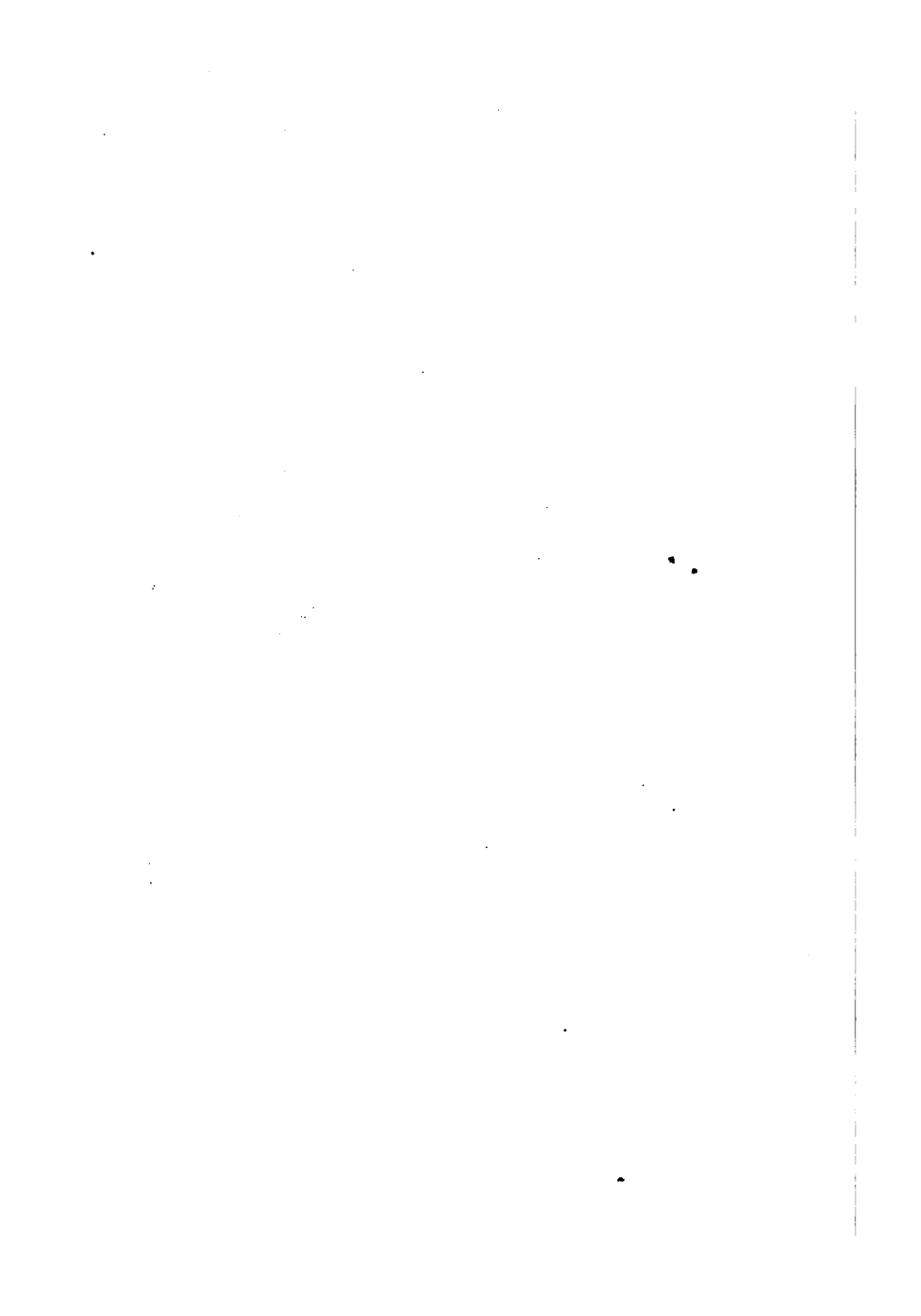
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

GERMAN GRAMMAR

T. H. WEISSE



Ente.



GRAMMAR

OF THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE,

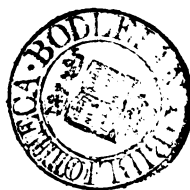
BASED ON ITS NATURAL RELATION TO THE ENGLISH,

FOR

SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDY

BY

T. HEINRICH WEISSE.



SECOND EDITION,

WITH IMPORTANT PRACTICAL IMPROVEMENTS.



WILLIAMS AND NORGATE,
14, HENRIETTA STREET, COVENT GARDEN, LONDON;
AND
20, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET, EDINBURGH.

1863.

~~500.2.199.~~
50350.2.2.

The following testimonial was prefixed to the first edition:
From SIR WILLIAM HAMILTON, Bart., *Professor of Logic and Metaphysics in the University of Edinburgh.*

Auchtertool, Fifeshire, September 21, 1855.

Dear Sir,—Your Grammar seems to me admirably calculated for the purpose of imparting a practical knowledge of the German Language. It is compendious and clear, embodying the most recent philological speculations; and, I happen to know, that when accompanied with your personal instructions, it has proved in all respects satisfactory to your pupils.

With best wishes for its well-merited success, I remain, Dear Sir,
very truly yours,

W. HAMILTON.

T. H. WEISSE, Esq.



PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THE author has had the satisfaction of finding that his first attempt to base the grammatical teaching of the German language on its only sound foundation, *viz.* the natural relation between English and German, has met with the most encouraging success. Although in fact little more than an outline, and restricted in a great degree to a local circulation, more than half of the large first edition of the present work has passed into the hands of other teachers. This circumstance as well as continued professional experience, has made the author anxious to develop his original plan by supplying its deficiencies and adding a vast amount of practical detail and illustration with the view of securing for the second edition a permanent position as a schoolbook. At the same time, he has wished to supply the want of a *complete* work of reference for that large class of admirers of the German language who desire to keep up by private study their familiarity with its grammatical forms. No one can be more earnestly persuaded than is the author of the peculiar advantages which the grammatical study of the German language offers as a mental discipline by calling into activity to the fullest extent the powers of observation and combination, and even developing these faculties where they have been neglected. But he is also convinced that to achieve such results, it is in no wise necessary to go beyond the compass of those studies by which a really practical understanding of the language is obtainable. The attempt to force upon the pupil such an imperfect abstract of logical speculation as appears in some translations of Becker's *Schulgrammatik*, (which was solely intended for Germans, see preface to the first edition), could not but have distracting effects, and render the true benefits of the study futile. The author, therefore, has made every effort to devise such means as should secure intellectual discipline, and at the same time effect in the most direct way what will always be the principal object of the pupil, the mastering of the language itself.

The true task of the writer of a German grammar for Englishmen is to make the reader fully alive to the analogies existing between the two languages and to bring them under comprehensive laws, even though these laws should be deduced from such features of the English as may

now exist only as indications of the common historical development of the sister tongues. There are indeed many such analogies, which only require to be properly introduced to render the study of the German language much more easy and interesting, and besides to bring into the strongest relief the points of absolute difference so that these also may be more readily comprehended. As long as even the best grammars followed more or less closely in the wake of German books for Germans, those great advantages were either entirely lost or appeared only as disconnected hints, scattered among the embarrassing complications of a foreign arrangement. It has been the author's unwavering aim to prevent this, and to bring into the greatest prominence those principles which are calculated to throw light on the nature and inward connection of forms common to the genius of both languages, and thus to redeem the labour even of the pupil of moderate capacity from the dire effects of dull formalism. In this respect very little has been done; for authors writing for Germans could not well be aware of the wants of the English student, and even modern philology had contributed almost nothing to the elimination of many features of the German language which must be of eminent interest to the English scholar, so that almost a new branch of science had to be developed, the establishment of which demanded no ordinary amount of labour and arduous inquiry. It may be interesting for the scholar to trace from the footnotes, which are exclusively for *his* use and which vindicate the author's proceedings, the extent to which these researches had to be carried. The author is painfully aware that in some cases he has been able to give only suggestions as to questions hitherto neither mooted nor explained. But he has taken care that only *indisputable facts*, and these only of the highest practical importance, have been received into the text. In what measure they affect the treatment of the various subjects, (especially of declension and construction), may be seen from the table of contents where these new features are indicated by the use of italics.

As to the use of the present work as a schoolbook, the author begs to direct attention to the following points. From reasons stated in the preface to the first edition, he objects to the introduction of *exercises* into the grammar, and he is quite convinced that, as the insight into this branch of education increases, the necessity for the strictest separation of grammar proper from the practical *method* will be universally recognized. Exercises should begin with the simplest complete sentences closely analogous to the English, and presenting nothing that cannot at once be mastered in all its grammatical bearings. Then each new paragraph should add, as a natural link, only one new feature, and this should be the one easiest to be comprehended by the pupil and forming the broadest basis for subsequent operations. No arrangement of the grammar can be invented to meet this incontrovertible theory of method, and the injury done by subjoining exercises to even a correct grammar is indeed much greater than that arising from treating too superficially a correct method of exercises. An unrivalled specimen of the latter the author still considers will be found in Dr. Ahn's New and

Easy Method &c. first course and in that author's *original, unimproved* publication only.

In the hands of the competent teacher who knows how to trace in the grammar every form of the language brought in its turn before the pupil, Dr. Ahn's first course will be a clear index of the portions of the grammar to be studied in succession by *beginners*, and the author trusts that in this respect the practical advantage of his tabular views, pp. 57, 66, 128, 179, 194, 199, 235 &c. and the facilities afforded for distinguishing between matter of immediate and matter of secondary importance by *large and small type* respectively, may meet with approbation. Besides the use of these tables it will be an easy task to recognize from the detailed *table of contents* what portions of the text are to be taken up in support of each exercise; the author will farther have the pleasure of publishing ere long a few pages of references for the use of the method in question in connection with his grammar. To so called 'Beginners grammars', which generally proceed on the principle of random omission, he has decided objections.

Advanced students on the other hand will find no difficulty in applying the present work to any favourite course of exercises by means of the detailed table of contents. By the extensive statement on the *idiomatical use of prepositions*, pp. 41—56, a means is offered to overcome one of the chief obstacles in acquiring fluency in German composition, whilst the completeness and concise arrangement of all the *lists*, as well as of the exposé of *pronunciation, accentuation and punctuation* pp. 1—36 should satisfactorily meet the wants of the private scholar, precluded from availing himself of the services of a German master.

The author has compiled this educational work under a sense of a serious responsibility, and — he may add — of high regard to the eminent talent and application with which the study of German is prosecuted in this country and to which he is happy to commit the new features of the book for rapid mastery.

6, HOWE STREET, EDINBURGH.
December, 1862.

TR. HEINRICH WEISSE.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

IN the following pages the Author has ventured to deviate from the system adopted in most recent German Grammars for the English. This he has done upon what he trusts will be found sufficient grounds. Such grammars being generally more or less faithful versions of Becker's Schulgrammatik, cannot, indeed, fail to afford correct information; but in retaining throughout an arrangement originally intended to enable the native to trace the historical and logical bearings of forms with which he is already familiar, they do not meet the requirements of the foreign, and particularly of the English pupil, whose first object must necessarily be to acquire, as speedily as possible, a practical acquaintance with the language. This object, the Author considers, can be most easily attained by making the natural relations of the German and the English the basis of the grammar. The Beckerian principle, he thinks, is properly applied in a great national grammar like that of Dr. Latham, but it fails to produce a good grammar for foreigners. The ordinary limits of English German Grammars do not admit of the full exposition of the historical etymology and logical syntax of Becker, and these are instructive only when studied in their entirety. The attempt to preserve the character of Becker's etymology, by introducing a few disconnected remarks upon the historical derivation of some of the forms, merely tends to bewilder the pupil; whilst his syntax, deprived of its integrity, shrinks to a mere tissue of classifications, definitions, and disquisitions, generally superfluous with students who have sense enough to distinguish between *because*, *if*, and *that*, and *how*, *when*, and *where*, and by no means so satisfactory as a few pages of plain rules on German composition. Further, the greatest attainable concentration of the information on each subject is a requisite for the English pupil not to be found in grammars compiled on the system of Becker, whose arrangement of matter was made not with a view to teach the forms of the language, but to illustrate them in their philosophical bearings. More especially with exercises attached to each section, such grammars must produce confusing and retarding effects, leading as they do to a system of blind anticipation of unexplained matter.

The Author would have hesitated to bring forward these apparently theoretical objections, were he not fully borne out by the doubtful and artificial success of the grammars alluded to, and by their obvious inability, after a trial of many years, to cope with the old empirical grammars; such, for example, as Tiark's, which, though greatly misleading, enjoys, on account of its more practical arrangement, a popularity which forces it upon many teachers who are fully alive to its defects. These considerations have guided the Author in the compilation of the present grammar. Setting aside Becker as a system, but carefully availing himself of every practical result of modern inquiry, he has aimed at making his little work contain neither more nor less than is actually requisite for a due interpretation of the German language. By a suitable combination of etymological and syntactical rules, he hopes to have facilitated the study of the various subjects, as well as the reference to them. The tables, he trusts, will enable the pupil to comprehend and to contrast at one glance what in other grammars he would find scattered over a number of pages. He has refrained from the use of abstruse grammatical terms, and has defined only those not generally familiar to the pupil. He has the pleasure of offering a new and simplified scheme of declensions in connexion with his observations on the accent as the result of an independent study. He has enlarged more fully than is usually done on forms of a peculiar application; as, for example, in the sections on the use of the cases, the participles, the use of the adverbs, and the conjunctive and conditional moods: Except the tables and the list of ancient verbs, the portions given in small print may be excluded from the beginner's course, but should be extensively referred to when prose reading is commenced. The plainest illustrations of each rule have been preferred to quotations from German literature. To the native these are, indeed, satisfactory, as given at length by Becker, but they become absurd and un instructive in such short fragments as can be offered in an English work of ordinary compass. As no grammatical arrangement can follow exactly the natural progress from the most simple to the more complex forms of a language, exercises have been excluded from the present work. Such a progressive course of exercises as that contained in the first part of "The New and Easy Method of Learning the German Language," by Dr. Ahn of Neuss, supported and rectified by the application of grammatical rules, should, however, the Author thinks, form the basis of the teacher's operations. In spite of its occasional imperfections, he begs to recommend Dr. Ahn's little work as truly ingenious in its simplicity.

EDINBURGH, 6, HOWE STREET,
May 1855.

H. WEISSE.

HISTORICAL REMARKS ON THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

ALL the European languages, except the Finnish, the Hungarian, and the Turkish, are of Indian origin, more or less closely related to the ancient Sanscrit, which is distinguished from the Mongolian languages by polysyllabic words, and an abundance of inflectional forms. The common Indian stock was developed into the greatest splendour and precision in the southern peninsulas of Europe (Greece and Italy). It shrunk in the northern (Scandinavian) peninsulas to guttural indistinctness. In the centre of Europe it settled in its greatest power and purity, famed and dreaded among the Romans about the beginning of our era as the language of the Germans or war-men. It not only maintained its independence whilst the Celtic languages sank under the dominion of the Latin, but it penetrated the regions of the latter, changing it into Italian, French, and Spanish, and expelling it from England. It drove back the Slavonic element from the vast territories between the Elbe and the Vistula, and extinguished the remains of the Celtic in the Alps. At a later period it settled in Prussia proper, in the Baltic provinces now possessed by Russia, and in Transylvania. With the most remarkable tenacity it has withstood all foreign influences, and is still progressing towards the South, East, and North. The German language, now spoken by nearly fifty millions of people, shewed itself first of all modern languages fit for the translation of the Bible, which appeared in the Gothic dialect A. D. 370. Earlier than any other it possessed prose, and reached a state of classical beauty and fulness in the middle ages. There is a German translation of the *Æneid* by Heinrich von Veldeke, as early as A. D. 1185. Though neglected for a time, German soon became the most powerful vehicle of the reformatory ideas of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Supported by the most persevering, extensive, and minute inquiry into the knowledge of the ancients, it has, since the middle of last century, again risen to a perfection in clearness, flexibility, and grace, which has made it pre-eminently the language of thought and taste. Its development has been altogether genuine. No foreign element has contributed to its formation; and, though occasionally borrowing words and terms from ancient and modern languages, it has mainly depended on the richness and facility of its own combinations, and such foreign words have never

formed an essential element in its composition. In its forms it perhaps requires more study than English, French, and other modern languages, but it appears more consistent than these, and less marked by arbitrary idiomatic peculiarities.

The Gothic German, drawing a little on Greek forms, was absorbed during the great commotions that filled Europe from the fourth to the middle of the seventh century. The dialect of the Franks who, about A. D. 500, established themselves in Gaul, where they came in contact with the civilisation and the creed of Rome, then took the lead, finding its chief promoter, and, indeed, its first grammarian, in Charlemagne (A. D. 800). Gradually freeing itself from Latin forms, this dialect was developed into what is termed the *old High-German* (*die althochdeutsche Sprache*). After Germany had renounced her connexion with France, however (A. D. 888), this Franconian dialect lost its superiority in both countries. A period remarkably favourable for the development of the noble and heroic, prepared by extensive classical studies in the monasterial schools, ensued for Germany under the auspices of the glorious race of the Hohenstaufen emperors (A. D. 1137-1254). Their native dialect, the Suabian or Alemanian, was employed in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries in immortal lyric and epic poems by emperors, princes, and nobles, known as the *Minnesänger*, by whom it was developed to a classical perfection. It is termed the *middle High-German* (*die mittelhochdeutsche Sprache*, i. e., *High-German* from the upper or mountainous regions of the south of Germany). But it ceased to be the leading dialect when the romantic spirit passed away. The *Nether-German* (*Niederdeutsch* or *Plattdeutsch*), the present sweet dialect of the rural population of the vast North-German plains and of the Netherlands, began to compete with the Suabian as a medium of literature, producing amongst other works the celebrated "Reynard the Fox." With the degeneracy of the leading institutions of the middle ages, chivalry and Roman Catholicism, and with the increased predominance of the Latin in church and law, the High-German was grossly neglected. But, though used only by writers of the lower orders, known as the *Meistersänger*, with more zeal than taste, it did the important service of sustaining that broad under-current of popular opposition to the abuses of the church and of society, in which Luther found his main support. He it was that freed the language as well as the mind of his nation from a foreign yoke by the translation of the Bible, in which he adopted the High-German. The present predominance of this dialect is the consequence of the rapid and universal diffusion of Luther's version of the Scriptures, and of the veneration with which it was received; for since that event, every true German has exerted himself in developing and refining the High-German, which is now the language of the educated classes throughout the country.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

A specified table of contents is in itself a means of instruction as it supports the pupils' insight into the connection of the facts. Alphabetical indices tend to an opposite effect and in works of this kind indicate a deficient arrangement.

The portions given in *italics* indicate new features in the treatment of German grammar.

SECTION.	PAGE
I. THE ALPHABET (<i>das Alphabet or Abcete</i>)	1
II. PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY (<i>Aussprache und Rechtschreibung</i>)	—
<i>Value of correct pronunciation.</i>	
<i>The illustrations in analogy to the English.</i>	
A. SOUND OF THE VOWELS (<i>Grundlaute or Vocale</i>)	2
<i>Strong and weak vowels. The euphonic e</i>	3
<i>Modified vowels (Umlaute); — where occurring</i>	4
<i>Diphthongs (Doppel-laute)</i>	—
B. POWER OF THE VOWELS (long and short vowels)	5
<i>Value of correct syllabing. — Table</i>	—
4. The vowel in verbs, 6. — (<i>Contraction and elision</i>)	7
<i>The vowel before ch, dt, ft, 7, p. — Exceptions complete</i>	7
C. SOUND OF THE CONSONANTS (<i>Mitlaute</i>). — 3, <i>Beginning and final sounds.</i> — 4, <i>Interchange of consonants.</i>	8
Gutturals (<i>Reßlaute</i>); — <i>pure and palatal</i> ; — <i>table</i>	10
<i>sch and ft, 15; ff, p, 16; — final ft, 17. — Statement and exceptions complete</i>	19
D. PUNCTUATION (<i>new and complete statement Zeichensetzung</i>)	19
<i>The . and ; 19. — The , 20. — The ? ! — The inverted commas and apostrophe</i>	22
E. ABBREVIATIONS	23
III. THE ACCENT OR STRESS (<i>Silbenton</i>). <i>Its law.</i> —	24
<i>The euphonic e.</i>	

SECTION.	PAGE
A. In simple words	24
B. In compound words	25
4. <i>The Demonstrative portion accented</i>	25
C. The accent in sentences (der <i>Capton</i>);— <i>awkward habits</i>	26
D. The emphasis (der <i>Nachdruck</i>)	27
IV. PREFIXES (<i>Vorsetzen</i>); — here treated with regard to accentuation and orthography. — For their position and force see Sect. XX, p. 172 &c. and Sect. XXX, p. 258 &c. and p. 56, E.	27
A. INSEPARABLE prefixes (untrennbare <i>B.</i>).— <i>be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, zer, ant, miß, un, and ur.</i> — <i>The prefix um</i>	27 28
B. SEPARABLE prefixes (trennbare <i>B.</i>)	29
C. <i>durch, über, um, unter, voss and wieder</i> (see also p. 173, 2), <i>hinter, vor, zu, 31</i>	29
V. SUFFIXES (<i>Nachsetzen</i>).—DERIVATION (<i>Ableitung</i>)	31
Modification and change of the vowel. — <i>Nature of these phenomena</i>	32
A. Suffixes of Adjectives, — B. of adverbs, 33 , — C, of numerals, — D, of substantives, — 1, masc. — 2, fem., 34 , — 3, neut. — Diminutives, <i>Note 2</i> , 35 , Suffixes of Infinitives (<i>en, tren, leren</i>) 36	36
VI. THE PREPOSITIONS (<i>Vorwörter</i>)	36
A. GOVERNMENT, — the Genitive, 37 ; — the Dative, 38 ;—the accusative,—the dative and accusative, 39 . <i>Difficult use of prepositions governing both the dative and accusative, 39.</i>	37
B. CONTRACTIONS with the article. — C. <i>Combinations</i> 40 <i>nach — zu, auf — zu, 40; — von — auf, von — an, von — ab; von — aus; bis — an, — auf, — vor, — zu &c.; nach — hin, von — her, 41, 42.</i>	40
D. USE OF THE PREPOSITIONS; (before <i>it, them</i> (58) <i>this, that</i> (72) and before Participles, (218). <i>Caution with regard to prepositional phrases, 42. Systematic view of idioms, pp. 43 — 56; — of place, 43; — of time, 46; — of cause, reason and motive, 49; — the object with the force of cause, 51; — idioms of purpose, 53; — of manner and condition, 54.</i>	42
E. List of Prepositions used as separable prefixes; — with <i>hin</i> and <i>her</i> . — F. Prepositions with <i>sich</i>	56
VII. DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN	57
(<i>es</i> for <i>so</i> .—Each other). (58 ; <i>imp. pp. 71, 227, 243.</i>)	57
VIII. REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS	58
The third person. — 1, when to be used with prepositions. — 2, <i>List of Prepos. forming components of</i>	

SECTION.

PAGE

da, wo, &c., 58. — 3, The Partitive, — 4, *distinguished from the Gen. Plural*; 5 a, selbst, — b, einander, — c, man, 59; — d, Jemand, Niemand, e, Etwas, Alles, — f, Nichts, 60. (See below).

IX. DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLES, PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (Biegung der Geschäftswörter, Fürwörter und Eigenschaftswörter) 60

Leading remarks. — 1, The definite article (der bestimmte Artikel), the indefinite article (der unbestimmte Artikel). — 2, The characteristic function of *Art. and Pron.* Cases. — 3, Corresponding cases, 60. — 4, *Contrast in the Nom. Sing.*; — 5, its influence on adjectives — 6, The Plural. 7, derjenige, derselbe. — 8, Pron. numerals, andere &c.

THE ADJECTIVE 61

1, Not changed as Predicate or adverb, 61. — 2, and placed at the end. — 3, *Effects of the position of the Adj. as attribute on euphony*. — 4, *Euphonic nature of the terminations*. — 5, *The consonant n*, 62. — *The economy of forms*. 6, Nominatives in e, — 7, in er, e, es. — 8, The adjective without Art. or Pron., 63. — 9, jener, selber, mein(ige), dein(ige) &c. reduced to adjectives. — 10, The Adj. after indefinite numerals, 64. — 11, Adj. as nouns. — 12, The e omitted. *Note*, 65.

Table. KEY to the Declension of the articles, pronouns and adjectives 66

Words declined as adjectives. Note 1, hoch, hohe, &c. — 2, 3, all the, all, everything (see also pp. 77, 86, Note 2, 89 d and 254, 6), 67.

X. OBSERVATIONS ON THE ADJECTIVE 67

1, Adj. as nouns, 67; — after Etwas something, Nichts nothing, viel much, wenig little. — 3, The attribute after its noun. — 4, The termination es omitted. — 5, The Adj. after pers. Pron. — 6, Adj. formed from names of nationalities, 68; — 7, of places, — 8, of materials, — 9, from adverbs and prepositions, 69; — 10, from numerals, 70.

XI. COMPLETING REMARKS ON PRONOUNS 70

Jedermann, jeglicher, jedweder. — ONE in *this one, that one, good one*.

A. INDEFINITE OR SUBSTANTIVE DEMONSTRATIVES, Dies, Das, — a, their use, 70, — b, their cases dessen, deren, dem &c. 71. — c, Compounds with prepositions (damit, daran, darauf, davon &c.), their use with daß and zu in rendering English participial clauses (see p. 219 e); hier used for Dies, 72. — *Note*.

B. THE ADJECTIVE-DEMONSTRATIVES 73

SECTION.

PAGE

- 1, dieser this, jener that, the latter, the former. — 2, Jener distinguished from derjenige, 73. — *a*, derjenige, *that, he who*, differs from jener. — *b*, *Not always the antecedent of a Relative*. — *c*, The accent, dessen, deren, denen, 74. — *d*, *He who* rendered by *wer*, *that which* by *was*. — 4, derselbe (ige) the same; — used for it with Prepos. 75, for *he, she*, and for Possessives. — 5, Jeder, all *each every*, 76; aller, alles its limited use. Notes, Alles, *was all that* (see also pp. 86, Note 2 and 89 d); alle *all the*; das All, *all' all*. — 6, Mancher, *e, es many a*. — 7, Solcher, *e, es such, ein solcher, solch ein such a, such-as* rendered by *so* — daß, *so, solche welche, solche wie*, 77, (see p. 86). — 8, Welcher used for *some, irgend welche any, any at all* (see also the Relative). — 9, Pronominal numerals; — their Singulars, ein anderer (a different one), nach einer *another, neulich the other day*; einiger *some, sämmtlicher the whole*, limited use; viel much and wenig little, 78; *when declined*; etwas, einiger, irgend einer, irgend welcher *some, any*.
- C. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS AND *sein, e* . . . 79
a, *Your* expressed in three ways, 79; — *b*, agreement in gender and case. — *c*, Substantive-Possessives, — *d*, mein, dein for *der meinige, der deinige &c.* — Note, ihr. — *e*, *Kein* no, *not a, reason for its use*, 80; *f*, used substantively *keiner* no one.
- D. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS 81
 Welcher? Which, what? 81. — *Welch ein* what *a*. — 2, Wer? Who? Was? What? — 3, Declension of *wer* and *was*, (*weissen, wem, wen*). — 4, Prepositions annexed, (*weßhalb, weshalb*)? On account of what? *womit* with what, *woraus* out of what &c. &c.), 82. — Was? for Warum? Why? — What, which? *how* rendered with prepositions not entering into composition. — 5, Was für ein? What sort of? — *awkwardly separated*. — 6, Was — Alles what all, 83. — Was — auch whatever. — 8, Wer — auch whosoever. Was, *wer nur I wonder what (who)*. 8, Auch and nur used with the following:
- E. INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE ADVERBS. 84
a, Wann? When? At what time? (see also p. 232). — *b*, Wie? How? (see also p. 237). — *c*, Wo? Where? (see also p. 237), 84.
- F. THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS 85
 Auch omitted, Note 1. — *a*, The Relative; its agreement; — *b*, in what sense definite or indefinite. — *c*, Wer *he who, was that which*, 85; *Was* not *das that* after

SECTION.	PAGE
<p>Alles, Manches &c. Note 2. — <i>d</i>, <i>As</i> referring to <i>such</i>, rendered by the Relative or by <i>mit</i>, 86. — <i>e</i>, <i>So</i> used as Relative. — <i>f</i>, The Genitive of <i>welcher</i>; <i>why</i> not used.</p>	
XII. SHORTER FORM OF PRONOUNS	87
<p>1, used as Demonstrative; — 2, for <i>he, she, it, they</i>; — 3, as the Relative, — <i>how recognized</i>, 87; — representing at once the Demonstr. and Rel., Note.— Declension.</p> <p>The shorter form indispensable <i>a</i>, in the Genitive, — <i>b</i>, in phrases like <i>I who, thou who, we who</i>; (<i>reason for their construction</i>), 88; — <i>c</i>, after <i>Jemand somebody, Niemand nobody, Jedermann everybody</i>; <i>d</i>, after indefinite pronouns. — The shorter form used further 1, as indefinite Demonstrative, 89, — 2, for <i>dieser, jener</i>, — 3, for <i>derjenige</i>, — 4, for <i>derselbe</i>, 90. <i>Das expression of contempt</i>, Note.</p>	
XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS	91
<p><i>Modification of Monosyllables only</i>; — <i>the reason why?</i> 91. — List of monosyllabic exceptions; — <i>their nature</i>; — the terminations <i>er</i> and <i>st</i>, 92.</p>	
A. ADJECTIVES USED AS ATTRIBUTES, declined; — lose the nominative termination in poetry. — Superl. after the indef. article.	93
B. Adjectives used ADVERBALLY	93
The SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE in 1, <i>st</i> , 2, <i>stest</i> — 3, <i>auf's</i> — <i>st</i>	94
The RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE <i>am</i> — <i>sten</i> , — used adverbially, Note 1; — when used predicatively, Note 2, 94.	
C. PARTICIPLES AND ADJECTIVES COMPARED WITH <i>mehr</i> and <i>am meisten</i>	95
D. THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE USED PREDICATIVELY, — expressed by adverbs <i>höchst, sehr</i> &c. <i>most</i> &c. &c., 95.	
E. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.—Note 1, <i>hoch, höher, höchst</i> ; — 2, No sooner than; — 3, <i>wenig</i> little; — <i>mehr</i> not <i>more</i> but <i>rather</i> ; <i>wenig</i> used; — 5, the adjective <i>most</i> <i>die meisten</i> ; — 6, <i>much sehr</i> ; — 7, <i>much viel</i> 96.	96
F. PARTICLES OF COMPARISON	97
1, <i>so</i> so, as. — 2, <i>als</i> as. — 3, <i>als</i> than. — Note 1, The comma; — 2, <i>the clauses preceding als than</i> , completed; — 3, <i>als but</i> , 97. — 4, <i>Wie like as</i> , not to be confounded with <i>als</i> . — 5, <i>Je the, desto the</i> . — 6, <i>immer more and more</i> . — 7, <i>after</i> prefixed to	

SECTION.	PAGE
Superlatives. — 8, <i>zu</i> too, (requiring the dative, see p. 160, 5 b).	
G. COMPOUND ADJECTIVES EXPRESSING SUPERLATIVES	98
XIV. THE NUMERALS (<i>Zahlwörter</i>)	99
Cardinal numerals (<i>Grundzahlen</i>). 1, <i>find</i> one (see p. 70) with the article; its Plural.—2, <i>zwei</i> , two; <i>zween</i> two. — 3, <i>three</i> , 99; when declined. — The phrase <i>two or three in</i> Paar. — <i>Beide</i> both; explained. <i>Ein</i> has, but <i>zwei</i> and <i>drei</i> have not pronominal force, 100. — Genitive of Cardinals. — The units expressed first. — Names of figures, gender, B. — The suffix <i>er</i> , 4, 101.	
THE ORDINAL NUMBERS, how formed	102
Dates. — Note 1, the Interrogative <i>der vierte</i> ? Which? — 2, Ordinals in names of sovereigns.	
DISTINCTIVE NUMERALS (<i>erstens</i> in the first place &c.)	102
Fractions, (half a).—Note 1, <i>a twelvemonth</i> , <i>sixmonth</i> &c.—2, Hours of the day. — Distributive numerals (<i>je zwei</i> each two, &c.). — Multiplicative numerals (<i>zweifach</i> twofold, &c.). — Variative numerals (<i>einerlei</i> all of one kind, &c.), 103. — Reiterative numerals (<i>einmal</i> one time, once, &c.). — The indefinite numerals (<i>alle</i> all the, <i>viele</i> many, &c.).	
XV. NOUNS (<i>Hauptwörter</i>). — GENDER (<i>das Geschlecht</i>). 104	
<i>Treatise on their necessity, value for the construction, their force in poetry &c.</i> , (for advanced pupils), 104—108.	
General rules. — Compound nouns, 108; exceptions.	
A. Masculine, 109. 110. — B. Feminine, 110. — C, Neuter, 111, 112.	
Note 1, Terms for personal relations, 112; — 2, for station and rank; — 3, for species of animals. 113.	
Nouns having different meanings with different genders; List, 114, 115.	
XVI. NOUNS. — DECLENSION (<i>Biegung</i>)	115
Leading remarks. — 1, <i>Only two terminations</i> , 115; — 2, <i>when these only are added</i> . — 3, <i>The euphonic suffixes t and er</i> , 116. — Tabular view. — 4, N-declension and S-declension. — 5, Modification; <i>rule for its occurrence</i> . — 6, Anomalies. — 7, Nouns of foreign origin; — 8, FEMININE NOUNS; relics of declension in the Singular, 117.	
A. N-DECLENSION; <i>analogous to that of adjectives</i> . 118	
— Specimen, 118. — List I, nouns in which the <i>t</i> of the nominative is omitted; — <i>these nouns characterized</i> , 119. — List II, the only feminine nouns	

SECTION.

PAGE

not declined by the N-form. — Why modified, 120. — Feminine specimens. — Note 1, Derivatives in in.	
B. THE S-DECLENSION; — <i>how ascertained</i> , 121; — 121 <i>in what nouns modification is to be expected</i> . — The terminations <i>s</i> and <i>n</i> . — 1, <i>Where to use these</i> <i>only</i> ; — Tabular view, suffixes, 122. — Infinitives, — nouns both in <i>e</i> and <i>en</i> , — List III; <i>these</i> <i>characterized</i> , 123. — The only nouns of this class modifying the vowel, List IV.	
2, Where to add the euphonic <i>t</i> , 124. — Examples. — — Notes. 1, The Acc. Sing. no <i>t</i> ; — 2, <i>t</i> omitted in the Gen.; — 3, in the Dat.; — 4, <i>ß</i> changed into <i>ff</i> ; 5, double vowels, how modified, 125; — 6, Plurals in <i>s</i> ; — 7, foreign nouns in <i>em</i> and <i>en</i> (Character).	
3, The nouns adding <i>er</i> in the Plural; characterized as the most primitive; — List V; (<i>Gewande</i> , <i>Thale</i> , <i>Mannen</i> , <i>Leute</i>), 126, 127; <i>Table</i> ; <i>KEY to the</i> <i>Declension of nouns</i> , 128.	
Specimens of the S-declension in its three forms. Exceptions from modification. — <i>a</i> , Nouns with the soft <i>t</i> ; — <i>b</i> , Neuter nouns; — <i>c</i> , Masculine nouns form- ing the Plural in <i>t</i> , 129, List VI; — <i>d</i> , Masculine Derivatives, List VII; — <i>e</i> , Nouns of foreign ori- gin, 130; List VIII, of those modifying; <i>remarkable</i> <i>feature</i>	131
ANOMALIES, masc. and neut. nouns having the S-form in the <i>Sing.</i> and the N-form in the <i>Plur.</i> ; List IX; <i>fo-</i> <i>reign</i> nouns in <i>er</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>tum</i> , <i>it</i> , <i>al</i> , — Notes. 1, in <i>ismus</i> and <i>ius</i> , 131; — 2, <i>das</i> <i>Perj.</i>	131
Nouns with different <i>Plur.</i> having different meanings, List X.	
C. COMPOUND NOUNS. — The first component decl., (143, 2)	132
<i>Caution</i> , peculiar significance, Note, 133.	
D. DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES. — <i>A</i> , with the ar- ticle; — with Adjectives, Note 2; — with Posses- sives 3, 134.	
B, <i>without</i> the article; — <i>a</i> , Fem. in <i>t</i> ; — <i>b</i> , Gen. in <i>s</i> ; — by <i>von</i> , — Note 4, no Genitive, 134; — <i>c</i> , Pr. names with the christian name, — <i>d</i> , with titles; — <i>e</i> , Plurals; — <i>f</i> , <i>Christus</i> , <i>Jesus</i> , <i>Gott</i> , 135.	
XVII. ON THE USE OF THE ARTICLE (Mainly for REFERENCE).	136
Phrases without the article.	
A. The article not used, 136. — The Gen. expressed by composition. — B, The article with PROPER NAMES NOT OMITTED, 137.	

SECTION.

PAGE

- C. Before **ABSTRACT NOUNS**, and **common nouns** denoting the whole class **138**. — D, Before **COMMON NOUNS**. — 3, Contracted with *zu* after the verbs of **MAKING AND APPOINTING**, **139**; — 4, after *werden to become*; — 5, in prepositional phrases, **140**. — 6, Terms used with the article. — 7, The def. for the indef. Art.

XVIII. ON THE USE OF THE CASES (Gebrauch der Fälle) 141
APPPOSITION, 141.

THE NOMINATIVE. — Note 1, *werden* with *zu*; — 2, *es giebt there is, there are* with the Acc.

THE GENITIVE (POSSESSIVE). — A, The **ATTRIBUTE** . . . **142**

1, The Gen. with relationship or possession, — of Engl. participial Substantives (218 a), **142**; — Note 1, The Gen. before its complement (Schiller); — phrases like *sister to* &c. — 2, *a friend of, a friend to*.

2, The Gen. in compound nouns, **143**.

3, The Possessive by *von* with the Dat. — a, with nouns without the Art.; — b, with nouns with an Adj.; — c, Poss. of quality or material, **144**; — d, of numerals; Note 3, *part of, half of*; — 4, with months and dates; e, of places in § and §; — f, rulers &c. of countries; — Note 5, in poetry; — g, Fem. names of countries, **145**.

B, THE PARTITIVE (differing from the French Partitive) 145

1, Not expressed after terms used in weighing, measuring and counting &c. (168, 3), *kind of, species of, &c.* — Note 1, in poetical language. — 2, *voll full of*, **146**. — 3, Partit. of Pers. Pron. &c.; — 4, of *derselbe (of it; of them)*; — 5, of nouns with Art. or Pron. **147**.

(All the lists in this section are complete and chiefly to be used for reference).

2, of verbs, **148**; — 3, of verbs along with an accusative **149**; — 4, of *reflective* verbs; — 5, with the verbs *sein to be, bleiben to remain, werden to become*, **150**.

D. The Genitive in ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS; — (3, Indefinite time; — 5, in *exclamations of lament*; — §, in idioms), **151**.

THE DATIVE. (The terms, transitive and intransitive verbs, foot-note) . . . **152**

1, The dative as the **INDIRECT OBJECT**, verbs of *giving* (254). — a, Objects are simple cases; — b, Passive construction, **153**; c, *Reflective verbs*

2, List of transitive (objective verbs) governing the dative. — Note, The prefix *be* . . . **154**

SECTION.

PAGE

- 3, List of verbs forming no passive voice and governing the dative, *often a nominative in English*.
 4, List of IMPERSONAL verbs of *particular interest* . . . 156
 Idioms with *to be*. — Note 1, compound expressions, 159. — 2, The dative for the Possessive with parts of the body or articles of possession; — 3, The ethical dative.
 5, The dative with Participles, and *Superlatives* with *zu* too, 160; list of ADJECTIVES.
 The verb *sein* and *werden* *to feel*.
 The dative in adverbial expressions.
 THE ACCUSATIVE (OBJECTIVE, 1.) 163
 Passive construction, 163. — Note 1, *lassen to teach*, *heißen to bid*, *lassen to let, to allow; reason for the double accusative*. — 2, Verbs of calling and abusing; — 3, Verbs of appointing and making, — of declaring and considering, 164; — 4, The reflexive pronoun; 5, The impersonal form.
 2, The Acc. with expressions of measure, weight, age or value.
 3, With *genug enough*, *viele many*, &c. 165.
 4, TIME DEFINITE, *when*, 166.
- XIX. ON THE USE OF THE NUMBERS (Sing. *die Einzahl*, Pl. *die Mehrzahl*) 166
 1, Dispositions of the mind (fears, thanks, precautions), 166. — 2, Peculiarities; — *a*, Interchange of the Plurals of *Sache* and *Ding*; — *b*, Compounds of man, *Leute*; — *c*, *Volk people*, 167; — *d*, Collectives with the PLUR. of the verb and Poss. Pron.
 3, *a*, Terms used in *weighing, measuring, counting*, &c.; — *b*, of the feminine gender, *how these may be known*, 168; — Note, with fractions; — *c*, names of coins; — *d*, The above used in the Plural. — *e*, Terms of time, 169.
 4, Nouns used in the Plural only 169
 5, Engl. nouns used in the Plural only 170
- XX. THE VERB (*das Zeitwort*); CONJUGATION 171
 A. UNIVERSAL FORMS. The Infinitive, stem and Participle as NOUNS. *a*, The Infinitive, the stem. — *b*, The Present Participle. — *c*, The Past Participle; — (of verbs in *iten*), 171; — *d*, of verbs with *sep. pref.*; — *e*, The particle *zu to*.
 Separable compound verbs and combinations. *Hint as to their meanings*.
 DETAILS REGARDING THE PREFIXES.
 1, *her* and *hin*. List of *sep. prefixes*, 172. — 2, *durch*, *über*, *um*, *unter*, *voll*, *wieder*. — *Suggestion re-*

SECTION.

PAGE

- specting their accent.* — 3, Composition of prefixes. — 4, *ant*, *ur*, *nitz*, when they take the augment *ge*, 173. — 5, Insep. comp. verbs taking the augment *ge*, List. — 6, Force of the insep. prefixes, *be*, *ent* (*emp*), *er*, 174; *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, 175.
- B. INFLECTIONAL TERMINATIONS; — *e*, where inserted 175
- XXI. STRONG OR ANCIENT, AND WEAK (MODERN) FORM OF CONJUGATION. (*Starke und schwache Form der Conjugation*) 176
- 1, Ancient verbs characterized. — 2, The weak verbs; — *e*, where inserted. —
- Note 1, Mixed form; — 2, Auxiliary verbs.
- 3, The change of the vowel in the Present, 177.
- 4, The Imperative how formed.
- 5, The Imperfect Subjunctive (its importance), 178.
- 6, Irregularities in the final consonant of the stem. *Table; KEY for the strong and weak forms*, 179.
- XXII. MIXED FORM (*gemischte Form*). Paradigm and list; 179
- thun*, conjugated, 180.
- Rule for the rendering of the verb TO KNOW kennen, wissen*, 181.
- ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE ANCIENT OR STRONG VERBS; (its advantages) 182
- Verbs having both the strong and weak form.
- List of the ancient verbs arranged according to their vowels 189
- XXIII. AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD (*Hilfszeitwörter des Modus*) 190
- Their construction, logical force, meaning and idiomatic use.
- 1, *können* (*can*). — 2, *mögen* (*may*), 190. — 3, *dürfen* (*dare*). — 4, *müssen* (*must*), 191. — 5, *wollen* (*will*), not expressing the Future, 192. — 6, *sollen* (*shall*). — 7, *lassen* (*to let*) and similar verbs, 193.
- Table; KEY to the conjugation of these verbs*, 194.
- Infinitive-form of their Past Participles and use of their compound tenses, 195, 196. — Note, their peculiar construction, (245). — *Lassen* and other verbs used as Auxil. verbs of mood, 196. — Their Past Part.
- Why *lassen* (*hören, sehen and heißen*) used with the Infinitive of the active voice see p. 218.
- XXIV. THE THREE AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE (*Hilfszeitwörter der Zeit*) 197
- Traces of the use of thun TO DO as an Auxiliary.*
- 1, The ABSOLUTE verbs *sein* *to be*, 197. — 2, *werden* *to become*. — 3, *haben* *to have*, as distinguished from the AUXILIARY verbs of tense.

- 1, *sein to have*. — 2, *werden shall, will, to be*, 198. —
3, *haben to have*. — Their use and conjugation,
199 — 202.

PARADIGM ILLUSTRATING THE FORMATION OF THE VERB. 202

Active voice (*thätige Form*) (212), 202. — PASSIVE
VOICE (*leidende Form*); actual force of the PASSIVE 205
VOICE.

XXV. ON THE USE OF THE TENSES, MOODS AND PARTICIPLES 207

A. THE INDICATIVE; (the Subjunctive and Conditional
see Sect. XXXI, p. 263).

1, The Present *a*, for the Imperfect, — *b*, with *seil* for
the Engl. Perfect, 207. — *c*, for the Future.

2, The Imperfect, *a*, for the Engl. Perfect, — *b*, for the
Conditional Past, 208.

3, The Perfect, differing from the Engl.; — for the
Past; — in historical style, 209.

4, The Pluperfect (Participial phrases).

5, The Future (I am going to, about to).

B. THE IMPERATIVE, with *einmal nur* and *doch*; — by 210
the Past Part., 210.

C. THE INFINITIVE; 1, *without zu*; (*holen* [*suchen*, 211
schlafen, *spazieren*] *gehen* to go to fetch, to seek, to
sleep, to walk).

2, for the Pres. and Past Part. with *bleiben to remain*,
sehen to see, &c.

3, for the Pres. Part. as a noun, 211.

THE ACTIVE VOICE USED FOR THE ENGLISH PASSIVE . . . 212

a, with *lassen*, *hören*, *sehen*, *heißen* &c. — *b*, with the
Gerund-phrases *Es ist (war) zu*, It is (was) to, 212;
— with attributive Participles; *reason for these con-*
structions; *c*, with *man* (*man sagt, it is said*); —
d, The refl. form rendered passively; — The passive
form impersonally; (*geschähen to be done*), 213.

THE INFINITIVE *with zu*; (construction) . . . 214

1, As in English. —

2, with *anstatt instead*, *ohne without*; the pleasure of,
honour of, charged *with*.

3, *um zu* in order to, *when to be used*, 214.

The English INFINITIVE *with to* NOT expressed by the
German Infinitive, *a*, after verbs of *believing* and
wishing, used with an improper objective; (*I believe*
him to be).

List of these verbs, probable cause of their being con-
strued differently from similar verbs, 215. — *b*, *to hap-*
pen to, *to chance to*. — *c*, *I am to do it* *so*, (249, *h*)

D. THE PARTICIPLES, 1. used as adjectives, 216; with 216

SECTION.

PAGE

what limitation; — 2, as substantives; — 3, expressing adverbially the MANNER of the action, 217.

Notes on the Past Participle. 1, The Past Participle absolutely, — 2, as a command, — 3, its peculiar use with *lassen* and *bringen*; — 4, for the Pres. Part.

The English PRESENT PARTICIPLE rendered by a DIFFERENT form, *a*, when used as an abstract noun; — *b*, after the verbs *to feel*, *to help*, *to hear*, &c. — *c*, *d*, *e*, when introduced by prepositions, 218; — *f*, Participial clauses of TIME, REASON and CAUSE, 219; — Note 1, *indem* while, — 2, *da* for *als* when, *if combining time and reason*; — *g*, Participial clauses used attributively or resolved into relative clauses, 220.

XXVI. REFLECTIVE VERBS, characterized 220

1, construed, conjugated, 221. — 2, Position of the refl. Pron., 222. — 3, Refl. verbs with the Gen. — 4, with the Pron. in the Dat. — 5, The refl. form alters the meaning of verbs, — 6, expresses the intransitive sense of transitive verbs. — 7, The English Passive used impersonally, 223. — 8, Impers. refl. verbs. — 9, *lassen*, *es läßt sich*, *ließ sich*, 224.

XXVII. THE IMPERSONAL FORM 224

1, with the phenomena of external nature, 224; — 2, of our physical nature, with the Acc. or Dat. of the subject, and *Es* as the Nom.; — 3, with moral and intellectual sensations, (*glaublich*'s, *gefühlig*'s), 225. — Note 1, distinction between personal and impersonal expressions; — (list p. 156, 4, idioms). — Use of, *Es ist*, *sind*, *gibt* *there is*, *there are*, *there occur*, 226. — 4, The impers. Pron. not expressed in Engl.; (see indirect sent. p. 243), 227; — 5, follows the personal form of *sein*; — (*ich bin es* *it is I*). — 6, The impersonal form of intr. verbs used passively, (*Es wird* *gesungen* &c. *they are singing*), 228.

XXVIII. ADVERBS AND INTERJECTIONS (Umschreibungswörter und Interjectionen) 228

The suffix —*lich* —*ly*. *Alphabetical list of adverbs peculiarly used*, 229 — 233.

XXIX. CONJUNCTIONS (Bindewörter) 233

List of PURE conjunctions not affecting the construction (*denn unless*) 233. — List of COORDINATIVE conjunctions, construed like Adv. and inverting the clause. — List of the SUBORDINATIVE conjunctions introducing dependent clauses (Conj. combined with

SECTION.

PAGE

Adv., — how construed.. Wenn nicht *if not*, wenn
— nicht *unless* 234—237.

XXX. RULES FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES, (Regeln über den Satzbau) 238

ELEMENTS of the sentence, — *a*, the subject, — *b*, the predicate. — 1, The *inflected* and *uninflected* part of the verb. — 2, The predicate of *sein to be* &c. — *c*, the objects, direct and indirect. — *d*, Adverbials, 238; *e*, Attributes. — *f*, Apposition.

COMPOUND SENTENCES, principal and dependent clauses. — *List of English conjunctions introducing dependent clauses.* — Direct and inverted sentences, 240.

The FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLE of construction, 241.

INDIRECT SENTENCES, — *their nature, explained* 242
(§8, grammatical Nom., 243).

A. POSITION OF THE VERB 243

1, of the *uninflected* part. — 2 *a*, The auxiliary Past Part. after the main Past Part. — *b*, The Inf. after the Past Part., 243; — *c*, The Past Part. and Inf. after the Predicate. — 3, The *inflected* part placed last in dependent clauses, — 4, placed after the nominative; — Note, The adverb not placed between the Nom. and verb, 244; *list of conjunctions placed between the Nom. and verb.* — 5, *a, b, c*, Peculiar construction of auxil. verbs of mood and of *werden* in comp. tenses, 245.

Remarks on COMPOUND SENTENCES 246

Dependent clauses, *a*, their position, insertion, *adverbial insertions, where placed. Direction how to proceed in translating complicated periods. The importance of the comma*, 246. — *b, c*, Omission of the Relative and of conjunctions, 247, — *d, e*, of the auxiliary verb, — *f*, of *daß that*, *wenn if* and *ob whether*, 248. — *g*, *Such—as*; *h*, Relative clauses like, *what to do?* — *i*, Clauses with the Inf. *with zu*, 249.

B. THE INVERTED ORDER OF THE NOMINATIVE AND THE VERB 250

1, In *main clauses*, interrogative and imperative, — 2, not beginning with the subject, — Words of a speech followed by *said he*, &c. — 3, The main clause following the dependent (*yet doch, dennoch*; position). 250. — 4, The inverted main clause with *doch*.

5, *a*, The DEPENDENT inverted by the omission of *wenn* and *ob if, whether*, 251. — Note, *when it may precede the main clause.*

SECTION.

PAGE

<i>b</i> , The conjunction <i>so</i> and <i>dann</i> , 252, — their use and omission. — <i>c</i> , The omission of <i>ob</i> <i>whether</i> , (<i>oder</i> or), 253.	
6, Objects, &c. preceding the nominative.	
C. THE MUTUAL POSITION OF THE DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTS AND OF THESE WHEN EXPRESSED BY PERSONAL PRONOUNS	254
1, One object a Pers. Pron.—2, Both obj. Pers. Pron.—3, <i>Dies</i> and <i>Das</i> , Obj., 255.—4, Both obj. nouns. —5, OBJECTS WITH THE INDEF. ART., 256.—6, Rel. clauses affecting the object. — Note, Separable components of the verb, 257.	
D, Position of SEPARABLE PREFIXES and of ADVERBS or ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS qualifying the verb	258
1, with the verb at the beginning or middle; — 2, with the verb at the end; — 3, Adv. &c. of time, 258; — 4, cannot precede the Pers. Pron. — 5, <i>a</i> , Several adverbs &c. — <i>b</i> , The adverb of <i>place</i> , 259, — <i>c</i> , Exceptions. — 6, <i>a</i> , <i>Richt NOT</i> ; — <i>b</i> , if not qualifying the verb; — <i>c</i> , follows adverbs of time, 260; — <i>d</i> , loses its neg. force.	
E. Position of the ADJECTIVE OR PARTICIPLE used as an ATTRIBUTE and of the CLAUSES PERTAINING to it,—in poetry, — at the end, 261; — preceding the complement; — complications	261
XXXI. ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL	263
A. The SUBJUNCTIVE, <i>its true nature</i>	263
1, The Subj. Pres. in indirect quotations; — instead of the English Past, 263; — <i>reason for this</i> ; — <i>mechanical sequence of tenses in English</i> ; — The Imperf. Subj. when substituted for the Present, 264; — <i>a</i> , Omission of <i>daß</i> , — <i>b</i> , of <i>ob</i> ; — <i>c</i> , <i>denn</i> <i>unless</i> with the Subj.; — <i>d</i> , <i>The leading clause omitted</i> , 265.	
2, The Subj. after an imperative or wish; — <i>e</i> , Simple Subj. for <i>that you should</i> &c. — <i>f</i> , <i>damit</i> , <i>daß</i> and <i>um zu</i> <i>in order that</i> ; — <i>g</i> , <i>mögen may</i> in the Indicative.	
3, The Subj. in the main cl. expressing a prayer, 266. <i>Explanation</i> .	
4, The Indicative in indir. quotations, 267; <i>a matter of good taste</i> .	
5, The Subj. in the speaker's own statement, — 6, in his own prayer, 268.	
7, The Indic. with verbs of absolute reality or DOUBT and in questions.	
B. The CONDITIONAL	269

SECTION.

PAGE

1, The Imperf. and Plaperf. Subj. in the <i>dependent</i> clause.	
2, The Conditional in the main clause, 269; its full form.	
3, The Conditional in dependent clauses.— <i>a</i> , The condition merely doubtful; — <i>b</i> , introduced by <i>wenn auch, ob auch</i> &c. although, — <i>c</i> , by <i>zu, um zu</i> in order to, — <i>d</i> ; merely understood.	
N. B. <i>I should, would, not always to be taken for a Conditional, 270</i> , when to be rendered by <i>ich sollte, wollte</i> .	
4, The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive for the Conditional Present and Past, 271.	
Passive voice, rare and remarkable use of the Imperf. Ind. for the Cond. Past., 272.	
<i>a</i> , The full form to be preferred with weak verbs. — <i>b</i> , Optative clauses, interrogative exclamations. — <i>c</i> , Deferential Cond. <i>ich möchte, ich dachte I should like, think</i> ; — their construction and difference from the full form.— <i>d</i> , <i>I might, ought ich möchte, sollte or müßte; I might have, ought to have ich hätte können, sollen, müssen; how to be explained, 273</i> . — <i>e</i> , The idioms, <i>Then she would say, Dann sagte sie wohl</i> . — <i>Concluding remark, 274</i> .	
XXXII. REMARKS ON GERMAN METRE	275

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

SECTION I. THE ALPHABET.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
a . b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

(f at the beginning, but s at the end of *syllables*.)

CAPITALS.

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U
A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U
V W X Y Z.

All nouns, and the addressing pronouns in letter-writing begin with a capital letter.

SECTION II. PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

It may be of use to notice, that the Anglo-Saxon when it parted from its mother stem the German, not only ceased to share in the organic and steady developement of the latter towards that definiteness and harmonious simplicity in which the High German at present appears, but it was first interfered with by the Danish, and soon checked altogether in its developement by the introduction of the French through the Norman conquest. Thus the Saxon portion of the English language to some extent represents the German of 1300 years ago, having preserved many of the undeveloped sounds of that period. On the other hand these same sounds are not altogether extinct in German, for, whilst the educated classes have been carrying out the work of refinement, the mass of the lower and chiefly of the rural population have but slowly given up the vernacular of their forefathers. Hence

it will be conceived that any tendency in the pupil to pronounce the High German with an English-Saxon accent would impart to his pronunciation a resemblance to that of the lower rather than the upper classes and must therefore be studiously restrained, but the greatest care ought to be bestowed on correct pronunciation, not only as a matter of taste but as indispensable to prevent the awkwardness of one word being mistaken for another with a very different meaning, in consequence of mispronunciation. For inst. *ächten* to outlaw for *ächten* to esteem or for *echten* genuine. The pronunciation as given below will be found consistent with the laws of euphony and represents neither of the extremes to be met with in provincial dialects.

The author has taken great pains to make both rules and exceptions *complete*, and whilst he would recommend beginners to use the illustrations given merely as pronouncing exercises, he is happy to think them calculated in their connection with the English to serve the scholar more extensively for reference in a linguistic point of view.

The pupil is advised to moderate as much as possible his energy in the task of pronouncing the words given. The more easily and gently he takes the consonants whilst giving the greatest possible power and clearness to the vowels, the safer will be his success.

A. SOUND OF THE VOWELS.

LEADING REMARKS. 1. Each vowel has everywhere the same sound with that difference only which arises from its being more or less sustained. The long vowels are much more sustained than in English. Double vowels have quite the sound of the simple vowels and are merely longer.

2. The German root vowels are very sonorous and clear and pronounced from the chest, the English vowels from the throat, and far more subdued. (As will be shewn by the illustrations given below.) The German language derives its vigour mainly from *vocalisation*, the English from *accentuation*. Compare: *Thatraht* with energy, *allgewaltig* with omnipotent.

To a great extent the difference in sound between the German and the Saxon portion of the English language, is that between two dialects, the German being pronounced with a more decidedly *open and rounded*, the English with a more uniformly horizontal position of the mouth. Comp. *Sprache* with speech, *Stech* with stick, *suchen* with seek, *größer* with greater, *füllen* with fill.

3. There are three *strong* vowels: a, o, u, and two *weak* vowels: e, i. This order represents the gradation of sound as effected, the first by the greatest, and the last by the least, possible opening of the mouth.

4. The strong vowels occur blended with the sounds of the weak vowels; and are then called: *modified* vowels; a blended with e: ä; o with e: ô; u with e or rather i: û.

5. By contracting a stronger vowel with a weaker vowel and sounding them with one closing movement of the mouth, a diphthong is formed: au, ai, ui, eu, ei.

A, a sounds like a in *far*, *vase*; long in *fam came*, *Mahl* meal; doubled in *Mal* eel, *Maal* mole; short in *falt* cold, *Bant* bench, *lang* long.

O, o long like oa in *boat*; *wohl* well, *Sohn* son; doubled in *Moss* moss, *Loos* lot; o short like o in *lot*; *foum* come, *Sonne* sun. Both in o long and o short the lips must be nearly pointed.

U, u long like oe in *shoe*; *Wuhl* pool, *Blut* blood, *Brut* breed. The long u has a peculiar power, is therefore never doubled and must be well sustained; u short like u in *full*; *Sturm* storm, *muß* must, *Kuß* kiss.

E, e long is pronounced like *eight* in *neighing* with a horizontal and almost closed position of the mouth; *Mehl* meal, *Schne* sinew; doubled in *See* sea, *Meer* sea. e short like e in *nest*; *best* best, *Rest* rest, *Nest* nest.

AN ALMOST MUTE e, as in *father* occurs very extensively in suffixes and terminations where it mainly serves as a mitigating element to prevent the harshness which would arise from the close succession of strong syllables. Compare: *Alle guten Thaten haben Gottes großen Segen*, with *all good deeds have God's great blessing* (See the declension of nouns, adjectives etc.) This e often still appears in the English spelling of Saxon words, but is now mute, as the reducing of the English root vowels has rendered it superfluous as a soft suffix. Compare: *haben*, *Woge*, *suchen*, *geben*, *finden* with *have*, *wave*, *seek*, *give*, *find*.

3, i long like *ie* in *priest*; ihm him, mir me; short like *i* in *in*; Rinn chin, ist is. With the force of *double i*, *ie* is employed with the sound of *ie* in *thief*, *field* as in *Pier* beer, *hier* here, *schier* sheer, *Dieb* thief.

U, u sounds like the modified u (ü) (see below) and occurs only in words of Greek origin; *Cytle* syllable, *Olymp* Olympus.

MODIFIED VOWELS. Ae, ä long like *a* in *care*; gâte gave, Käse cheese, Fähre ferry; short like *a* in *can*; Männer men, Kälte chill, hält holds.

De, ö long nearly approaches the sound of *ea* in *great* when pronounced with pointed lips; größer greater; tödten deaden, Föhre fir; short that of *a* in *can* likewise with pointed lips; können can, Löffel ladle, Schöpfer (shaper) creator.

Ue, ü long like *ee* in *feel* with the lips very slightly rounded (not pointed); fühlen feel, grün green, süß sweet; short like *i* in *fill* with the lips as above; füllen fill, Müller miller, küssen kiss.

The modification of the vowel generally forms an element in derivation, in comparison, in the formation of plurals and of tenses. If DOUBLED VOWELS undergo modification only a single, modified vowel is written: Saal hall, Eäle halls; Boot boat, Böte boats. The diphthong *au* only modifies the *a* — äu.

DIPHTHONGS. (See above L. R. 5.) Au, au like *ou* in *soul*, German faul, Haus-house, braun brown, grau grey, Traum dream.

Ai, ai like *ay* in *buy*; Kaiser (from Cæsar) emperor, Mai May, Maid maid.

Ei, ei like *i* in *fine*, German sein, mein my, dein thy, reiten ride, Pein pain, Reis rice.

Ui, ui occurs only in *hui*, like *hooi* hie; pfui, like *psoui* fye.

Eu, eu and äu much like *oi* in *point*; Feuer fire, neu new, treu true; Mäuse mice, Träume dreams, Räume rooms, Bräute brides.

B. POWER OF THE VOWELS IN SIMPLE WORDS.

As the soft *t* in the end syllables (see its pronunciation above) is never omitted as often in English, but is always sounded, the German abounds with *dissyllabic simple* words.

1. In these the vowel is LONG when followed by one consonant only, the consonant, without regard to Etymology, passing altogether to the second soft syllable:

2. On the other hand the vowel is SHORT when followed by two consonants, and the vowel is extremely short when followed by a double consonant, the two consonants being, in pronouncing and spelling, divided between the two syllables.

The almost universal neglect of this simple rule of syllabing is the chief cause of a bad accent, *as if all* being pronounced like *Ma=te eels*, *Schaf=ten* to create like *Schaf=ten sheep*, *har=ren* to await like *har=ren hairs*, *Mut=ter* mother like *Mu=ter*. On the other hand, *gut=te* like *gut=te* (Something like *gut* for good) *Bru=der* like *Brud=der* (Something like *brosser* for brother). Compound consonants are syllabled as stated in the alphabetical list of consonants below.

1. LONG.

la=den to lade.
 Scha=ten shells.
 spa=ren to spare.
 Po=ten Poland.
 ho=ten to fetch.
 Of=ten oven.
 Ru=der rudder.
 Stu=te steed.
 E=den Eden.
 We=sen being.

2. SHORT.

lan=den to land.
 schal=ten to sound.
 Spar=ten spars.
 pol=tern to rumble.
 rol=ten to roll.
 of=ten open.
 run=den round.
 Mut=ter mother.
 en=den to end.
 we=sen whose.

3. Diphthongs and double vowels, also vowels followed by an *h* are always LONG, the *h* then being the only MUTE letter in German as it is also in *th* (See below consonants) where it likewise lengthens the root vowel which it follows or precedes, only the *t* being sounded.

rau-ben to rob, Sai-te string, Eri-te side, Bier beer, paa-ren to couple, fah-ren to fare, Loos lot, Koh-len coals, Pfuhl pool, ru-ben to rest, Rath advice, ra-then to advise, That deed, Tha-ten deeds, roth red, rō-then reddened, Thon clay, Ru-the rod, thun to do, Thran train-oil, Thra-ne tear, Thron throne. Pan-ther panther, Thurm tower and Wirth host are the only words with th in which the vowel is short.

As to the effect of other compound consonants on the root vowel see below.

4. If the vowel in the INFINITIVE of a verb (which always ends in en) is long, it remains LONG, whatever termination may be added to the foot, as le-ben to *live*; root: leb; lebst *livest*, lebt *lives*, lebte *lived*, lebhaft *lively*. Only in the verb ha-ben to *have*, hast *hast* and hat *has* are short, in spite of the length of the root vowel. In other deviations from this rule the orthography is altered; they are marked in the verbs.

5. The vowel is LONG besides:

a. In all monosyllables ending with the vowel: da there, wo where, du thou; also in the foreign prefixes ending with the vowel: Co-häsion, De-ſect, Di-menſion, e-maniert, Pro-teſt, Re-form.

b. In monosyllables and foreign suffixes (except or, uß and um) in which the simple vowel is followed by ONE consonant, as: Grab grave, Grad grade, Graf (gerefa) earl, Trog trough, ſtaf ſtuck, — mal as dreimal three times, ſam came, Span chip; dem, den, der the, wem, wen, wer who, er he, her hither, dir thee, mir me, wir we, laß read, loß loose, gut good; EXCEPT the following: ab, Bad*, Rad*, am, an, man, daß, Gaß*, Glaß*, Graß*, waß, Mar; — groß*, vom, von; — Club (club), tuß or toß (tuſa), um, zum, un; — the prefixes be, er, ver, zer (and also her before another prefix, otherwise long) eß, deß; — im, in, bin, hin, biß; — Nir and the foreign prefixes ending with a consonant Ad-vocat, Col-lecte, Con-cert, Ef-ſect, Diſ-cant.

The words marked * are short only in the form here given.

c. The simple vowel followed by two consonants is exceptionally LONG only in the following words: Adler eagle, Magd maid, Papst pope, Art art, manner, Bart beard, zart delicate, Harz resin, Arzt physician, Obst fruit, Propst (propositus) prebendary, Vogt (vocatus) bailiff, Mond moon, Krebs spurious, Krebs crab, nebst besides, Erde earth, Geberde (bearing) gesture, Herd hearth, Pferd horse, werden to become, Schwert sword, stetß steady.

Note 1. Some words formed by contraction from others in which the long root vowel is followed by a simple consonant and by suffixes, like *e*, *el*, *en*, *er* are of course long and will be easily recognized, as: bößlich wickedly from böse wicked, Hüfner possessor of a hide of land from Huße hide, Tadler blamer from tadeln to blame, Segler sailer from Segel sail, übler worse from übel ill, Grübler speculator from grübeln to reason, Bügler bridle from Bügel bridle, Gegner opponent, begegnen to meet from gegen against, unsäglich unspeakable from sagen to say, regnen to rain from Regen rain, üblich usual from üben to practise, Obrigkeit authority from ober upper, übrig remaining from über over. These are properly speaking no exceptions.

Note 2. In other cases the elision of an *e* or *i* is indicated by an apostrophe. — (See below punctuation) as: erhab'ner for erhabener sublime, Betrug'ner for Betrugener deceived one, besügg'le! for besüggelte give wings, sel'ge for selige blissful, ew'ge for ewige eternal.

6. LONG are lastly and likewise EXCEPTIONALLY the following words in which the simple vowel is followed by a compound consonant. (For the pronunciation see alphabetical list of consonants below.)

a. by *ch* (see below consonants). Except Bruch brake, Spruch saying, Geruch odor (doubtful) all words with *u* followed by *ch* only are long and the following exceptionally: nach *after* (originally nah *nigh*) and its derivatives as nächst *next*, Schmach *shame* from schmähen to revile; hoch *high* (originally hoh) and its derivatives as höchst *highest*; and the following Imperfects: brach broke, sprach spake, spoke, (Sprache speech) stach stung.

b. by *dt*: Städt cities, todt dead and their derivatives (compare Stätte *stead*, spot, Tod *death*) also beredt (for beredet) *eloquent*.

c. by *st*: Ost East, Ostern Easter days, Kloster cloister, Trost consolation; düster dusky, Husten cough,

pu-ſten puff, Schu-ſter shoemaker, wüſt waste and their derivatives as: tröſtlich comforting, unverwüſtlich indestructible.

d. by ſ: aß and fraß ate, vergaß forgot, Maß measure, maß measured, Spaß fun, Stra-ße street, ſaß sat, Gefäß vessel; erbo-ßen to exasperate, bloß naked, blö-ßen to denude, flö-ßen to float, Kloß clod, groß great, Stoß (toss) shock, Pro-foß provost; Bu-ße penance, Fuß foot, Muß pulp, Mu-ße leisure, Grüß greeting, grü-ßen to greet, süß sweet, and words derived from the above as: gemäß according to, bü-ßen to expiate, Fü-ße feet, Grü-ße greetings.

In all other words the simple vowel followed by two consonants or by a double consonant is SHORT. (Compare the list of consonants below.)

Prefixes and suffixes (See Section IV and V) do not affect the power of the root vowels, except in the few words marked with * under 5, b, above.

C. SOUND OF THE CONSONANTS.

The usual arrangement of the consonants into gutturals, linguals and labials with their subdivisions is here omitted, as having been affected by recent philological inquiry and being scarcely of any practical value for the pupil.

LEADING REMARKS. 1. Every simple consonant is sounded in German, except the *h* after a vowel and in *th*, where it is even dispensed with by some modern Grammarians. (See above, Power of the vowels 3.)

2. The following consonants sound as in English: *f, t, l, m, n, p, r, t*, the *r* however without any admixture of *a*.

3. Beginning consonants are very soft, final consonant are sharp, especially *b, d; g* and *f*, the *b* more or less approaching the sound of *p*, *d* that of *t*, *ng* that of *nk* and *ß* (final *ß*) that of *ss* whenever they are placed at the end of a syllable and even when followed by another consonant. They, of course, resume their soft character when the word is lengthened by a suf-

fix beginning with *e* or *i*, as they then are sounded at the beginning of that additional syllable according to the mechanical law of German syllabing (Compare: God with Gott, word with Wort, rank with Rang, glass with Glas.)

4. In German and Saxon-English words the INTERCHANGE of the following consonants is common, and attention to it will facilitate the recognizing of words akin to each other. 1. *b* and *p* with *v* and *f*, as haben have, halb half, Dieb thief, tief deep. 2. *ch* and *k* (see Gutturals). 3. *g* with *th* and *t*, as Dank thank, Bad bath, that did. 4. *j* is often represented by the English *i*; as zwanzig twenty, Zeit time, kurz short, Wit wit. 5. *ag* and *eg* often represent the English *ay*, as Tag day, mag may, Weg way.

5. The following COMPOUND CONSONANTS *ch*, *ch*, *f*, *dt*, *ng*, *ph*, *qu*, *sch*, *sp*, *st*, *ß*, *th*, *ß* must be considered as orthographical signs for sounds not strictly represented by their individual components. Their pronunciation is given along with that of the simple consonants in their alphabetical order. — *fn*, *lf*, *lm*, *pf* and *ps* sound-like *k* — *n*, *l* — *k*, *l* — *m*, *p* — *f* and *p* — *s*.

6. *y* is used as consonant only in the Dutch word *Yacht* yacht.

In the following list only those consonants are given the sound of which deviates from that of the English character or which have otherwise a peculiarity.

The words ought to be carefully syllabled according to the rule given above: Power of the vowels 1 & 2.

B, *b* like *b*, but at the end of syllables like *p* even before consonants: beben (be-ben) to quake, bebst quakest, bebt quakes, bebt (bebt) quaked, Rabe raven, Grab grave, gräbst diggest, grob coarse, gröblich (gröblich) coarsely.

C, *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*, *l* and *r*, as in English like *k*: Co-car-de, cau-siſch, Curt, Cla-vier, Cre-dit; in all other cases like *t*, as Cä-ci-li-e, Cent, Cö-li-bat, Sym-bel.

Ch; *ch*, like *k* in the ancient German words Char (also Kar), Chur (also Kur); Charfreitag good-Friday,

Churfürst prince-elect. — *ch* like *k* in words of Greek origin at the beginning of syllables, as Cha-os, Cho-ral, Chrift.

Ch in French words like *sh*: Cha-ra-ter, Chif-fer, Cho-co-late.

Before *e*, *i* and *y* it is a palatal-guttural (see below).

THE GUTTURALS *ch* AND *g* are *pure* gutturals (like *ch* in the Scottish 'loch') after the *strong* vowels, in which the mouth is fully opened, but *palatal*-gutturals (resembling the *y* in *yes*) after the weak and modified vowels and after *l* and *r*, when the mouth is nearly closed.

ch shortens, *g* lengthens the preceding vowel. The following table fully shows their relation to each other and to the vowels.

PURE GUTTURALS (after the strong vowels).

ch and final *g* like *ch* in 'loch'.

g followed by a vowel between *ch* in 'loch' and *g* in *bugle*.

Ch-a-thesake, Tag (long)-day.
Wo-che week, wog (l.) weigh-
ed.

Ge-ge saga, myth.
Wo-ge wave.

Such is the power of *u* that it cannot be shortened by *ch*, unless accompanied by another root-consonant.
Bu-che beech, Bug bow.
Frucht (sh.) fruit, lugt (l.)
lurks.

Fu-ge fugue.
lug-ten lurked.

Lauch leek.

Au-ge eye.

PALATAL-GUTTURALS (after the weak and modified vowels and after *l* and *r*, when the mouth is nearly closed.)

ch and final *g* like *y* in *yes*, but strongly aspirated.
Re-chen (sh.) rake, Weg (l.)
way.

g followed by a vowel like *y* in *yes*.
Re-gen rain.

Et=chen oaks.	ei=gen own.
fi=chter sure, rich=tig right.	rich=ti=ger more correct.
lû=cheln smile.	Lâ=ger layers.
Lû=cher holes.	mô=gen may.
Bû=cher (long) books.	klû=ger cleverer.
fol=che such.	fol=gen follow.
Rei=ch calix, Balg bellows.	fel=ge felly.
mil=chen to milk.	til=gen blot out.

nd occurs only in the words: manche many a, Mönch monk, Tünche tinge, Fenchel fennel. the sound of ng see below under-n.

Ar=che ark, arg wicked.

far=gen economize.

The same sound have the suffix chen, as in Männchen manikin, and Ch at the beginning of foreign words before e, i and y, as in Chemie chemistry, Cherub cherub, China China, Chimäre chimera, Chylus chyle.

Note. We repeat the following exceptions; 1. short: Bruch, Spruch; 2 long: nach, Schmach, Sprache, hech, brach, sprach, flach and derivatives (See above, power of the vowels, §. a.)

ch (divided' ch — f) is simply the German sign for x (r) the latter being used in foreign words: Achse axle-tree, Sachsen Saxon, Wachs wax, wachsen to wax, grow; Och ox; Fuch fox; sech six; wachsen to cere. — In a few words ch occurs before f by composition and contraction, preserving its guttural sound, the f belonging to the second syllable, as nach=sehen to set after, nach=sam (wachsoms) vigilant, Buchs for Buches of the book. The same is the case with ch followed by a j in words like schuchzen to shout, schluchzen to sob, achzen to moan, frächzen to croak, lechzen to pant, and with the contractions sech=zehn sixteen, sechzig sixty.

ð like *ck* stands for *ff*, by which in syllabing it is sometimes replaced: *Äcker* (Äf-fer) acre; *Bock* buck, *Flode* flake, *trocken* dry; *Brücke* bridge, *Glück* (Ge-lück) luck; *decken* to deck; *sticken* to stitch.

D, *d* like *d*: *danke* to thank, *Donner* thunder; *Durst* thirst; *denken* to think, *dir*, *dich* thee; but like *t* at the end: *Bad* bath (*ba-den* to bathe), *Rad* wheel (*Rä-der* wheels), *Hand* hand (*Hän-de* hands); *Brod* (also *Brödt* and *Brot*) bread (*Bro-de* loaves); *Hund* (hound) dog (*Hun-de* dogs); *Herd* hearth (*Her-de* hearths); *Bild* picture (*Bil-der* pictures). — *d* sounds like *t* also before consonants in derivatives of nouns as *schäd-lich* hurtful from *Scha-de* scath, *jüd-lich* southern from *Sü-den* South, *fried-lich* peaceable from *Frie-de* peace. It is softened however in derivatives of verbs, as *dul-sam* to-lerant from *dul-deu* to suffer; *red-lich* honest (as one talks) from *re-den* to talk, *Send-ling* missionary from *sen-den* to send; *bild-sam* mouldable from *bil-den* to mould, *find-ling* foundling from *fin-den* to find. Like *t* however in *Ge-duld* patience, *be-redt* eloquent. *d* sounds like *d* in contractions, like *Händ-ler* (for *Hän-de-ler*) dealer; *Bünd-ner* (for *Bün-dener*) leaguer; *Red-ner* (for *Re-dener*) orator; *Wand-er* (for *Wan-derer*) traveller.

t like *t* only in *Stadt* (short) city, to distinguish it from *Statt* place, — in *Städte* (long) cities, to distinguish it from *Stätte* spot, — in *tot* (long) dead to distinguish it from *Tod* death, — in *töd-ten* to kill and *tödt-lich* (both long) deadly. — Lastly as contraction: *beredt* (long for *beredet*) eloquent, and in *gesandt* sent, *gewandt* turned, *verwand* kindred for *gesendet*, *gewendet*, *verwendet*.

G *g* as guttural see above. *g* at the beginning like *g* *n* gave: *gab* gave, *Glas* glass, *Gnade* grace, *Gras* grass, *Gott* God, *groß* great, *gut* good, *Gluth* glow, *Grund* ground. *g* ought to be somewhat softened before *e* and *i*: *gekannt* known, *gekauft* bought (Compare *gestern* with *yesterday*, *gern* with *yern*), *Gift* gift, *Gicht* gout. Before the same vowels in words from the French it sounds as in French: *Menage*, *Menagerie*, *Courage*,

Etage; Loge, logiren; Gellee, Genie, Melange; arrangiren, obligiren.

ng (divided n—g), like *ng* in LONGING (Germ. Verlangen): fan-gen to catch, han-gen to hang, san-gen sang, Sän-ger singer; Jun-ge boy, Lun-ge lungs; Jun-ge tongue; men-gen (mingle) to mix, sen-gen to singe, Sten-ge! stalk; brin-gen to bring, rin-gen (wring) to struggle, sin-gen to sing, schlin-gen to sling. *ng* at the end and before terminations of verbs is scarcely softer than *nk*; lang long, verlangst longest, verlangt longs, Fang catch, fängt catches, Rang rank, sang sang, sangst sangest; jung young, verjüngt renewed, Sprung spring; mengt mixes, fengst singest; bringst bringest, Ding thing, fing caught, Ring ring, ringt struggles, singt sings.

h, *h* like *h*: Haar hair; Horn horn; Hund hound; her hither, bisser hitherto; hin hence, hier here; Haupt head; heute to-day.

h after a vowel and after a *t* is not sounded and merely lengthens the vowel: (See power of the vowels, 1.) Hahn cock, hohl hollow, Huhn hen; rauh rough, hehr serene, holy, mehr more, the same in nahen to come near; dro-hen to threaten; ruhen to rest, glü-hen to glow; ge-hen to go; fle-hen to flee; that did, Rath advice, Tha-ten deeds, ra-then to advise etc. see below *th*.

J, *j* like *y* in *yes*: Ja yes, ja-gen to chase, Jammern lament; Joch yoke, jodeln Swiss singing; Jude Jew, Jugend youth; jauch-zen to shout; jeder each, jene yon, Jesus Jesus, Jerusalem Jerusalem.

Kn, *kn* like *k*—*n* (both sounded): Knabe (knave) boy, knal-len to clap; Knochen bone, Knollen knob, Knoten knot; knüpfen to knot, knurren to gnarl; Knecht (knight) hind, kne-ten to knead; knid-den to knock, Knirps shrimp, knistern to crackle, Knick& or Knir courtesy.

lf like *l*—*k*, (both sounded) as Bal-fen (balk) beam, Fal-fe falcon, Kalk (chalk) lime, Echalf rogue, Talf (talck) mica, wal-fen (walk) to full; Mol-fen whey, Volf (folks) a people, Wol-fe (welkin) cloud.

lm like *l*—*m*, (both sounded): Salin (calamus)

haulm, mal-men (maim) to crush, Bat-me palm, Bjaln psalm; Holin islet; Ul-me elm-tree; Helm helmet, Schelm rogue.

Pf, pf like *gentle p*—*f* (divided *p*—*f* when following the vowel). Pfaff parson, Pfahl pole, Pfand pawn, Pfarre parish, Apfel apple, stampfen to stamp, Kar-pfen carp (fish), Kaps bowl; Pfloß plug, Pfosten post, Pfropf stopper, Opfer offering, Hopfen hop, Kdpfen to knock, Knopf button, stopfen to stop, stuff; Pfuhl pool, Pfund pound, Pflug plough, pflücken to pluck, hupfen to hop, Kupfer copper, schlupfen to slip, schnupfen to snuff; Pfeffer pepper, Pfennig (†) penny, Pferd horse, Schnepfe snipe; Pfeife pipe; Pfingsten Pentecost, Pfiem awl, Pflicht (pledge) duty, Glimpf und Schimpf fame and shame; Sumpf (sumph) swamp, Sumpfe marshes.

Ph, ph (Greek) like *f* (never divided): Phalanx, Phario, Pharisäer, Em-phase; Simphonie, Phosphor, Phönix; Philantrop, Philosoph, Philister philistine (oppressor); Physiologie, Hieroglyphen, Zoophyt.

Pf, pi (s) like *p*—*s*: Pfalm, Pfalter; Pseudo; Pittig parrot; Psyche, Psycholog and at the end of German words: Klaps slap, Rapps-rapps hasty catch, Mops (Mopsen) pug-dog, — Pfäl I say.

Qu, qu like *kv*: Quacksalber quack, Quader free-stone, Quadrat square, Qual torture, Qualle sea-blubber, Quast tassel; Quotient quotient, quoll sprang forth; Quelle (well) source, quer cross, quetschen to squeeze; erquicken to revive, quillt springs forth, Quinte the fifth, Quirl (vertical) twirl, quitt quit, Quite quince, Quittung receipt.

S, s at the beginning of syllables, viz: before vowels and occasionally before *b*, *t* and *m* soft like *s* in *resign* or *wise*: Saal hall, Sack (sack) bag, Sa-se (fem.) cousin, ra-sen to rage; Sohn son, Sonne sun, losen to draw lots, Rose rose; sudeln to soil, Susanne Susan, Muse muse; sehen to see, Sen-se scythe, lesen to read; sicher sure, Sinn sense, nie-sen to sneeze; Ries-giant, Sbirre catch-poll, Sklave slave, Smaragd emerald; also in les-bar (for lesbar) readable, verweslich decaying, erwieslich demonstrable. *s* always at the end of syllables and be-

fore the termination *t* in verbs like *ss*: *Laß* carrion, *laß* read, *raßt* rages; (Comp. *Raß*, rest) (the following exceptionally short: *daß* that, *waß* what, *Gaß* gas, *Glaß* glass, *Gras* grass, but long in every other form as *Gas*se gases, *Gla*ser glasses, *Grä*ser grasses;) *loß* loose, *verloßt* allotted, *Moos* moss, *Haus* house, *Maus* mouse, (*Mäus*e mice), *Eis* ice; short again in *des* of the, *es* it, *wes* of what; *biß* (usque) till. *s* like *ss* also before the diminutive suffix *chen* as *Gla*s-chen, *Grä*s-chen, *Rö*s-chen, *Mäus*-chen; rather soft again before the diminutive suffix *lein* owing to an elided *e* as *Häus*lein (for *Häus*e-lein) *Mäus*lein, *Rös*lein.

sch, *sch* (the compound consonant) like *sh*: *Sch*ade scath, *Sch*ale scale, *Sch*arlach scarlet, *Sch*am shame, *Sch*af sheep, *Sch*laf asleep; *Sch*ottland Scotland; *Sch*uld guilt, *Sch*ule school; *sch*elten to scold, *sch*lecht (slight) bad, *sch*melzen to melt; *Sch*iff (skiff) ship, *Sch*ild shield, *Sch*irm screen; *Flas*che flask, *ras*ch rash, *ha*schen to catch, *fals*ch false; *Fro*sch frog, *Gro*-*sch*en groat (coin); *Bu*sch bush, *hu*sch hush; *Es*-*sch*e ash, *dre*-*sch*en to thrash; *Fis*ch fish, *mi*-*sch*en to mix; *rau*-*sch*en to rush; *Fleis*ch flesh, *hei*-*sch*en to ask, *frei*-*sch*en to shriek.

Sp, *sp* and *St*, *st* at the *beginning* are sounded like *sp* and *st* in English only in the North-West of Germany in the level-land of the Nether-Saxons about the mouth of the Elbe; in the rest of Germany they sound more or less like *shp* and *sht*, most decidedly so in the South-West and in Switzerland where Celtic elements can be traced. The medium will be found not only the most elegant but also naturally suited to the rounded position of the mouth which the predominance of strong vowels in German words demands. They may, therefore, be moderately aspirated at the beginning. At the end of roots they sound as in English owing to the mouth then closing; (final *st* see below) the vowel before *sp* (divided *s—p*) is always short. Examples: *sp*alten to split, *sp*annen to span, *St*all stable, *St*amm stem, *Sp*rache (speech) language, *St*raße street, *Ha*s-*sp* rasp, *Ma*s-*pel* rasp-file; *Sp*orn spur, *Sp*ott scoff,

stolz; proud, Stod. stick, gesprochen spoken, sprossen to sprout, Stroh straw, stroßen (strut) to be bloated, Knos-pe bud; spulen to spool, Spund hung, Stufe step, Sturm storm, Sprung spring, Spruch proverb, Strumpf stocking; Specht peak, Speer spear, stehlen to steal, Stern star, sprengeln to sprinkle, streben to strive, strecken to stretch, strenge stern, Ves-per vespers, Wes-pe wasp; Spieß spit, Spindel spindle, still still, Stimme voice, Stirn brow, sprießen to sprout, sprühen (spray) to sparkle, Strich stroke, stricken to knit, Ris-pe panicle, wis-pern to whisper.

ff and ß (the latter never divided) like ss; — ff occurs in German words only before vowels, chiefly before e and is, to please the eye, changed into an ß whenever the e is elided (Compare muß with muß). Words ending in ß derived from forms in — ssen resume the ff when a syllable beginning with a vowel is added. Examples: Gasse lane, Wasser water, fassen to comprehend, gefast comprehended, Faß vat, Fässer vats, unfaßbar incomprehensible, faßlich comprehensible, Fassung composure; Flosse fin, geflossen flown, floß, floßt flowed; Fluß flowing river, Flüsse rivers, Flüsschen rivulet, flüssig fluid; Fessel fetter, vergessen to forget; vergiß! forget, vergißt forgets, vergeßlich forgetful, wissen (wit) to know, weiß knows, gewußt known, gewiß certain, gewisse certain, gerissen torn, Riß tore, risset torest. The derivations, given here, will not appear strange, considering that the (abstract) infinitives, as fließen to flow, schießen to shoot (Past Part. geschossen shot) are themselves not primary forms.

ß occurs after a long vowel only in the following words in which it never changes into ff: aß and fraß ate, vergaß forgot, Maß measure, maß measured, Spaß fun, Stra-ße street, saß sat, Gefäß vessel, gemäß according to, Gefäß seat; erbo-ßen to exasperate, bloß naked, Blö-ße nudity, blo-ßen to denude, flo-ßen to float, Fluß clod, groß great, and all its derivatives, Stoß (toss) shock, sto-ßen to toss and its derivatives, Profoß provost; Bu-ße penance, bü-ßen to expiate, Fuß foot, Fü-ße feet,

Muß pulp, Muße leisure, müßig idle, Gruß greeting, grüßen to greet, süß sweet, süßen to sweeten, Preußen Prussia; außer besides, außen and draußen outside; heiß hot, heißen to call; Fleiß diligence, hieß called, weiß white and in all forms of words with ei and ie in which these diphthongs remain unaltered, as weißen to white-wash.

ß (like ss) occurs after a short vowel besides in the forms explained under ff only in the following and becomes ff when a vowel is added: Baß base, baß well, fürdaß (for better) forward, blaß pale, daß (conj.) that, (daß pron.) laß (loath) tired, naß wet, Paß pass; Roß horse, Troß campfollowers; Nuß nut, Ruß (retains ß) soot; miß (prefix) mis, niß (suffix) ness. In all other words it represents s, as Haß hatred, (hassen to hate); Sproß shoot (sprossen to sprout); Kuß kiss (küssen to kiss); eßt eat (essen to eat); Biß bite (gebissen bitten). ff (never divided) following the vowels or consonants like st. In the following the vowel is exceptionally long: (See power of the vowels, s, c.) Ost East, Ostern Easter-days, Kloster cloister, Trost consolation; düster dusky, Husten cough, pusten to puff, Schuster shoemaker, (Wust chaos) wüst waste, and their derivatives as tröstlich comforting, Wüste desert, unverwundlich indestructible. In all other words the vowel preceding the ff is short: Aft bough, Mast mast; Post post, Roß roast; Lust (lust) delight, Kruste crust; best best, Nest nest; Kiste chest, List stratagem; Faust fist; Leisten last, meist most; kannst canst; sonst else, Brunst ardour; Durst thirst, Gerste barley, Gewinnst (win) gain.

T, t as t in English. Before ia, iä, io, iu, ie in foreign suffixes it sounds like ts: martialisch, Partialc, Ter-tia, venetianisch; Ter-tiär; Conjugation, Proclamation, Ration, Destination, Motion, (exercise) Portion, Station; Spatium; Ger-tius, Helve-tius; Patient, Du-tient.

Th, th (never divided) sounds like t but lengthens the vowel of the root in which it occurs, both when it precedes and follows it: That dale, gethan done,

Thran train-oil, Thräne tear, That deed, Unflath filth, Rath advice; Thomaß, Thon clay, Thor (door) gate, Thron throne, Roth need, roth red; Christen-thum christianity, König-thum monarchy, thun to do, Thür door, Muth courage, Ru-the rod; Thau dew, thuer dear; Thee tea, Theer tar, Meth mead (beverage); Thier animal, Thimian thyme, mie-then to hire, rieth advised. The rootvowel remains short only in Pan-ther panther, Thurm tower, Wirth host and their derivatives, as Thürmchen turret, wirth-lich hospitable, and in Greek words in which the vowel is followed by more than one consonant, as Parthenon, Orthographie, Thyrsus thyrsus.

U, u in originally German words always like /: Vater father; Vogel (fowl) bird, Volk (folk) a people, von from, vor before; ver (prefix) far, Velden, Zeit (names), Behme secret criminal court, Vetter cousin; Vieh cattle, viel much, vier four. u in foreign words at the beginning like v, but at the end like /: Vagabond, Vandale, Motiv, Vulkan, Vesuv, vibrieren, Viper, Vistr, Visite, Motiv. If a vowel is made to follow the v again it sounds like v: Motive, vesu-visch.

W, w always like v: Wald wood, Wall rampart, warm warm, Wasser water; Woche week, Wolke cloud, Wolle wool, Wort word; Wunder wonder, Wurst sausage, Wuth rage; Weib wife, Weide willow, weiß white, weben to weave, Weh woe, wehren (war) to defend Wetter weather; wie how; wild wild, Wind wind, Wittwe widow; schwach weak; schwor swore; Schwellt swelling; schwer (severe) heavy, Schwester sister; schwinden to vanish, Löwe lion, Möwe sea-mew.

X, x like x or rather like ks: Kantippe, Alexander, Art axe; Orhst hogshead; Xerxes, Examen, fir, Mixture.

3, 3 and 3 (divided t — 3 or as well 3 — 3) sounds like a sharp t followed by a gentle s, the t generally being the essential sound. 3, 3 occurs at the beginning, as 3ählen (tell) to count, 3ähm tame, 3ahn tooth, 3apfen to tap (liquids); 3oll toll, 3opf (top) cue, 3orn

(scorn) ire; Junder tinder, Junge tongue; jaubern to tarry, jausen to touse; zehn ten, Zelt tent, zerren to tear, Zeit time; Ziegel tile, zimmern (timber) to build, Zinn tin, Zipfel tip; zwanzig twenty, zwölf twelve, Zwerg dwarf, Zweig twig.

The vowel followed by a *z* or *ß* is always short; the difference being merely orthographical, as the *ß* is used directly after the vowel, the *z* after diphthongs and consonants: Batzen bat (coin), Blatz baldness, Glanz (glance) brightness, Katz cat, Kauz owl, Kanzel pulpit, kratzen to scratch, Kranz wreath; Klotz log, Pöß! odds! Bolzen bolt, Holz wood, Schuß (shut) shelter, Schürz, Schürze (skirt) apron, Schmutz (smut) dirt, schmunzeln to smirk; heizen to heat, hetzen to chase, bait, Herz heart, Ketzer heretic, Kerze candle, Maße (measure) peck, schmelzen to melt, schmerzzen to smart, pain, Greiz avarice, Reiz charm, Kreuz cross, Blitz flash, blinzeln to wink, Hitze heat, Spitz Hal, Spitze (spit) point, Filt felt, Pilz mushroom, Wis wit, winzig tiny. Geographical names as Statz for Stadt, Graß for Gras, (both long) Greiß, Schleiß and Zeiß are abnormalities.

Some innovations in orthography recently attempted on onesided theoretical grounds as phonetic spelling as well as the resuscitation of old fashions, viz: the writing of nouns with small instead of with capital beginning letters are decided disadvantages, particularly to the foreign student.

D. PUNCTUATION.

This Section as well as the following containing the abbreviations, of course, to be referred to by advanced pupils only.

German punctuation follows simple and definite rules and is therefore easily learned.

1. THE FULL STOP (.), der Punkt is equivalent to the English period and demands a decided pause.

2. THE SEMICOLON (;), das Semifolon, is equivalent to the full stop and is used at the end of

one sentence if a close internal connection with the following sentence is to be indicated, the two sentences being otherwise separable. The sentence following the semicolon does not begin with a capital unless its first word be a noun; as, Ich kann es nicht finden; ich fürchte, es ist nicht hier.*) *I cannot find it, I fear it is not here.*

3. THE COMMA (,) das Komma differs in its application from the English comma. It indeed affords an opportunity for replenishing the lungs with air, yet it does not indicate a separating pause, but demands rather a RAISING of the voice, in such a manner, as to signify a logical connection of the preceding with the following part of the sentence. It is placed,

1. IN ENUMERATING equal elements of a sentence, to be comprehended under one idea, except when they are coupled by the conjunctions *und and, oder or*, as: Weiß, Gelb, Roth, Violett, Blau, Grün und Schwarz sind Farben. *White, yellow, red, violet, blue, green and black are colours.* Er sprang vorwärts, rückwärts, seitwärts, auf und nieder. *He sprang forward, backward, sideward, up and down.* Sie lachen, sprechen, singen oder schreien fortwährend. *They laugh, speak, sing or cry continually.*

2. Also when words addressed to a person are interrupted by a VOCATIVE, the latter must be placed between two commas. Wünsche dir, lieber Freund vor Allem ein starkes Herz. *Wish for thee, dear friend before everything a strong heart.* The same is the case with nouns and adjective clauses when used in APPPOSITION; as, Der Mann, ein Gärtner, war nicht zu Hause. *The man, a gardener,*

* In giving German illustrations to the grammatical rules the author has throughout observed these two principles. 1. He has preferred such words as, being akin to the English, could be readily understood and might leave the attention undivided for the appreciation of the rule in question. 2. He has, as far as possible, avoided the introduction of such grammatical elements into these illustrations as cannot be comprehended from the knowledge already acquired during the progress through the work. (See preface to the first edition.)

was not at home. Wir, seit langen Jahren Freunde, verstanden uns bald. *We, friends for many years, soon understood each other.* Die Mischung, grün von Farbe, war nicht löslich. *The mixture, green in colour, was not soluble.* Die See, die wilde, weite, rauscht und schäumt. *The sea, the wild wide (sea), rushes and foams.*

3. In simple sentences also an ANTITHESIS is marked by a comma. Du mußt springen, nicht klettern. *You must spring not climb.* Handeln, nicht warten ist mein Motto. *Act not wait is my motto.*

4. The comma is used in compound sentences BEFORE THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS and all those CONJUNCTIONS, which express the relation of the clause (sentence) which they introduce, to another part of the same compound sentence. As in these cases there is no comma used in English the reader should refrain from doing more than marking by the voice the LOGICAL CONTINUITY of the idea of the compound sentence. Sieh, ob er hier ist. *See if he is here.* Komme, wenn du kannst. *Come when you can.* Sage mir, wer er ist, was er ist, wo er ist. *Tell me who he is, what he is, where he is.* Es ist das Beste, das ich habe. *It is the best that I have.* Dies ist nicht der Mann, den ich suche. *This is not the man whom I seek.* If the leading clause is interrupted by an INSERTED DEPENDENT clause, the inserted clause must be placed between two commas. Der Garten, welchen du siehst, ist mein. *The garden, which you see, is mine.* (See construction of sentences, dependent clauses, Section XXX.)

5. Clauses containing an INFINITIVE WITH *zu* (to) are not separated by a comma when, as usual, they contain the object of the leading assertion. Ich hoffe meine Freunde zu sehen. *I hope to see my friends.*

6. ADVERBIAL PHRASES, which are placed between commas in English, are separated by commas in German only when several of them are enumerated or when used antithetically as above. Wir suchten dich in Hause, im Garten, auf der Straße. *We sought you*

in the house, in the garden, in the street. A sentence like: *He stated, on behalf of his brother, who was absent, that, on his return, he would meet his friends,* must accordingly be punctuated in German: *He stated on behalf of his brother, who was absent, that on his return he would meet his friends.*

4. THE COLON (:). Der Doppelpunkt is used before every VERBATIM QUOTATION. Er sagte: *comme mor-gen.* *He said, come to-morrow.* Also when a clause is to be introduced as expressing a logical consequence of the preceding assertion or its object as inferred by the speaker without the use of a conjunction. Hieraus folgt: er muß sein Recht aufgeben. *Hence it follows that he must give up his right.* Es ist klar: er will nicht kommen. *It is clear that he will not come.* Er will nicht kommen: man muß ihn nöthigen. *He will not come, hence one must compel him.* The colon is also used in CLASSIFYING and enumerating objects. Die Propheten sind: Jesaias, Jeremias &c., *the prophets are Isaiah, Jeremiah &c.* Es giebt mehrere Arten: die rothe, die weiße, die gelbe Rose, die Moosrose. *There are several species, the red, the white, the yellow rose, the moss rose.* — From its nature it will be seen that the colon is but an *intensified comma*, and that the pause which it demands, must be preceded by a decided raising of the voice, so as to excite the expectation of the hearer. The colon in fact replaces the words *thus, as follows, hence &c.*

The rest of the marks of punctuation have the same force as in English; yet it must be observed that the different construction of the German language requires more expression, that is, a more decided interrogative and exclamatory accent before the Fragezeichen (?) and the Ausrufungszeichen (!) the latter as well as the Gedankenstrich (—) being used with some discretion. The INVERTED COMMAS are replaced by „— preceding and —“ following the quotation. Er sagt: „Wir wollen sehen.“ *He says, ‘we will see.’*

The APOSTROPHE (') is the sign of an elided *e* or *i* and sometimes even *ci* in the words *eine*, *einem*, *einen*, *einer*; as, 's ist spät for *es ist spät*. 'Tis late. Sel'ge Ruh for *selige Ruh*, *blessed rest*. Wår' ich der Sturm; ich säng' euch lust'ge Lieder, (wåre, sänge, lustige). *Were I the storm, I'd sing you merry songs*. 's war 'ne kalte Nacht for *es war eine*, 'Twas a cold night. Mit 'nem (einem) Sprunge, with a spring. Vor 'ner (einer) Pforte, *before a gate*. Für 'nen (einen) Thaler, *for a dollar*.

E. ABBREVIATIONS.

a. a. D. (am angeführten Orte) *in the work quoted above*. — a. D. (außer Diensten) *retired from service*. — a. D., (an der Dosse) *on the Dosse*. — a. M. (am Main) *on the Main*. — a. D. (an der Oder) *on the Oder*. — d. h. (das heißt) *that means*. — d. i. (das ist) *that is*. — desgl. (deshalb) *likewise*. — d. J. (dieses Jahres) (lat. *a. c. anni currentis*) *of this year*. — d. M. (dieses Monats) *of this month*. — Bco. (Banco) *bank money*. — C. M. (Conventions-Münze) *Convention money*. — Cour. (Courant) *Currency*. — ff. (*et sequ.*) *and the following (pages etc.)* — geb. (geboren) *born* also like the French *née* preceding a lady's maiden-name. — gest. (+) (gestorben) *died*. — Hr. (Herr) *Mr.* — Hrn. (Herrn) *to Mr.* — i. J. (im Jahre) *in the year*. — m. o. w. (mehr oder weniger) *more or less*. — n. Chr. (nach Christo) *after the birth of Christ*. — der pp., Herr N. N. *Mr. so and so*, der pp. Müller, *the said Müller*. — quäst. *the thing or person in question*. — S. (Seite) *page*. — s. (siehe) (lat. *v. vide*) *see*. — St. (Sanct) *Sanct*. — u. a. m. (und andere mehr) *and others*. — u. dgl. (und dergleichen) *and the like*. — u. f. f. (und so fort) *and so forth*. — u. f. w. (und so weiter) *and so on*. — v. Chr. (vor Christo) *before the birth of Christ*. — vergl. or vgl. (vergleiche) *compare*. — v. J. (vorigen Jahres) *last year*. — v. M. (vorigen Monats) *last month*. — u. &c. — z. B. (zum Beispiel) *for instance*. — z. E. (zum Exempel) *for example*. — In

addressing persons by their TITLES in letters *Gw. Gwr.* — (*Gurr*) *Your*, (*Gurrer*) *Yours* occurs; as, *Gw. Excellency your excellency.* *Gw. Majestät* (*Gure Majestät*) *your majesty.* Similarly in documents, NEWSPAPERS etc. *E. M.* (*Eeine Majestät*) *His Majesty.* — *Jh. Maj.* (*Jhro Majestät*) *Her Majesty.* — *f.* (*föniglich*) *royal.* — *f. f.* (*fairferlich*) *imperial.* — *H. or Hoh.* (*Hohheit*) *Highness.* — *Durcht.* (*Durchlaucht, serenissimus*) *Serene Highness* etc. — Others like *A. D.* (*anno domini*) *in the year of our Lord.* — *A. M.* (*anno mundi*) *in the year of the world.* — *NB.* *observe.* — *P. S.* *postscript* are as in English.

SECTION III. THE ACCENT OR STRESS.

A. THE ACCENT IN SIMPLE WORDS. It has been repeatedly stated (See sound of the vowels 2, and p. 3, the sound of *e*) that the power of the German root vowels demands the preservation of a soft and almost mute *e* in the second syllable of many words in which that *e* is not pronounced in English. Hence the predominance of dissyllabic simple words with GENTLE SUFFIXES containing an *e* forms a characteristic feature of the German when compared with the English language. The intervening of these suffixes and also of many prefixes and little words with an *e* between stronger syllables, not merely prevents that harshness, complained of only where the nature of this soft *e* is not understood, and where the successive syllables are carelessly pronounced with equal force, but it even renders the language mellow, imparts to it a fine musical rhythm and makes it eminently fit for the rendering of the complicated metrical forms of the ancients. (See Section XXXII) *Comp: Diese braven Männer haben alle jene großen Thaten gethan, with These brave men have done all those (yon) great deeds.*

<i>Erwache, heil'ge Fluth des Sanges,</i>	<i>Arise, thou holy flood of song,</i>
<i>Und tausche fort in stolzen Wegen,</i>	<i>And rush forth in proud waves</i>
<i>Daß von der Macht des süßen</i>	<i>That by the might of the sweet</i>
<i>Klanges</i>	<i>sound</i>
<i>Sich fühle jedes Herz gezogen.</i>	<i>Each heart may feel itself drawn.</i>

The word *leben* *big alive*, *vivid* from *leben* *to live* is the only strange instance of a suffix accented instead of the root.

Indeed, so much is the language averse to a succession of strong syllables that even in the declension of nouns and adjectives a soft *e* of a syllable containing it is added to words naturally devoid of it, as *Mann* *man*, *Mannes* *man's*, *Manne* *to man*, *Männer* *men*; gut *good*, *gute*, *gutem*, *guten*, *guter* (inflectional forms).

B. THE ACCENT IN COMPOUND WORDS is decidedly influenced by the law explained above, so that

1. in compound nouns, adjectives, verbs and numerals the accent rests entirely on the first component, the second part being utterly reduced on behalf of the first. *Glas'haus*, *Haus'freund*, *danf'bar* *thankful*, *hart'herzig* *hardhearted*, *hand'haben* *to handle*, *rech'tfertigen* *to justify*, *acht'zehn* *eighteen*, *sech'sehn* *sixteen*. (See below 4 & 5). Exceptions: *harmher'zig* (*merciful*) and the compounds of *aller* like *allerhö'chst* *most high*, *allerlieb'st* (*alderliest*) *most dear*; similarly, *Alleman'n* *Alemanni*; in *nothwendig*, *wunder'schön*, the accent rests better on the first component. Others like *unter'thän'ig* *submissive*, *wiederho'len* *to repeat* are explained under the Prefixes Section IV, C, p. 29.

2. For the same reason in all words with prefixes not containing a soft *e*, the prefix usurps the accent of the whole word: *ab'gehen* *to go off*, *aus'gehen* *to go out*, *ein'gehen* *to go in*, *Ab'fall* *falling off*. (Those prefixes with *e*: *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *per*, *zer*, on their part again forming a softening element.) There are some prefixes used with and without the accent, for these see Section IV, C, p. 29.

3. In the same manner almost all suffixes have, either no accent at all, as, *fir'tig* *steady*, *glück'lich* *lucky*, *Jüng'ling* *youth*, *Klein'heit* *smallness*, or at least a very subordinate accent, as, *theil'haft* (*part having*) *participial*, *won'nesam* *winsome*, *Freund'schaft* *friendship*, *Bis'thum*

bishopric. The suffixes *ei* (lat. *ia*) and *tar* in the word *offenbar* 'manifest' only, however, have the principal accent, as *Arzenei* 'medicine', *Heuchelei* 'hypocrisy', *Eclaverei* 'slavery'; similarly *lei* in *einetlei* 'in the sense of all the same (to a person)'.

4. However, in words composed with the DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN or with the demonstrative adverbs *hier* *here*, *da*, *dort* *there*, the Demonstrative has the accent whether it be the first or second part; *dies'seit* *on this side*, *überdies* 'moreover', *da'mit* *with that*, *da'nach* *after that*, *nachdem* 'after that', *dem'nach*, *dem's* *gemäß* *according to*, *vordem* 'before this'; *hier'mit* *herewith*, *dort'hin*, *da'hin* *thereto*, *alshier* 'at this place'.

5. In all other COMPOUND ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS AND PREPOSITIONS the accent rests on the SECOND component: *bergan* 'uphill', *bergab* 'downhill', *hervor* 'forth', *vorher* 'before', *hernach* 'afterwards', *nachher* 'thereafter', *inzwischen* 'meanwhile', *gegenüber* *over against*, *überaus* 'exceedingly', *zuwider* *contrary to*. The only exceptions are also *thus*, *dennoch* *and yet*, and the compounds of *halb*, *mal* and *wärts* which are rather suffixes.

6. In WORDS OF FOREIGN ORIGIN the accent (because their formation was not readily understood) is mechanically placed on the LAST syllable, unless that syllable has been germanized as in *Charac'ter*, *Cap'i'tal* when the accent is given to the syllable preceding it. *Bals'a'misch* *balmy* and *luthe'risch* *Lutheran* must also be explained from their use in Latin. (Deviations from this rule will be given in the list of suffixes, Section V.)

C. THE ACCENT IN SENTENCES being neither a matter of euphony nor of instinctive feeling, but altogether of a logical nature, rests of course precisely on the same word on which it is placed in English, no matter where these words may be placed in the German sentence, as *ich habe den Mann' gesehen*, *I have seen the man'*.

As the pupil, however, is very apt from not understanding the German sentence he reads, to contract awkward and mechanical ha-

bits, it is of the greatest importance that his exercises from the very beginning should be such as he can readily comprehend and in this respect the first course of "*Dr. Ahn's New and easy method*" is invaluable. But even in using that book the pupil must be guarded against the following: 1. The accent resting in English on the object, as *I have seen the man*', and this object standing frequently at the end, the pupil is apt to place the accent in German mechanically on the last word although this will be found to be the verb; as, *Ich habe den Mann geseh'n* instead of *Ich habe den Mann' gesehn*. 2. The pupil, commencing the sentence with a good will but not being able to carry it through, is apt to give undue force to the beginning and on the other hand to droop towards the end, as *der Garten' ist nicht sehr lang*, while logic demands the very opposite: *der Garten ist nicht sehr lang*, *the garden is not very long*; *ich bin* for *ich bin' I am* &c. Here it must be shewn again that the object of pronunciation and accentuation is best attained by the most moderate and gentle application. 3. From one or the other reason the articles and prepositions which are the *least* accented parts of the sentence are generally pronounced with undue weight and in this regard too the pupil's attention must be carefully supported.

D. EMPHASIS may, of course, as in English be laid on any part of the sentence for which the speaker desires to claim the particular attention of the hearer apart from the logical nature of his communication; as, *Der Mann' ist nicht alt* (*the man but not the woman*) *is not very old*. *Der Mann ist' nicht alt* and *der Mann ist nicht' alt*, *is* and *is not' old*, for instance in contradicting, *der Mann ist nicht alt' (not old, rather young)*.

SECTION IV. PREFIXES.

(For details see Section XX & XXXI the facts given here having mainly reference to accentuation and orthography.)

The prefixes, properly COMPONENT PARTS of the word are always distinctly syllabled by themselves, as *be=enden to end*, *be=fallen to befall*, *ent=arten to degenerate*, *ab=brechen to break off*, *auß=athmen to exhale*, *bei=legen to lay by*, *zu=legen to lay to*, *vor=rennen to run before*.

A. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES are those which, like the English *be* in *befall* occur never otherwise than in composition with the word. Of these the following seven have no accent: *be* (Engl. *be*), *emp* or *ent*

(*e, ex*), *er* (*forth, thoroughly*), *ge* (*yea*), *ver* (*far, farther, too far*) *zer* (expressing *dissolution & destruction*). (*ver* sounds almost like *fr*, *zer* like *tsr*.) Examples: *bedecken* to deck, to cover, *entdecken* to discover, *empfangen* to receive, to obtain out of, *entspringen* to escape, *erblühen* to bloom forth, *erstieren* to freeze to death, *gelingen* to succeed with, *gewinnen* to win, *verbannen* to banish, *vermehrten* to increase, *verleiten* to mislead, *zerstreuen* to disperse, *zerstören* to crush, *zerstagen* to smash.

The words *hinter* *behind* and *wider* *against*, *contrary*, when prefixed to VERBS, as well as all prefixes of foreign origin are inseparable and unaccented, as *addiren* to *add*, *Concert* *concert*, *Protestant* *protestant*.

Of the following four inseparable prefixes *ant* occurs only in *Antlig* *countenance* and *antworten* to *answer* and its derivatives, and is accented; *miß* (Engl. *mis* or *dis*) is accented except in *mißfal'len* to *displease*, *mißglü'cken* and *mißra'then* to *fail*, *mißgön'nen* to *grudge*; *un* (short, Engl. *e, un, in*) mostly accented (see below); *ur* (long, Engl. *prime, elementary*) always accented except in *urplöz'lich* *all upon a sudden* und *ursprüng'lich* *originally*.

Note. The prefix *un*, sometimes accented and sometimes not offers a real difficulty. What Becker and his repeaters have said about it is simply evasive. The author can offer only the following results of his investigation as approaching the point as nearly as possible.

Un has the accent. 1. When followed by a simple noun, as *Un'danf* *ingratitude*, *Un'glück* *misfortune*, *Un'mensch* *brutal man*; only *das* *Unge'fähr* *the hap or random* has the accent on the root. 2. In all adjectives derived from the above compounds, as *un'danfbat* *ungrateful*, *un'glücklich* *unfortunate*, *un'menschlich* *inhuman*. The adverb *unmensch'lich* *vastly* has the accent on the root. 3. *un* is accented in all compounds with simple adjectives, as *un'edel* *ignoble*, *un'frei* *unfree*, *un'weise* *unwise*. 4. In all adjectives in *ig*, as *un'gläubig* *infidel*, *un'richtig* *incorrect*, except in *unablä'ssig* *unremitting*, *unirei'tig* *indisputable*, *untadelig* *unblameable*, and *unzäh'lig* *innumerable*. 5. In all adjectives in *isch*, as *un'biblisch* *unscriptural*, *un'grammatisch* *ungrammatical*. 6. In all adjectives in *sam*, as *un'duldsam* *intolerant*, *un'wegsam* *pathless*, except *unaufhalt'sam* *unrestrainable*. 7. In all adjectives formed with present and past participles of verbs. When in the latter the *un*

is followed by another prefix it is only accented when a contrary is asserted, as *unbedeckt* 'not covered', *un'bedeckt* not covered.

Un is generally not accented in the adjectives in *bar* and *lich* (unless they are derived of nouns), as *unfehl'bar* *unfalling*, *unsterb'lich* *immortal*. When in these the *un* is followed by another prefix, the root has the accent, as *unbesieg'bar* *invincible*, *unverwund'bar* *invulnerable*, *unaussprech'lich* *unspeakable*, *unwidersteh'lich* *irresistible*, *unwiederbring'lich* *irretrievable*. In adjectives with *unge* ending in *lich*, *un* has the accent, as *un'gebräuchlich*, *un'gewöhnlich* *unusual*.

B. SEPARABLE PREFIXES. All prefixes not included in the above list are called separable, because they may or may not be joined to the verb of which they form a component, somewhat similar to the English '*speak out*' and '*outspoken*' '*set up*' and '*upset*'. Many adverbs and prepositions are used as separable prefixes; the latter are marked in the lists Section VI by asterisks, the former are given Section XX, Note 1. Separable prefixes occurring in nouns, adjectives &c. are never detached, but only from verbs when the verb is not at the end of the grammatical clause and then they invariably stand at the end themselves. Wherever the separable prefix stands it has the **PRINCIPAL ACCENT** not only in the word but even in the whole clause; as, *Das Schiff ist ab'gesegelt.* *The ship has sailed.* *Wann segelt das Schiff ab'?* *When does the ship sail?* *Ich kann es nicht auß'sprechen.* *I cannot pronounce it.* *Sprich es laut auß'.* *Pronounce it loudly.* *Die Saat war ein'gepflügt.* *The seed was plowed in.* *Die Männer pflügen die Saat ein'.* *The men are plowing in the seed.* (The prefix *ein* stands for the prepositions *in, into*.)

Of two separable prefixes forming a compound, only the second is accented; as, *hervor'gesendet* *sent forth*, *vorher'gesendet* *sent before*, *premised*, *vor auß'gesehen* *presumed*, *auseinan'dergestreut* *strewn asunder*, *scattered*.

C. WORDS USED BOTH AS SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE PREFIXES are the following: *durch* *through*, *über* *over*, *across*, *um* *around*, *over again*,

down, unter *under*, *down*, voll *full* and wieder *again*, *back*. These are separable and accented when their force in the compound is quite LITERAL, as durch'drin-gen *to get through*. Der Regen drang durch'. *The ruin got through*; but they are inseparable and unaccented when the compound word has an ABSTRACT meaning, as durchdrin'gen *to permeate, to pervade*. Das Gift durchdringt' den Organismus. *The poison pervades the organism*. When followed by the sign of the past participle ge, or by the sign of the infinitive zu, these prefixes are always separable and accented, as der Regen war durch'gedrungen, — begann durch'zubringen. *The rain had got through, — began to get through*. Thus the verb setzen *to set* with the separable prefix über *over* means *to put across, to cross a river*. Hence: Die Franzosen setzten in Masse ü'ber, — würden in Böten ü'ber-gesetzt, — begannen ü'berzusetzen. *The French crossed in masses, — were crossed in boats, — began to cross*. On the other hand the inseparable compound überset'-zen means *to translate (words etc.)*; as, Die Franzosen überset'-zen manches Buch, — haben übersetzt', — wissen zu überset'-zen. *The French translate many a book, — have translated, — know how to translate.*

Not all compounds formed with these words have a double meaning; however either the meaning, or the position of the prefix according to the above rule will assist the pupil in finding the proper accent. Thus um'werfen *to knock over*, because literal, umge'ben (p. part) *surrounded*, um'gegeben *handed round, helped on (a cloak)*, voll'stopfen, voll'zustopfen *to stuff full*, voll'gestopft (p. part.) *stuffed full*, vollbrin'gen *to accomplish*, vollbracht' (p. part.) *done*, wie'dergeholt (p. part.) *fetches back*, wiederholt' (p. part.) *repeated*, un'terschlagen *to fold under*, unterschla'gen *to em-bezzle*.

When prefixed to a simple substantive the above words are always accented, and remain so in the derivatives of such compounds, as Um'stand *circumstance*,

un'ständig *detailed*, Un'terschied *difference*, un'terschiedlich *differently*.

Note 1. The use of *hinter* as a separable prefix, is not to be recommended; expressions like *hin'te rgehen* to go to a back room, *hin'te rbringen* to swallow being inelegant.

2. *Vor* is unaccented only in *vorhan'den* at hand, *vertreff'lich* excellent; *vorzüg'lich* pre-eminent.

Zu is separable and accented in VERBS as *zu'sehen* to look at; *ich sah zu' I looked at*. It is also accented in all other words except in the adjective *zufrie'den* contented, and in all compounds of prepositions and adverbs. *Zu* (to) used as the SIGN OF THE INFINITIVE, must be distinguished from the separable prefix *zu*, and is never accented, as *zu'zufehen*.

SECTION V. SUFFIXES, DERIVATION.

LEADING REMARKS. 1. MODIFICATION OF THE VOWEL. — Derivation in the widest sense does not mean alone the formation of words from roots by adding one or more suffixes (*child, childish, childishly, childishness*); — but also the plurals of nouns, (*children* from *child*), the comparatives and superlatives of adjectives (*elder, eldest* from *old*) and even the tenses of verbs (*sing, sang, sung*) may be considered as derived forms. In all these forms there appears in German, analogous to the above English illustrations, yet far more extensive than in any other language sprung from the Sanscrit, the peculiar phenomenon of a CHANGE OF THE VOWEL which in the three first mentioned forms is limited to its MODIFICATION, that means the blending of *a, o, u* und *au* with the sound of *e* or rather *i*, as *Mann man, männlich manly, Männer men; alt old, älter elder, ältest eldest*. In the *verbs* BOTH a complete change and the modification of the vowel occurs: *singen* to sing, *sang sang, gesungen sung, sänge (I) sang*.

The pupil must however understand at once that these phenomena, with rare exceptions, occur only in

such words as may be considered to have existed already in the most ancient stage of the language; and may be recognized by their expressing the most primitive notions, whence in declension and conjugation they are comprised under the ANCIENT or primary also called the STRONG form. See Section XIII, XVI, XXI.

These changes, far from being irregularities, vastly contribute to the simplicity, distinctness and even to the beauty of the language; in as far as they obviate the use of lumbering terminations, facilitate brevity and terseness of construction and exhibit the sonorous vowels in their musical vitality; as, for instance, in the very word signifying speech: *sprechen to speak*, *sprich speak*, *sprach spake*, *Sprache language*, *sprache should speak*, *gesprochen spoken*, *Spruch saying*, *Sprüche sayings*.*)

2. As regards DERIVATION in the common acceptation of the term, the pupil having to deal with derivatives but never to *form* them, it suffices for all practical purposes to state that in derivatives formed with suffixes the modification of the vowel is of common though not invariable occurrence and that the original word may be found by taking away the suffixes and the modification. The general force of the suffixes may be learned from the examples given according to the English analogies, as far as such exist.

3. In pronouncing and syllabing THE SUFFIX IS SEPARATED from the word only when beginning with a consonant, as *find-lich childlike*, *blau-lich bluish*. If the suffix commences with a vowel it receives the last consonant of the preceding syllable, as *fin-dish childish*, *san-dig sandy*, *la-den to load*, *güt-ig kind* (from *gut good*);

* The term 'ancient nouns, verbs etc.' ought not to have been abandoned, as it materially aids the pupil in remembering the words in which change and modification of the vowel occurs. That these in some forms are of a comparatively late development does not matter, as the etymological law of the phenomenon pre-existed, and in the case of the Anglo-Saxon and the ancient Norse languages appears in operation in the most ancient literary relics.

but again it is separated when the preceding syllable ends in a vowel; as, *Brau-er* brewer, *thau-ig* dewy.

4. German suffixes are not accented, or they are **SEMI-ACCENTED** if they contain the vowel *a* or *u*, whilst those of foreign origin have the principal accent. The exceptions in either case are marked in the lists.

A. ADJECTIVE-SUFFIXES: *bar* (accented in *offenbar* 'manifest'); *e*, *en*, *er*, *ern*, *haft*, *icht*, *ig*, *isch*, *lich* and *licht*, *sam*, also *end* in present participles and *en*, *t* or *et* in past participles, used as adjectives. Foreign: (all accented) *abel*, *al*, *ant*, *är* or *air*, *ar*, *el*, *ell*, *if*, *il*, *iv*, *ös* &c. Examples: *bar* in *danfbar* (thankbearing) grateful, *denfbar* (thinkable) imaginable, *trinfbar* drinkable; — *e* — euphonic in *böfe* wicked, *base*, *müde* tired, *weary*, *weise* wise etc.; — *en* and *n* in *golden* of gold, *golden*, *silbern* of silver, *silvery*, *wollen* woolen; — *er* in *bitter* bitter, *sicher* secure, *berliner* of Berlin, *londoner* of London; — *ern* in *eisern* made of iron, *steinern* made of stone; — *haft* in *schamhaft* modest, *lebhaft* lively, *meisterhaft* masterly; — *icht* in *regnicht* rainy, *nebelicht* (nebulous) foggy; — *ig* in *artig* mannered, *flüssig* fluent, liquid, *sandig* sandy, *windig* windy; — *isch* in *biblisch* biblical, *kindisch* childish, *narrisch* foolish; — *lich* in *älstlich* (old-like) elderly, *findlich* childlike, *mütterlich* motherly, *väterlich* fatherly; — *licht* in *gelblicht*, *grünlicht* slightly yellowish, slightly green; — *sam* in *folgsam* tractable, *furchtsam* timid, *monnesam* blissful, winsome. Participles: *bildend* cultivating, fashioning, *lebend* living, *wärmend* warming; — *gebunden* bound, *verbunden* obliged, *erschlagen* slain, *gebildet* educated, *belebt* enlivened.

Note. German suffixes are often added to words of foreign origin; the accent then rests on the syllable preceding the German suffix; as, *preservir'bar* preservable, *theatra'listh* theatrical, *manier'lich* mannerly.

B. ADVERBIAL SUFFIXES: *ends*, *lich*, *lings*, *malß*, *wärts*; as, *ends* in *eilends* speedily, *nirgends* nowhere, (*irgend* any) *vollends* wholly; — *lich* in *solalich* consequently, *fürzlich* a short time ago, *wahrlich* verily; *lings* in *hauptlings* head foremost; *rittlings* a-straddle,

seitlings from the side; — malß in einßmalß once, ehemalß, vormalß formerly; — wärtß in rückwärtß backwards, seitwärtß sideways, vordwärtß forwards.

C. NUMERAL-SUFFIXES (partly with adjective force): enß, erßei, fach, fältig, mal; as, erßeenß firstly, dritteenß thirdly, einerlei of one kind, dreierlei of three kinds, einfach simply, vierfältig fourfold, einmal once, dreimal thrice.

D. SUBSTANTIVE SUFFIXES. Of these the following indicate gender.

1. THE MASCULINE: em, ig, ing, ling, rich, sam; foreign: ain, ant, ent, eur, or (not accented in the singular, plur. ö'ten; as, Doc'tor, Docto'ren doctors) etc., etc. Examples: em only in Athem and Odem breath; — ig in König king, Rettig radish; — ing in Schilling shilling, Herring herring; — ling in Jüngling (from jung young) youth, Hößling (from Hof court) courtier; — Schwächling (from schwach. weak) weakling; — rich in Gänserich (from Gans goose) gander, Wütherich (from Wuth rage) tyrant. — sam only in Balsam balm, Gehorsam obedience, Gewahrsam custody.

2. THE FEMININE: ei (accented), heit, in or inn, teit, schaft, ung; foreign: anß, enß, ie, if (sometimes unaccented, masculine in Katholik Roman Catholic), ion, ive, ur etc. Examples: — ei (—y) in Brauerei' brewery, Fischerei' fishing, fishery, Reiterci, cavalry; — heit (— hood) in Kindheit childhood, Christenheit christendom, Freiheit freedom, Mehrheit majority, Menschheit mankind, Wahrheit truth; — in (indicating a female position) Königin queen, Herrin mistress, Gräfin countess, Löwin lioness; — teit (—city) Wahrheitsteit veracity, Neuigkeit novelty, Herrlichkeit lordliness, splendour, Freundlichkeit kindness; — schaft (—ship) Freundschaft friendship, Brüderschaft brotherhood, Mannschaft crew, Herrschaft dominion; — ung (—ing) Rechnung reckoning, Warnung warning, Festung fastness, fortress, Erkältung cold, Genesung recovery, Wirkung effect.

Note. It will be seen that the English suffixes do not always meet the corresponding forms in German, and therefore the pupil must

not conjecture too freely, and should altogether abstain from forming derivatives. Comp. *Christen=heit* *christendom*, with *Christen=thum* *christianity*, *Gleich=heit* *equality* with *Wahrschein=heit* *likelihood*, etc.)

3. THE NEUTER is indicated by *chen* (*elchen*) and *lein* which with the modification of the root vowel form the diminutives, generally employed as terms of endearment. Foreign: *meut*, *iv*, *ium* pl. *ien* (the last leaves the accent on the preceding syllable; as, *Stu'bium* study, *Stu'tien* studies). Examples: *Mann* man, *Männ=chen* manikin, *Vater* father, *Väterchen* darling father, *Mutter* mother, *Mütterchen* dearest mamma, *Hand* hand, *Händchen* little hand, *Haus* house, *Häuschen* und *Häus=lein* little house, *Dorf* village, *Dörfchen* pretty little village.

Note 1. Before both suffixes the terminations *e* and *en* are omitted; as, *Stume* flower, *Blüm=chen* and *Blüm=lein* floweret, *Faden* thread, *Fäd=chen* and *Fäd=lein* little thread, *Garten* garden, *Gärt=chen* and *Gärt=lein* little garden, *Rose* rose, *Rös=chen* and *Rös=lein* sweet little rose. If the root ends in a guttural; as, *Buch* book, *Wagen* carriage, either *lein* is used; as, *Büchlein* little book, *Wäglein* little carriage, or both suffixes are combined in *elchen*; as, *Büchelchen*, *Wägelchen*.

Note 2. The suffix *lein* is rather quaint and less usually employed than *chen*, as it occurs in Luther's translation of the Bible in a manner similar to the Engl. *hath*, *speaketh*, for instance „*Lasset die Kindlein zu mir kommen.*“ ‘*Let the little ones come to me.*’ „*Ja, Herr, aber doch essen die Hündlein von den Brosamlein, die von ihrer Herrn Tische fallen.*“ ‘*Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters table.*’ (Comp. the Greek text.)

4. The following substantive suffixes occur with DIFFERENT GENDERS: *de*, *en*, *end*, *el*, *er*, *icht*, *niß*, *sal*, *sel*, *thum* and numerous foreign suffixes. Examples: — *de* in *Be=hörde* (f.) authorities, *Gebäude* (n.) building; — *en* in non-derivatives; as, *Wagen* (m.) waggon, *Regen* (m.) rain, *Eisen* (n.) iron; — *end* in *Abend* (m.) evening, *Tugend* (f.) virtue, *Duzend* (n.) dozen; — *el* (frequent in non derivatives) *Hagel* (m.) hail, *Mangel* (f.) mangle, *Segel* (n.) sail; — *er* in *Bäcker* (m.) baker, *Reiter* (m.) rider, *Dauer* (f.) duration, *Feuer* (n.) fire; — *icht* in *Habicht* (m.) hawk, *Rehricht* (n.) sweepings; — *niß* in *Bildniß* (f.) wilderness, *Bildniß* (n.) likeness; — *sal* in *Leibsal* (f. and n.) trouble, distress, *Drangsal* (n. from *Drang* throng) op-

pression; — *sel* in *Deichsel* (f.) pole, *Gewinsel* (n.) whining; — *thum* in *Irrthum* (m.) error, *Wachsthum* (n.) growth.

E. SUFFIXES OF INFINITIVES. All verbs of German origin have *n* in the infinitive as *laden to load*, *bohren to bore*, *kühlen to cool*, *rauschen to rush* etc. A diminutive form occurs in *eln*; as, *lächeln to smile* from *lachen to laugh*; and a frequentative in *ern*; as, *wimmern to whimper*, *jittern to tremble*. Verbs derived from nouns in *l* or *r* form the infinitive by adding a simple *n*; as, *nageln to nail* from *Nagel nail*, *feuern to fire* from *Feuer fire*.

Verbs of foreign origin take the suffix *iren* which is accented in all its inflectional forms; as, *demonstiren (demonstrare) to demonstrate*, *dociren (docere) to lecture*, *agiren (agere) to act*, *poliren (polire) to polish*; *symbolisiren to symbolize*, *amüsiren to amuse*, *charmiren to charm*, *fraufiren to pre-pay*. In *regiren (regere) to govern*, and *spaziren (spatiari) to walk about*, *i* has been germanized into *ie*. In *gründiren to ground*, *to size*, *halbiren to halve*, *hantiren to handle*, *haußiren to hawk about*, *schattiren, to shade*, etc., the root is German.

SECTION VI. THE PREPOSITIONS

are here introduced, as a certain number of them are frequently used as separable prefixes, and as an early familiarity with them is of the utmost advantage to the student.

LEADING REMARKS. 1. The prepositions precede their objects; as, in *daß Haus, into the house*; *zu meinem Freunde, to my friend*; except in a few cases stated in the lists, when they immediately follow the object; as, *meinem Wunsche nach, according to my wish*; *Ihrem Willen entgegen, contrary to your will*. They can, therefore, never be separated from their object, as in the English, *the matter that you speak of*.

2. When thus used as REAL PREPOSITIONS, they are invariably the LEAST ACCENTED words in the sentence; except when they are particularly emphasized; as, *Er stand vor und nicht hinter mir. He stood before and not behind me*.

3. But if employed as SEPARABLE PREFIXES, (see Section IV, B) which is easily seen from their being either joined to the verb, or placed separately at the end of grammatical clause, they have generally the strongest accent in the sentence; as, *Ich will aus'gehen, I will go out. Wir gingen diesen Morgen aus'. We went out this morning.*

The prepositions which can be used as separable prefixes, are marked by asterisks. The sense of the compounds which they form cannot be conjectured, but must be carefully ascertained from the dictionary.

4. Sometimes one preposition, placed before the object, and a second placed immediately after the object, form a COMBINATION with a force essentially different from that of either of them taken separately; as, *nach dem Strande, to the shore; but nach dem Strande zu, towards the shore.* (See C. Combinations of prepositions). Sometimes a demonstrative adverb occurs in place of the second preposition; as, *nach der See hin, towards the sea.*

A. GOVERNMENT OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

1. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

anstatt or statt—instead of.

diesseit—on this side of.

jenseit—on the other side of.

halben or halber, (following its case)—for the sake of, on account of.

außerhalb—outside of.

innerhalb—within, inside of.

oberhalb—above.

unterhalb—underneath, below.

kraft—by virtue of.

laut—according to.

mittelft or vermittelft—by means of, (with an instrument).

um . . . willen; as, um Gottes willen—for God's sake;

for the sake of.

ungeachtet—notwithstanding.

unweit, unfern—not far from.

vermöge—by the power of, by dint of.

während—during.

wegen, (ob, obsolete)—on account of, because of.

zufolge—in consequence of, according to, (governing the genitive when preceding its object).

(unbeachtet—without prejudice to, may be introduced here on the same grounds as ungedacht. These, as well as wegen, occur both before and after their objects).

Halben, willen, and sometimes wegen, if used after personal pronouns, form compounds with the genitive of the latter. The final *r* of the genitive is then changed into *t* for the sake of euphony; as, *meinethalben*, for my sake; *ihrerthalben*, for her sake, or for their sake; *Ihretthalben*, for your sake; *deinetwillen*, for your (thy) sake; *unsertwillen*, for our sake; *Euretwegen*, for your sake; *deinetwillen*, for your (thy) sake; (*weßhalb*, *deswegen*).

2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

* *aus*—out of, from, of, (consisting of).

außer—without, (out of), except, besides.

* *bei*—at, by, near, with.

binnen—within.

* *entgegen*—(following its object), towards, against, contrary to.

* *gegenüber*—over against, opposite to, (often following its object).

gemäß—(following its object), agreeably with.

* *mit*—with, along with, (by).

* *nach*—after, to, (with the place), according to, (in the latter sense often following its objects).

nächst—next to.

nebst—together with, (Dr. *U. nebst Frau*, Dr. and Mrs. A.)
samt, (expressing appertenance) together with, along with.

seit—ever since.

von—of, from, by, (caused by, made by). In compounds the separable prefix *ab* *off*, is substituted for *von*.

Note. *Von* replaces the genitive of such words, of which a genitive proper cannot conveniently be formed; as, *das Volk von Paris*, the people of Paris; *die Hälfte von sieben*, the half of seven.

* *zu*—at, by, on, to, for (after materials out of which the object is to be made; as, The timber *for* the building, *Das Holz zu dem Gebäude*), *for* (with the design or object).

zufolge—according to, (governing the dative only when following its object).

* *gegenüber*—(following its object), contrary to.

The prepositions *längs* (along) and *trotz* (in spite of) are used with the genitive and dative indiscriminately.

3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

* *durch*—through, by.

für—for (instead of), and *for* (following articles to be consumed by the object; as, The food *for* the cow, *Das Futter für die Kuh*; The water for the engine, *Das Wasser für die Maschine*).

gegen—towards, (both in a friendly and hostile sense), against, compared with.

gegen—towards, to.

ohne—without.

fonder (obsolete)—without.

* *um*—about, round, for, at, (with the time; as, *Um fünf Uhr*, At five o'clock).

wider—against. (Observe the adverb *wieder*, again).

Bis (till) *entlang* (along), if not in connexion with other prepositions, require the accusative, in which case *entlang* follows its object.

4. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

These prepositions if used with reference to place govern the Dative when 'being in or at a place' is expressed; as, *Man tanzt in dem Saale*. *They are dancing in the hall* (being in the hall). They govern the Accusative when 'motion towards the object' is expressed; as, *Ich kam in den Saal*. *I came into the hall*. But their government is indefinable when they are used

without reference to place. They are then, indeed, most generally construed with the Accusative, the Dative being more suggestive of place; but a good dictionary should be applied to in each case.

* *an*—on, at, beside; (with the acc.) to (*tenf an mich*, think of me).

* *auf*—upon, on (the top of), at, in.
hinter—behind.

* *in* (in composition *ein*)—in, (with the acc.) into.

neben—at the side of, beside, (with things of a similar nature).

* *über*—above, beyond, on, over; (with the acc.) across, about.

* *unter*—below, beneath, among, under.

* *vor*—in the front of, before, (*vor* governs the Dative when referring to time) ago; *as, vor drei Jahren*, *three years ago*; with (*bleich vor Schreck*, pale with fright).

zwischen—between, among, betwixt.

B. CONTRACTIONS WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

occur in the following cases:—*am, beim, im, vom, zum*, instead of *anz, beis, inz, vonz, zu dem*; *zur* instead of *zu der*; *ans, aufz, durchz, fürz, inz, überz, umz, vorz*, instead of *anz, aufz, durchz, fürz, überz, umz, vorz*. Other contractions are less suitable.

C. COMBINATIONS OF PREPOSITIONS.

(See leading Remarks 4.)

Two prepositions occur combined in the following manner:

1. *zu*, in the sense of *towards*; — along with *nach*, *Er schwamm nach dem Strande zu*. He swam towards the shore; — with *auf*, if the motion is directed to a more limited point; *Wir sturten auf das Bier zu*. We stood in for the pier. *Er ging auf das Licht zu*. He went in the direction of the light. *Sie kommt auf mich zu*. She is coming towards me, She is coming up to me.

2. Auf and an, when employed in connexion with von, denote commencement; as, Von Jugend auf geglaubt, Believed from childhood; Vom Gemeinen auf gebient, Risen from the ranks. Von diesem Tage an kam er täglich. From this day forth he came daily. Von hier an wird das Land fruchtbar. From this place the country begins to be fertile.

3. Ab, on the other hand, along with von, denotes ceasing; as, Von Morgen ab soll kein Schiff mehr passiren. From to-morrow no vessel is to pass.

4. Aus, along with von, is used with the point or station whence an action is managed or directed; as, Von diesem Hügel aus leitete Napoleon die Schlacht. From this hill Napoleon directed the battle. Von Rom aus beherrschten die Päpste die Welt. From Rome the Popes ruled the world. Von meinem Fenster aus kann man die See sehen. From my window one can see the sea. Von Grund aus zerstört, Totally destroyed (of structures); (Von vorne herein falsch, Wrong from the very outset;) Von innen heraus, Developing from within.

5. Zu, an, vor, auf, &c., are used along with bis, to denote the measure or degree to which an action extends; as, Bis zu diesem Punkte, Up to this point; Bis ans andere Ende, Down to the other end. Wir verfolgten sie bis vor die Thore der Festung. We pursued them to the very gates of the fortress. Bis auf diesen Tag, To this very day; Raß bis auf die Haut, Wet to the skin; Getreu bis zum Tode, Faithful to death; Bis über den Rhein, Even across the Rhine.

(In phrases like zur Thür hereinkommen, zum Fenster hinauspringen, the herein, hinaus, &c., are separable prefixes to the verbs kommen, springen, &c.)

6. With prepositions referring to place, the adverbs hin, away from the speaker towards another object, and her, towards the speaker, both indicating the general direction, are frequently employed; as, Die Schiffe segeln nach Frankreich hin. The ships are sailing away towards France. Sie kommen von England her. They come from the direction in which England lies. Gegen den Aquae-

tor him. Towards or approaching the equator; (*Sie marschierten auf Belgrad los*. They marched upon Belgrade, *los* denoting hostility).

Observe also the phrases *von London her*, *von Berlin her*; as, *Ich kenne ihn von Berlin her*. I know him, having met him at Berlin. *Von Alters her*, Of old, formerly.

D. USE OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

(Chiefly as a reference in translating from English into German.)

Note 1. The third personal pronoun *it*, pl. *them*, when referring to things, as well as the Indefinite Substantive-Demonstrative *this*, *that*, cannot be construed with prepositions preceding them in German, as in Engl. *with it*, *for them*, *after this*, *against that*, and for these combinations Section VIII, Remarks on the personal pronoun, and Section XI, A. The indef. Demonstr., c. must be referred to.

Note 2. The use of present participles, introduced by prepositions; as, *instead of seeking*, *without listening*, *for doing so*, being altogether foreign to the German language, the pupil, in rendering such phrases must consult Section XXV, D, the Participles. (See, however, below 2, Time, m.)

A noun or pronoun with a preposition governing it, is called an **ADVERBIAL EXPRESSION**, the relations of place, time, cause, manner etc. being expressed by such phrases with adverbial force. Comp.: '*in this place*' with '*here*'; '*at that time*' with '*then*'; '*in this manner*' with '*thus*', etc. Adverbial expressions, however important in a statement, (for instance, a man *with* or *without* faith) are not essential for the formation of a sentence. They can afford no light as to its principal idea, but when taken up as they occur, are very apt to increase the difficulty of the translation. The student should, therefore, **AVOID** dealing with them, until he has found the subject, the verb and its object or objects which are simple cases, that is, not introduced by prepositions. After having found these essential parts of the sentence, the adverbial expressions will be easily arranged.

As the application of the prepositions is altogether idiomatical, it demands the strictest attention and

reference to a good dictionary for the adverbial expressions given along with the verbs. For the position of the adverbial expressions in sentences, see Section XXX, Rules on the construction of Sentences, C. The following hints are intended to assist the advanced pupil in rendering correctly some adverbial expressions of most common occurrence, for which the meanings given with each preposition in the lists may not be sufficient.

1. EXPRESSIONS REFERRING TO PLACE.

a. RESIDING in a certain country, city, street, house etc., requires *in*; as, *in Schottland*, in Scotland; *in Edinburgh*, in Edinburgh; *in dem Hotel*, in the Hotel. With small places in the country, *zu* is usual; as, *zu Abbotsford*, at Abbotsford. Residing at the house of a person or being there on a call, requires *bei* (Dat.); as, *Ich wohne bei meinem Onkel*. I live with my uncle; *Er war bei mir*. He was at my house. *Wir waren bei dem Notar*. We were at the notary's. *Ich kaufte es bei dem Händler*. I bought it at the grocer's; *bei einer Marktfrau*, at a market-woman's. Observe: *zu Hause*, at home; *Er ist nicht zu Hause*. He is not in. COMING FROM or BEING OF the above requires *von*, except, coming from a country, where *aus* is more common; as, *Er kam aus England zurück*. He came back from England; *von Berlin, Paris, of Berlin, Paris*. Notice: *auf der Welt*, *auf Erden*, in the world, *auf die Welt*, into the world, *aus der Welt*, von der Erde, out of the world; *auf dem Lande*, in the country, (not in town); *auf das Land*, to the country; *von dem Lande*, from the country; *in der or in die Stadt*, in or into town; *aus der Stadt*, from town; *auf dem Dorfe*, *auf das Dorf*, in or to a village. (village-life.)

b. GOING OR REPAIRING TO a certain country, city, street, building or house, simply to reach it, requires *nach* (Dat.); as, *nach Deutschland*, to Germany; *nach der Schweiz*, to Switzerland; *nach Berlin*, to Berlin; *nach der Georgenstraße*, to Georgenstrasse; *nach Numero achtzehn*, to number eighteen; *nach der Eisenbahn*, to the railway-station; *nach Hause gehen*, to go home. *Man läuft nach der Kirche*. They are running towards the church.

(*Nach* is also required with GOING OR ASKING FOR persons or things; as, *nach dem Doctor*, for the doctor. *Er schickte nach mir*, He sent for me; *nach einem Buche*, for a book.)

GOING TO PERSONS requires *zu* (Dat.). *Ich gehe zu meinem Bruder*. I am going to my brother; *zum Doctor*, to the physician (for advice). *Ich komme morgen zu Ihnen*. I shall come to your house tomorrow. *Schicken Sie zu mir*. Send to my house. COMING FROM the above, always *von*, except countries, where *aus* may be preferred; as, *aus der Schweiz*, from Switzerland.

c. GOING TO (UP TO) ANY OBJECT, requires *zu*; *zur Thür*, to the door; *zu dem Baume*, to the tree; *zum Brunnen*, to the well. *Going forward to meet* persons or things both with an amicable and hostile intention, is rendered by the preposition *entgegen*, prefixed to the verb (with the *Dat.*). *Sie kamen uns entgegen*. They came to meet us. *Gehe deinem Gesichte männlich entgegen*. Go, manfully to meet thy fate. (See above, p. 40. COMBINATIONS, *auf — zu*.)

d. Merely BEING IN OR ENTERING any building or enclosed place, hall, room etc., APART FROM ITS PURPOSE, requires *in*, (*Dat.* and *Acc.*), and COMING OUT OF it, *aus*; as, *Sie flüchteten sich in die Börse*. They took refuge in the exchange-building. *Die Truppen waren im Dorfe postirt*. The troops were posted in the village; *im Hause*, in the house; *im Saale*, in the hall; *in der Küche*, in the kitchen; *im Garten*, in the garden. *Er rannte aus dem Hause*. He ran out of the house.

e. Being in or going to PUBLIC PLACES, for the purpose of being INSTRUCTED OR ENTERTAINED there, is expressed by *in* (*D* & *A.*). Such are: *die Kirche*, the church; *die Schule*, the school; *die Versammlung*, the meeting; *die Gesellschaft*, the party, company; *das Concert*, the concert; *das Theater*, the theatre, etc. COMING FROM the same, requires *aus* (*Dat.*); as, *Sie gehen in die Kirche*. They are going to church; *Sie kommen aus der Kirche*. They come from church. *Nach der Kirche*, *nach der Schule*, is less correct (See above, d); *zur Kirche*, *zur Schule* *gehen*, properly means, to be a church goer, to attend school.

f. On the other hand, *auf* (*Dat.* & *Acc.*) with being *in* or *at*, or going *to* a place, and *von* (*D.*) with coming *from*, is used with: *die Universität*, the university, *das Gymnasium*, the gymnasium, and other academical institutions, (*but Professor, Lehrer an der Universität etc.*, *professor, teacher in the university etc.*); and besides with PLACES where people ENJOY themselves or TRANSACT BUSINESS, independently of instructors or performers; as, *der Ball*, the ball, *die Promenade*, *der Spaziergang*, the public walk, *die Jagd*, the hunt; *der Markt*, the market; *die Straße*, the street; *der Weg*, the road; *der Pfad*, the path; *die Börse*, the exchange; *die Post*, the post; *das Rathhaus*, the town-hall; *die Parade*, the parade; *die Wache*, the guard. Similarly, *auf der Welt*, in the world; *auf die Welt*, into the world; *auf dem Felde*, *auf das Feld*, in or to the field (for work etc.); *but im Felde*, in's field, being in, or taking the field (in a campaign). Notice: *in der* or *die* *vornehme, gelehrte u. Welt*, in or into the fashionable, learned etc. world.

g. TOPOGRAPHICAL VICINITY is expressed by *bei*, *near*, or *in der Nähe von*, *in the neighbourhood of*; as, *Sorrento bei Neapel*, Sorrento near Naples; *der Arthur's Sitz in der Nähe von Edinburgh*, Arthur's Seat near Edinburgh; or by *unweit* (*Gen.*) *not far from*; *unweit der Mündung des Stromes*, not far from the mouth of the river. TRAVELLING to one place by another, is expressed by *über* (*Acc.*); *Wir gingen über Dresden und München nach dem Rhein*. We went to the Rhine by Dresden and Munich.

h. ON, ON THE TOP OF, is rendered by *auf*; as, *auf dem Berge*, on the hill; *auf den Berg*, to the top of the hill; *auf der See*, on the sea (in *See*, at sea). *Das Schiff lief auf den Strand*. The vessel ran ashore; *auf den Grund*, took the ground.—*On, beside, touching at, an*; as, *Frankfurt am Main*, Frankfort on the Maine; *am linken Ufer*, on the left bank; *am Rande*, on the brink of; *am Lande*, on or near the land, shore. *An (D. & A.)* is on the whole used to express PROXIMITY OF OBJECTS OF DIFFERENT CHARACTER; as, *Er steht an der Ecke*. He stands at the corner. *Ich trat an's Fenster*. I stepped to the window. *Setze dich an die Thür*. Go and stand at the door. *Wir saßen am Tische*. We sat at the table; (but *bei Tische*, at dinner, supper). Similarly *LEANING etc. AGAINST*; *an der Wand lehrend oder befestigt*, leaning or fastened against the wall. *Neben beside*, on the other hand, is used with THINGS SIMILAR IN NATURE; as, *Sie saß neben ihrer Schwester*. She sat beside her sister. *Neben der Eiche steht eine Buche*. Beside the oak stands a beech-tree.

i. DISTANCE AND EXTENT OF MOVEMENT are expressed by *bis to, as far as*, which requires no other preposition before the names of places and before adverbs; as, *Wie weit ist es bis N?* How far is it to N? *Napoleon kam bis Moskau*. Napoleon came as far as Moscow; *bis hieher und nicht weiter*, unto this place and not farther. Otherwise it is construed as follows, *Bis an to, TOUCHING any line, boundary or point*; *bis an den Rand*, to the very edge; *bis an die Gabe*, as far as the Elbe; *bis an die Ohren*, up to the ears.—*Bis auf, to some territory*; *bis auf deutsches Gebiet*, to the German territory; *to the top of*; *bis auf den Gipfel des Berges*, to the top of the hill; also *through—to*; *naß bis auf die Haut*, wet to the very skin; *bis auf den Knochen*, to the very bone. *Es reichte bis auf den Grund*. It reached to the very bottom.—*Bis zu, up to some object*; *bis zum Hause*, as far as the house; *bis zur Brücke*, as far as the bridge; *bis zur Thür*, as far as the door.—*Bis in, penetrating into*; *bis in die Wälder*, into the very woods; *bis in das Herz*, into the very heart; *bis in die Stube*, even into the room.—*Bis nach, WITH PLACES*; *bis nach Paris*, as far as Paris.—*Bis vor, to the outside of*; *bis vor die Thore*, to the very gates; *bis vor die Hausthür*, as far as the street.—*Bis über, beyond*; *bis über den Rhein*, beyond, as far as, across the Rhine; *bis über die See*, even beyond the sea.

k. Above and below are rendered by *oberhalb* and *unterhalb* with the Gen. if ON A CERTAIN LINE, (road, river,) a part or place *above, or below a certain fixed point*, is mentioned; as, *Die Themse ist schon oberhalb London schiffbar*. The Thames is navigable even above London. *Der Arm war unterhalb des Ellenbogens gebrochen*. The arm was broken below the elbow. OTHERWISE, *above* is rendered by *über*, and *below* by *unter*, both with the Dat. & Acc.

l. PASSING-BY etc. Some compounds of *vor* with other prepositions must be observed. These govern the Dat., and are generally used in connexion with verbs expressing locomotion. Thus *vorbei* and *vorüber* express a *passing-by in the manner indicated by the verb*; as,

vorbeistiegen, (an) to fly past; vorüber tanzen (an), to dance past; vorüber rattle, (an) to rattle past; Er ging mit or an mir vorbei or vorüber. He passed me or went past me. Er schlich sich an den Wachen vorbei. He stole past the sentinels.

Voran and vorauf express a moving at the head of; as, vorausziehen, to march at the head of; voranstürmen, to rush at the head of; voraus, before, in advance, and zuvor, are used in a similar sense with other verbs; as, voraussenden, to send off before; zuvorthun, to outdo, to excel.

For other expressions consult THE LISTS of prepositions, and p. 40, C. COMBINATIONS of prepositions, also Section XVIII, on the use of the cases.

2 EXPRESSIONS REFERRING TO TIME.

a. CHRONOLOGICAL EXPRESSIONS OF TIME, (See also, below, c.) like the following, may be rendered by the *mere Accusative*, as governed formally by the preposition auf, (see p. 49, s for, auf); as, den zweiten October, the second of October; Wir sind dieses Jahr glücklicher. We are more fortunate this year; künftiges Jahr, next year; diesen Monat, this month; vorigen Monat, last month; kommenden Monat, next month; vorige Woche, last week; diesen Morgen, this morning; diese Nacht, this night; — (with the verb in the past tense,) last night, — (with the verb in the present or future tense), to night; heute Abend, to night, this evening; gestern Abend, last night, evening. Das letzte Jahr, der letzte Monat &c. mean the last in a series; — den andern Tag, the same as den folgenden Tag, the next or the following day, (the other day is neulich); den ganzen Tag, all the day.

b. In stating simply the SEASON OR PART OF THE DAY, during which a state or action usually progresses (see also, below, d.), the MERE GENITIVE, as formerly governed by some preposition, is used (see below, DURING, während); as, des Sommers (während des Sommers), in, during summer; des Winters, in winter-time. In spring, in autumn usually, im Frühjahr (spring-season), im Frühling, (in spring weather), and im Herbst, in autumn. Des Morgens, in the morning-time; des Tags, in the day-time; des Abends, in the evening; des Nachts, during the night; also des Sonntags or Sonntags, on Sundays; des Montags etc.; eines Tages, one (of one) day; eines Morgens, one morning; eines Abends, one evening.

c. THE DATE OF AN EVENT, in English in or on the, may be expressed likewise, 1st, by in (Dat.); in dem or im Jahre 1483, in the year 1483; im neunzehnten Jahrhundert, in the nineteenth century; im Januar, Februar &c., any time in January, February etc.; im Frühjahr, Sommer &c., any time or some time in spring, summer. Ich erwarte ihn in diesem Monate, I expect him (some day) this month; in dieser Woche, this week; in diesem Augenblicke, at this moment; noch in dieser Stunde, this very hour. (In der Jugend, in youth; im Alter, in old age; im Leben und Sterben, in life and death.) 2^{dly} with the DAYS OF THE MONTH OR WEEK, an (Dat.) is used, as well as the mere accusative, (see above, a); as, am zweiten

October, on the second of October; *an einem Dienstage*, on a Tuesday, *am Donnerstage*, den 4. April 1861, on Thursday, the fourth of April 1861; *an diesem Morgen*, on that morning.

d. *An* with the force of *in* is used in the expressions *am Morgen*, in the morning; *am Tage*, in the day-time; *am Mittage*, at noon-tide; *am Nachmittage*, in the afternoon; *am Abende*, in the evening; *am Sonntage*, on Sunday; *am Freitage*, on Friday, etc., etc.

Bei Tage, by daylight; *bei Nacht*, by night (when it is dark); *in der Dämmerung*, *im Zwielicht*, in the dawn, by twilight.

e. THE HOURS OF THE DAY are used with *um* at; *um acht Uhr Morgens*, at eight o'clock, A. M.; *um drei Uhr Nachmittags*, at three o'clock, P. M. But *zu dieser Stunde*, *zu derselben Zeit*, at the same hour, time; *zu gleicher Zeit*, simultaneously, *in diesem Augenblicke*, at that moment. Also with *gegen* about; *gegen neun Uhr Abends*, about nine o'clock in the evening; *gegen ein Uhr Nachts*, about one o'clock at night; *gegen Mittag*, about noon; *gegen Mitternacht*, about midnight, but *um Mitternacht*, precisely at midnight.

f. *Um*, however, has the force of *gegen* about before any LARGER SECTION OF TIME; as, *um* or *gegen die Mitte des Jahrhunderts*, about the middle of the century; *um* or *gegen das Jahr 450*, about the year 450; *um* or *gegen Ostern*, about Easter.

g. TIME PREVIOUS TO is expressed by *vor* with the Dat.; 1) *before*; *vor dieser Periode*, previous to this period; *vor sechs Uhr*, before six o'clock; *vor meiner Abreise*, *Ankunft*, before my departure, arrival. 2) *ago*; *vor einem Jahre*, a twelvemonth ago, *vor drei Tagen*, three days ago.

h. COMMENCEMENT by *in* and *am*; *im* or *am Anfange*, in the beginning; *anfangs*, for some time in the beginning; *vom Anfange*, from the beginning.

i. CONTINUANCE (1) with the date from which, or less properly, with the period during which, a still continuing state or action has been going on, is expressed by *seit* (Dat.) *ever since*, which preposition gives the German present tense the force of the English perfect; as, *Ich bin seit 1850 in Edinburgh*. I have been in Edinburgh since (ever since) 1850; *Er ist seit mehreren Monaten abwesend*. He has been absent for several months. *Er spricht seit ein Uhr* or *seit zwei Stunden*. He has been speaking since one o'clock or these two hours.

k. CONTINUANCE (2) of one action, state etc. *during* the whole extent of another, is expressed by *während* *during*. *Während des Protectorats* war England gestört. During the protectorate England was seared. *Sie stehen während des Gebets*. They stand during prayer. *Während*, however, occurs also in expressions like the following. *Es geschah während meiner Anwesenheit*. It happened during my sojourn there. *Sie starb während seiner Abwesenheit*. She died during his absence. *In seiner Anwesenheit* etc., When he is present, in his presence etc.

l. CONTINUANCE (3) as expressed by *for* (*for days*, *for weeks*) is not rendered by a preposition, but by the adverb *lang* suffixed to

the term of time; (see, however below, *s* Futurity) as, *Stunden lang*, for seconds; *Minuten lang*, for minutes. *Ich saß drei Stunden lang*. I sat for three hours. *Ich mußte Tagelang warten*. I had to wait for days. *Er ist wochenlang abwesend*. He is absent for weeks. *Irrthümer bestehen oft Jahrtausende lang*. Errors often continue for thousands of years.

m. CONTINUANCE (4) of a state or action ACCOMPANYING another more or less ACCIDENTALLY, is expressed by *bei* (Dat.) chiefly before infinitives used as nouns and rendered participially in English; as, *Er raucht beim Lesen*. He smokes whilst reading. *Du stehst besser beim Singen*. You had better stand when singing. *Nimm dich beim Fischen in Acht*. Take care of yourself when fishing.

n. In or during THE REIGN OF (not implying the whole duration) is rendered by *unter* (Dat.); as, *unter der Regierung Friedrich des Zweiten*, or simply *unter Friedrich dem Zweiten*, under the reign of Frederic II. *Unter den Hohenstaufen blühte die deutsche Dichtkunst*. German poetry flourished under the Hohenstaufen emperors.

Unter during occurs also similarly in the following expressions: *Es geschah unter dem Gottesdienste*. It happened during divine service. *Unter der Tafel war Musik*. There was music during dinner-time (not continually); *unter der Arbeit*, whilst at work. (*Ueber Tische* wurde viel geredet. There was much talk at table.)

o. ON, with the OCCASION when an event takes place, is rendered by *bei* (Dat.); *bei dieser Gelegenheit*, on this occasion; *bei meiner Ankunft*, Abreise, on my arrival, departure; *bei dem Ausbruche des Krieges*, on the breaking out of the war; *bei seiner Flucht*, on his fleeing; *beim Ausbruche*, on starting; *bei seinem Regierungsantritte*, on his accession to the throne; *beim Eintreten*, on entering; *beim Hinausgehen*, on leaving (the room etc.); *beim Scheiden*, at parting.

Bei often implies both time and cause; as, *bei seinem Anblicke*, at the sight of him; *bei diesem Unwetter*, in this, and owing to, this terrible weather; *bei der Nähe der Gefahr*, the danger being so near.

p. AT, with the occasion is likewise *bei*; *bei Tagesanbruch*, at day-break; *beim Sonnenuntergange*, at sunset; *bei dieser Zusammenkunft*, at this interview; but, in diesem Augenblicke, Momente, at this moment, instance; also *im Kriege*, in time of war; *im Frieden*, in peace.

Notice the use of the TERMS *Krist*, *Stunde*, *Zeit*, with *zu*, *at*, *in*, in the following expressions: *zu dieser Krist*, *zu dieser Stunde*, at this time (at present); *zur Stunde*, presently; *zur guten, bösen Stunde*, in a good, an evil hour; *zur rechten Stunde*, Zeit, very opportunely, providentially; *zu gelegener Stunde*, Zeit, at a convenient hour, time; *zu selber Krist*, Zeit, zur selben Stunde, then, at that time; *alles zu seiner Zeit*, everything in its season; *zur Zeit*, zur rechten Zeit, at the proper time, in time.

r. FUTURITY. (1) REQUIRING, PROMISSING a thing for a term, is expressed by *zu* (Dat.); as, *Ich brauche es zu morgen*. I want it for to-morrow. *Er versprach es zum Montage*. He promised it for

Monday. Ich suche einen Diener zum Neujahr. I am seeking a servant for the new year; zum Termin, for the term. In, (D.) in, and binnen, (D.) within, correspond in their use with the English.

3. FUTURITY. (2) MAKING ARRANGEMENTS FOR, or POSTPONING proceedings for a period or date to come, is expressed by *auf* (Acc.); as, Leihen Sie es mir auf 14 Tage. Lend it to me for a fortnight. Die Versammlung war auf den Dritten berufen. The meeting was called for the third; auf acht Tage vertagt, adjourned for a week; auf einige Tage vertagt, from home for a few days. Das Concert ist auf Donnerstag verschoben. The concert has been postponed till Thursday; auf Wiedersehn, au revoir; pünktlich auf die Minute, punctual to the minute.

Auf must not be confounded with *bis* (Act.) *until*, which is used as referring to the **TERMINATING** of a period. Ich bin bis fünf Uhr beschäftigt. I shall be busy till five o'clock.

to or *until* with the **EXTENT OF TIME** is rendered by *bis*, which requires no other preposition before the *hours of the day*; as, bis 6 Uhr, till 6 o'clock;—before the *days of the week*; as, bis Mittwoch, till Wednesday;—before the *terms of the year*; as, bis Neujahr, till New-year; bis Ostern, Pfingsten, Johannis, Michaelis, Martini, till Easter, Whitsuntide etc.; bis Weihnachten, till Christmas; and before *adverbs*: as, bis vorgestern, till the day before yesterday; gestern, yesterday; heute, to day; morgen, to morrow; übermorgen, the day after to morrow; bis jetzt, until now; bis dann, bis dahin, until then.

Bis, so, until, requires another preposition in all expressions not stated above; as, bis an, up to (**EXTENSION**); bis an's Ende der Tage, to the very end of time; Er glaubte es bis an seinen Tod. He believed it to his death; bis an den Morgen, till morning came. Similarly, bis auf (**CONTINUATION**); bis auf den heutigen Tag, to this very day; bis auf diese Stunde, to this very hour.—*Bis in* (**PENETRATING INTO**); treu bis in den Tod, faithful till death; bis in die Mitte des Jahrhunderts, to the middle of the century; bis in den Sommer, into summer; bis in die Nacht, till late at night.—*Bis zu* (**COMPLETION**); bis zum Morgen, till it was morning; bis zum Schlusse, bis zum Ende, to the conclusion, to the end; bis zum letzten Augenblicke, to the last moment.—*Bis über* (**EXTENSION BEYOND**); bis über das Grab, beyond the grave; bis über den gesetzten Termin, beyond the term fixed.—*Bis nach* Neujahr, till after the new year.

3. EXPRESSIONS REFERRING TO CAUSE, REASON AND MOTIVE.

a. BY, WITH THE PASSIVE VOICE (1) before the **ORIGINATING** agent, is *von* (Dat.); as, von den Eltern geliebt, loved by the parents; von den Römern erbaut, built by the Romans; von den Vandalen zerstört, destroyed by the Vandals; Wallenstein von Schiller, Wallenstein (written) by Schiller; von einer Lokomotive gezogen, drawn by a locomotive-engine; von einer Kugel getroffen, hit by a bullet. Gesehtigt, gemacht von, made by; gemacht aus or von, made of.

b. BY, THROUGH (2) in the sense of BY MEANS OF, is *durch* (Acc.); as, *durch* den Glauben gekräftigt, strengthened by faith; *durch* deine Worte getröstet, comforted by thy words; *durch* einen Schuß getödtet, killed by a shot; *durch* eine Maschine gehoben, lifted by means of an engine; *durch* einen Fall beschädigt, hurt by a fall.

(*By dint of, by the power of, vermöge* (Gen.); *by means of* an instrument, *mittels* (Gen.) eines Instruments (mit D.))

c. FROM (OF) ARISING (PROCEEDING) FROM with the direct cause is *von* (Dat.) with the verbs *kommen*, *herrühren*; as, Das kommt von deinem Ungehorsam her. That arises (results) from your disobedience. Die Begriffe der meisten Menschen rühren von oberflächlichen Eindrücken her. The notions of most men proceed from superficial impressions. Entspringen and erwachsen require *aus* (Dat.); as, Große Ereignisse entspringen nicht aus kleinen Ursachen. Great events do not arise from small causes. Viel Gutes wird dir daraus nicht erwachsen. Much good will not accrue to you from that.

Entstehen, werden, *to grow into*, require *aus* when cause and result are in substance the same; as, Der Baum entsteht aus dem Keime. The tree springs from the germ. Aus dieser Neigung entstand eine Leidenschaft. From this inclination arose a passion; Aus dem Kinde wird ein Mann. (Of) a child becomes a man. (Werden has also *zu* (Dat.); as, Der Knabe wurde zum Manne. The boy became a man.) But *durch* (Acc.) is required with a concomitant cause; as, Der Regen entsteht *durch* (through) die Verdichtung der Dünste. Rain arises from the condensation of vapours. Der Aufruhr entstand *durch* einen Streit zweier Männer. The crowd arose from a quarrel of two men. Also *bestehen*, *to consist of*, and *sich entwickeln*, *to develop*, require *aus*; as, die Flamme besteht aus Gasen. The flame consists of gases. Die Pflanze entwickelt sich aus dem Samen. The plant is developed from the seed.

FROM WITH THE SOURCE OF INFORMATION is *aus*; as, aus Büchern, Zeitungen, from books, newspapers; FROM WITH THE INFORMANT is *von*; as, Ich erfuhr es von Ihrem Bruder. I learned it from your brother.

d. ON, UPON, WITH THE INDIRECT CAUSE, is *auf* (Acc.); as, Ich that es auf Ihren Rath, Vorschlag, Wunsch, Befehl. I acted on your advice, proposal, wish, command. Ich glaube es auf Ihr Wort. I believe it on your word. Ich beschloß auf diese Nachricht. On these news I resolved; similarly auf Ihre Gefahr, at your peril; auf jeden Fall, at all events.

e. WITH, OWING TO (considering), with the ACCESSORY CAUSE is *bei* (Dat.); as, Bei seiner guten Constitution darf man auf seine Genesung hoffen. With his good constitution one may expect his recovery. Bei einiger Sparsamkeit ist das Kapital hinreichend. With some economy the capital suffices. Bei seiner Reizbarkeit fürchtete ich eine Scene. Owing to his irritability I was afraid of a scene. Bei der Maßlosigkeit seiner Ansprüche verfehlte er seinen Zweck. Owing to the immoderatenness of his pretensions he failed in his object.

Bei thus used sometimes assumes the force of *troch* IN SPITE OF; as, Seine Heiterkeit bei allen diesen Leiden ist bewundernswürth. His cheerfulness with (in spite of) all these sufferings deserves admiration. Bei der Mangelhaftigkeit ihrer Werkzeuge sind die Leistungen der Hindus erstaunlich. With the deficiency of their tools, the productions of the Hindoos are astonishing.

Notwithstanding, ungeachtet (Gen.); *in spite of*, troch (Gen.).

Under is rendered by unter (Dat.); as, unter solchen Umständen, under such circumstances; unter günstigen Umständen, under favorable circumstances; unter günstigen Bedingungen, under favorable conditions; unter bösen Einflüssen, under evil influences (see also 5, expressions referring to manner).

f. FROM, OUT OF, WITH THE DIRECT MOTIVE, is aus (Dat.); as, aus Liebe, out of love; aus Haß, from hatred; aus Furcht, out of fear; aus Nachlässigkeit, from negligence; aus Ueberdruß, from satiety.

g. WITH, FOR, with an EMOTION leading to an outward DEMONSTRATION, is bei (Dat.); as, Ich sehe bei Ungeduld. I am trembling with impatience. Er konnte bei Bewegung (Rührung) nicht sprechen. He could not speak from emotion; bleich bei Schrecken, pale with terror; weinend bei Freude, weeping for joy.

A. FOR, ON ACCOUNT OF, WITH THE REASON is wegen (Gen. often following the object); as, wegen Ihres Ausbleibens, on account of your staying away; wegen seiner Mittellosigkeit, Armuth, on account of his small means, poverty; des Diebstahls wegen eingekerkert, imprisoned on account of (for) theft; ihrer Tugenden wegen geehrt, honoured for her virtues; wegen ihrer Anmuth geliebt, loved for her graciousness; wegen ihres Geistes und ihrer Schönheit bewundert, admired for her genius and beauty.

i. FOR, FOR THE SAKE OF, ON BEHALF OF is rendered by halben, halber, wegen and willen (Gen.) generally suffixed to the object; as, deinet halben, for thy sake; Ihretwegen an (Dat.) for your sake, (see list of prepositions governing the Gen.); Ehren halber, for honours sake; der Kürze halber, for the sake of brevity; willen requires the object to be preceded by um; as, um Gottes Willen, for God's sake; um des Friedens willen, for the sake of peace.

(For other expressions of this nature an acquaintance with the lists suffices.)

4. THE OBJECT, MORE OR LESS WITH THE FORCE OF CAUSE, is construed with the following prepositions.

a. IN, after expressions of BELIEF OR INTEREST is an; as, glauben an (Acc.); Wir glauben alle an einen Gott. We all believe in one God; Antheil, Interesse, Freude, Gefallen, Vergnügen an (Dat.) einer Sache haben, to have an interest or pleasure in a thing; sich erbauen an, to be edified by; Behagen, Geschmack an Etwas finden, to relish, to have a liking for something; -- but Sinn für Etwas haben,

to have a taste for; Befriedigung, Frieden, Glück, Ruhe, Trost in (Dat.) Etwas finden, to find one's satisfaction, peace, happiness, rest, consolation in a thing.

OF is rendered by an (Acc.) with denken, TO THINK, TO BEAR IN MIND, erinnern, to remind; as, Er wird an sein Versprechen denken, wenn du ihn an mich erinnerst. He will think of his promise when you remind him of me; but denken von, to think (to judge) of, like sprechen von, to speak of.

b. IN, ON and UPON, are rendered by auf (Acc.) after expressions of TRUSTING and RELIANCE; as, Auf Gott, und nicht auf meinen Rath will ich mein Glück bauen. On the Lord and not on my own counsel will I rest my happiness. Such are farther, hoffen auf to hope for, vertrauen auf, sich verlassen auf, to trust in, to depend on, sich stützen auf, to rest oneself upon, sich berufen auf, to appeal to, rechnen, zählen auf, to reckon, to count upon. But confidence, faith, in a person or thing, Zutrauen zu einer Person, Sache.

c. FOR, after ASKING, DESIRING, SEEKING, is nach (Dat.); as, fragen, to ask, inquire, (but bitten, betteln um (Acc.) to ask, beg for), forschen, to inquire, suchen, spähen, sich umsehen nach, to spy, seek, look out for, verlangen, sich sehnen nach, to long for, schmachten nach, to languish for, streben nach, to strive for, trachten nach, to strive after; Einem nach dem Leben trachten, to attempt one's life.

d. FOR, ABOUT, is um after BEGGING, COMPETING, FIGHTING; as, bitten, betteln um, to beg for, sehen um, to implore for, sich bemühen um, to trouble oneself about, sich bewerben um, to compete for, to sue for, sorgen, sich ängstigen um, to be anxious about, spielen, würfeln um, to gamble, to throw the dice for, sich streiten, sich zanken um, to quarrel about; sechten, kämpfen, streiten, Krieg führen um, to fight, to wage war for, sich prügeln, sich schlagen um, to fight for (to scuffle). Es handelt sich um, the question is; es geht um's Leben, life is at stake.

For, see also p. 53, PURPOSE 5.

e. AT, ABOUT, (OVER), WITH, is über (Acc.) with the COMPLETED CAUSE of an EXCITEMENT or SENTIMENT; as, Befriedigung, Genugthuung, gratification with, (but Zufriedenheit mit, satisfaction with), Freude, joy, delight, Vergnügen, pleasure, Jubel, Triumph, triumph; lachen und weinen über, to laugh at, to weep over; also, Aerger, Verdruß chagrin, Aufregung, excitement, Mißstimmung, ill-humor, Unzufriedenheit, (also construed with mit) dissatisfaction, Unruhe uneasiness, anxiety, Unruhe, indignation, empört über, shocked at, Erbitterung, exasperation, Grimm, Wuth, Zorn, wrath, rage, anger; also,ummer, sorrow, Gram und Schmerz, grief, Scham, shame, Bedauern, regret, Trauer, sadness, Reue, remorse, Schreck, fright, Entsetzen, amazement, Verzweiflung, despair; and also with all verbs, adjectives, etc. corresponding with the above. Examples: Er empfand keine Freude über den Erfolg. He felt no joy at his success; vor Aerger, Verdruß über die Auflösung, with chagrin at the disappointment; aus

Wuth über den Verlust, *from rage at the loss*; vorummer und Reue über die That, *with sorrow and remorse at the deed*.

But auf (Acc.) is used in cases like the following mostly with the PERSON; böse auf mich, *angry with me*; ergrimmt auf ihn, *enraged at him*; eifersüchtig, neidisch auf sie, *jealous, envious of her*; also schelten auf, *to scold at*; schimpfen auf, *to inveigh against*; schmähcn auf, *to rail at*.

ABOUT is generally über; as, sich äußern, aussprechen über, to express oneself about; Betrachtungen anstellen über, to make reflections about; denken, nachdenken über, to think, to reflect about; erstaunen, sich wundern über, to be astonished at; staunen über, to wonder at; sich beruhigen über, to compose oneself about; reden, sprechen über, to talk about

f. OF is vor (Dat.) with the IMPENDING CAUSE OF A FEAR, HORROR, etc.; as, Angst, Besorgniß, Furcht vor einer Gefahr, *fear, apprehension, dread of a danger*; Abscheu, Ekel, Graun, Schauder vor einem Menschen oder einer That, *detestation, horror of a person or deed*; the same with the corresponding verbs and with the following: beben, bangen, jagen, zittern, *to tremble*; for inst.; Ich beße u. vor der Möglichkeit. I tremble in the face of the possibility; sich entsetzen, erschrecken, zurückschrecken vor dem Gedanken u., *to abhor the thought &c.*; zurückfahren vor einem Anblicke, *to start back from the sight*.

g. ON ACCOUNT OF is always wegen (Gen.); AGAINST, gegen or wider (Acc.); — gegen also meaning TOWARDS with a friendly intention.

5. EXPRESSIONS REFERRING TO PURPOSE.

a. FOR is zu (Dat.) with the THING PURPOSED; as, das Geld zu dem Ankaufe, *the money for the purchase*; Lesen Sie das zu Ihrer Erbauung! *Read that for your edification*! Maßregeln zum Schutze des Eigenthums, *measures for the protection of property*. Thun Sie das zu Ihrem Vergnügen? *Are you doing that for your amusement?* Eine Sammlung zur Deckung der Ausgaben, *a collection for the covering of the expenses (towards the expenses)*; zum Lesen, *for reading*, zum Schreiben, *for writing*; zum Arbeiten, *for working*.

IN honour of, zu Ehren; in memory of, zum Gedächtnisse; in token of, zum Zeichen.

b. TO with a RIGHT, CLAIM is auf (Acc.); as, Sie haben ein Recht auf mein Vertrauen. *You have a right to my confidence*. Er macht Anspruch auf den Besitz. *He lays claim to the possession*.

c. FOR is für (Acc.) with a PRICE or the OBJECT OF A PRICE; as, Ich bezahlte einen Thaler für das Buch. *I paid three shillings for the book*. Ich kaufte das Buch für einen Thaler. *I bought the book for three shillings*. Er wagte sein Leben für die Freiheit. *He staked his life for liberty*.

d. FOR, with GOING, SENDING FOR a person or thing, is nach (Dat.); as, Ich gehe nach dem Arzte. *I am going for the doctor*;

nach dem Ziele laufen, to race for the goal. Schicken Sie nach den Waaren. Send for the goods.

e. FOR is für (Acc.) with the PERSON or COMMUNITY, on whose behalf a thing is done; as, Christus starb für die Menschheit. Christ died for mankind. Wer nicht für mich ist, ist wider mich. He who is not for me, is against me. Er hat viel für seine Vaterstadt gethan. He has done much for his native-town. Zum Besten der Armen or für die Armen, on behalf of the poor; Geld an die Armen, an die Kirche geben, to give money for the poor, for the church.

f. FOR is für (Acc.) with MAKING PROVISIONS; as, Schätze für's Leben, treasures for life; Vorräthe für den Winter, stores for winter. But gegen with a REMEDY; as, ein Mittel gegen das Fieber, a remedy for fever.

g. FOR and TO with an INCLINATION OR TENDENCY is zu (Dat.); as, Neigung zum Schlaf, inclination for sleep; zur Schwermuth geneigt, inclined to sadness; Liebe zu einer Person oder Sache, love for a person or cause; Lust und Trieb zum Arbeiten, liking for work; Hang zum Stehlen, proneness to stealing. But Freundschaft, Gefühle, Neigung für eine Person, friendship, feelings, inclinations for a person; Appetit auf, appetite for.

In most other cases FOR is rendered by für.

6. EXPRESSIONS REFERRING TO MANNER AND CONDITION.

a. In is auf (Acc.) before the words Art, Weise and auf (Dat.) before Weg, all signifying MANNER, WAY; as, auf alle Art und Weise, in every possible manner and way. Suchen Sie ihn auf eine gute Art loszuwerden. Try to get rid of him in an inoffensive manner; auf diese, folgende, gewisse Weise, in this, in the following, in a certain manner; auf einem graden und rechtlichen Wege, in a straight and honourable way; auf dem Wege Rechtens, by means of justice. In Hogarth's Manier, in Hogarth's manner. (The pupil must limit the employment of the word Weg in the sense of manner to expressions he meets with in German authors etc.; as Weg, more commonly means road; as, in this way, auf diese Weise, by this road, auf diesem Wege. Dies ist nicht die richtige Art. This is not the right way. Dies ist nicht der rechte Weg. This is not the right road.)

Auf's Liebendwürdigste, in the most amiable manner, most amiably; auf's Nachdrücklichste, most energetically; but am liebendwürdigsten, am nachdrücklichsten, the most amiable, the most energetical used adverbially. (See Section XIII, relative Superlative). Sagen Sie es auf Deutsch. Say it in German. But, Er drückte sich in gutem Deutsch aus. He expressed himself in good German.

b. IN HEALTH, SPIRITS is bei (Dat.); bei guter Gesundheit, in good health; bei (in) guter Laune, in good spirits; bei Kräften, in vigour; nicht bei Laune, not in good humor; bei übler Laune, in a bad humor; nicht bei Sinnen, not in his senses; (von Sinnen, out of his senses); similarly, bei Gelde, bei Kasse, in money, in cash; nicht bei Gelde, out of cash.

IN or WITH a strong etc. voice; mit starker, lauter, schwacher Stimme, in a strong, loud, feeble voice; mit leiser Stimme, in a low voice, in an undertone, in a whisper, flüsternd, ins Ohr (bei Stimme sein, to be in voice).

c. BY, HOLDING, LEADING BY is an (Dat.) and seizing by, bei (Dat.); as, Leite mich an deiner Hand, wie ein Kind am Gängelband. Lead me by thy hand, as a child on a leading-string. Nimm das Kind an (Acc.) die Hand. Take the child to your hand. Er faßte ihn am or beim Kragen. He took him by the collar.

d. BY, IN ITS TURN is rendered as follows: Jahr für Jahr und Tag für Tag, year by year and day by day; but, ein Jahr um das Andre, every other year; Stunde um Stunde, hour by hour; Schritt vor Schritt, by a pace; Stück für Stück, piece by piece; Punkt für Punkt, point by point. Zu Zweien, by twos; zu Dreien, by threes.

e. BY with the MANNER OF TRAVELLING is zu (Dat.); as, zu Wasser und zu Lande, by water and land, (mare terraque); zu Fuße, on foot; zu Pferde, on horseback; zu Schiffe gehen, to embark; mit dem Dampfschiffe, by steamboat; auf der Eisenbahn, by railway; mit der Post, mit dem Omnibus, by the coach.

f. AT is für (Acc.) or zu (Dat.) with BUYING, SELLING; das Pfund für einen Thaler or zu einem Thaler, at three Shillings a pound; für 100 Thaler verkauft, sold at £15; zu jedem Preise, at any price; zu allen Preisen, at all prices.

AT is auf (Acc.) in expressions like: auf Ihre Kosten, Gefahr, Verantwortlichkeit, at your expense, peril, risk, responsibility; auf meine Rechnung, on my account.

g. ON is rendered variously; as, on the point to do a thing, auf dem Punkte or im Begriffe es zu thun; on the wing, in Bewegung, im Fluge; on purpose, mit Fleiß; compassion on, Mitleid mit. Sein Sie auf Ihrer Hut. Be on your guard; on a sudden, plötzlich; on the road, unterwegs.

h. OF construed with verbs and adjectives is extensively rendered by the GEN.; as, sich einer That schämen, to be ashamed of a deed; des Glaubens har, void of faith. For these see Section XVIII, B, The Genitive, (see also below i).

i. The following prepositions introducing expressions of manner offer no idiomatical difficulties, and may be translated simply as they stand, with the few exceptions given in parentheses. After and according to, nach (Dat.) generally placed after the object; as, dieser Behauptung nach, according to this assertion; dem Anscheine nach, according to the appearance; — according to, agreeable with, gemäß, zufolge (Dat.), laut (Gen.) with documents, laws, manifestos; — along, entlang (Acc.); den Weg entlang, along the road; — along with, together with, nebst, sammt (the latter implying the whole pertaining to); — by dint of, vermöge (Gen.); — by means of, vermitteltst (Gen.); sometimes vermöge (Gen.); — by virtue of, kraft (Gen.); — contrary to, zuwider (Dat.) following the object; — For (owing to), wegen

(Gen.), — in, in (Dat.); in Glück und Unglück, in *fortune and misfortune*; in großer Aufregung, in *great excitement*; in Eile, in *a hurry*; (see above, a & b, in); — instead of, anstatt (Gen.); (for in this sense is für); — in spite of, trotz (Gen.); — next to, nächst (Dat.); — notwithstanding, ungeachtet (Gen.); — of and from, von (Dat.); — opposite to, opposed to, entgegen, gegenüber (Dat.); — out of, aus (Dat.); — with (together with), mit, zusammen mit; — with, by means of, mit (Dat.); (disgusted with, überdrüssig (Gen.)); surrounded with grace, von Anmuth umgeben; with all my heart, von ganzem Herzen; with the Ancients, with the French, bei den Alten, bei den Franzosen; — without, ohne (Acc.) (sender quaint).

E. PREPOSITIONS USED AS SEPARABLE PREFIXES.

(See p. 37. 3, and for their position see Section XXX, D.)

In this capacity the prepositions assume the character of adverbs. They are marked* in the lists and are repeated here, — an, auf, -aus, bei, durch, entgegen, gegenüber, in, (replaced by ein), mit, nach, über, um, unter, vor, zu, zuwider. They require particular attention when used in composition with the adverbs *her* *hither* and *hin* *thither* in verbs denoting movements. The English language, in such cases, generally employs the verb with the simple preposition; (as, *to go in — out — up — down*;) and the pupil is apt to form analogously *ausgehen, eingehen, aufgehen, untergehen*; whilst these simple prefixes, in German, give the verb quite a different meaning; as, *ausgehen to go out, on a walk or on business*, (and not *to leave an apartment &c.*); — *eingehen* only quaintly used for *to enter*; more commonly, *to be discontinued*; — *aufgehen* to *rise*, said of the sun, moon &c., of dough, — *to sprout, to open*; — *untergehen* to *set*, said of celestial bodies, otherwise, *to perish, &c., &c.*

In order to make these verbs express simple motions, the adverb *her* is prefixed to the preposition, when *COMING TOWARDS*, — and *hin*, when *GOING AWAY FROM*, is implied; as, *heraus'kommen, to come out, hinaus'gehen to go out; herein'kommen to come in, hinein'gehen to go in; herauf'kommen to come up, hinauf'gehen to go up; herunt'erkommen to come down (a stair, ladder), hinunter'gehen to go down.*

F. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE REFL. PRON. *sich*. (p. 57.)

In adverbial expressions qualifying verbs denoting *PLACING, HOLDING, CARRYING*, the English language fails to express in the third person the reflexive meaning in cases like the following: *He held his stick before — behind — beside him &c.* If the 3^d pers. pron. thus used with the preposition, refers to the subject of the sentence, it is expressed by the refl. pron. *sich*, both in the Sing. and Pl.; as, *Er hielt den Stab vor — hinter — neben sich. Sie führten Waffen mit sich. They carry arms with them. Er hatte seine Uhr und etwas Geld bei sich. He had his watch and some money with him.*

SECTION VII. DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.		THIRD PERSON.	
<i>Sing. Nom. I.</i>		<i>Used towards relatives and intimate friends.</i>		<i>Used conventionally.</i>	
<i>Gen. meinet</i> (metin, poetic) of me.		<i>bu.</i> you, thou	<i>beinet</i> (betin) of you, of thee.	<i>et.</i> he, (it with things masc.)	<i>fem.</i> she, (it with things fem.)
<i>Dat. mit.</i> (to) me, or (to) myself.			<i>bit.</i> (to) you, or (to) yourself; (to) thee or (to) thyself.	<i>feinet</i> (fetin), of him.	<i>ihret.</i> of her.
<i>Acc. mich.</i> me, or myself.			<i>bitsh.</i> you, or yourself, thee, or thyself.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) him, (to) himself.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) her, (to) herself.
<i>Plur. Nom. wir.</i> we.			<i>ist.</i> you.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) him, (to) himself.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) her, (to) herself.
<i>Gen. uniser.</i> of us.			<i>ist.</i> you.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) him, (to) himself.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) her, (to) herself.
<i>Dat. uns.</i> (to) us, or (to) ourselves.			<i>ist.</i> you.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) him, (to) himself.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) her, (to) herself.
<i>Acc. uns.</i> us or ourselves.			<i>ist.</i> you.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) him, (to) himself.	<i>ishin.</i> (to) her, (to) herself.

The genitives may also be used reflectively; as, *meiner*, of myself, &c. The dative and accusative plural of all the persons occur with the signification of *each other* which must be used where the mere *uns*, *euch*, *sich*, would be ambiguous. In addressing one person, *Ihr*, (with equals), and *Er* and *Sie*, fem., (with inferiors), were formerly used. *Es* (sometimes 's) *ist*, is used for the English *so* where it stands for the object or predicate; as, *Ist* *denke*, *hofft*, *glaube* *es*. I think, hope, believe *so*. *Er* *ist* *jung* und *sie* *ist* *es* *auch*. He is young, and she is *so* too.

SECTION VIII. REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS, &c.

The third person is used both for persons and things of every gender.

1. But if the cases of the third person are used WITH A PREPOSITION before them, they refer exclusively to persons; as, mit ihm, with him; mit ihr, with her; mit ihnen, with them; für ihn, for him; für sie, for her. On the other hand, the personal pronoun in the third person, (*it*, pl. *them*), referring to things or circumstances, cannot be used with a preposition before it, but is rendered definitely by the proper cases of the Demonstrative derselbe, dieselbe, daselbe, *the same* (See Section IX, Table); as, mit demselben, *with it*; für denselben, *for it*; für dieselben, *for them*; von denselben, *from, of them*. More generally, however, this Demonstrative is replaced in these cases by its SHORTER FORM *daß* (*da-cß*, *there-it*), and the preposition annexed to the latter; as, Gen.; deswegen, *des-halb*, *on account of it*; Dat.; damit, *davon*, *with it, of it, with them, of them*; Acc.; dafür, *for it, for them*; dagegen, *against it, against them*. If the preposition thus annexed begin with a vowel, an *r* must be inserted before it; as, daran, *on it (thereon)*; darauf, *upon it (thereon)*; daraus, *out of it*. In these compounds, the *da* standing for *it, them*, the accent rests on the preposition; as, danach', *after it (thereafter)*; damit', *with it (therewith)*; darü'ber, *about it*. See Section XI, p. 72, c. Demonstrative Compounds with prepos.

2. ONLY THE FOLLOWING PREPOSITIONS, however, can be annexed to *da* and to these pronominal forms: *des*, *dem*, *wer*, *wo*; the prepositions *halb*, *wegen* and *willen* to the Gen.; — *aus*, *bei*, (*dem*)*gemäß*, *mit*, *nach*, (*dem*)*nächst*, *nebst*, *von*, *zu*, (*dem*)*zufolge*, — *durch*, *für*, *gegen*, *um*, *wider*, and those governing both the Dat. and Acc. (p. 40).

If any other preposition is to be construed with the third personal pronoun referring to things, the cor-

responding case of the Demonstrative *der*, *die*, *das* *selbe*, which on the whole extensively represents the English HE, SHE, IT, must be used, (see p. 75, 4 and p. 76) and for this pronoun may be substituted in the Gen. *dessen*, and Dat. *dem*. (See Section XII, Shorter form, 4.)

Note. *Tessen* and *dem* are particularly used instead of the neut. Gen. *seiner* and Dat. *ihm*, which are almost never employed, not even after verbs and adjectives. Further the Acc. neut. *es* must be replaced by *das* *selbe* always after the preposition *ohne* *without*, and in speaking of animate beings after any other preposition governing the Acc. (Comp: p. 58, 1.). The Dat. neut. *ihm*, when governed by verbs or adjectives, may be used where it is not apt to be mistaken for the Dat. masc. *ihm* to him.

3. In speaking of PERSONS, THE PARTITIVE is not expressed by the genitive Plural, but by the dative governed by the preposition *von* *of*, or sometimes *unter*, *among*; as, *sechs von uns*, *six of us*; *welcher unter euch*, *which among you*; *mehrere von ihnen*, *several of them*; *derjenige von euch*, *he or that one of you*. In speaking of THINGS, THE PARTITIVE *of them* is according to rule 1, *davon* or *darunter*, *among them*, sometimes *derselben* or, in its shorter form, *deren*; as, *die Hälfte davon*, *the half of them*; *einige derselben*, *a few of them*; *deren viele*, *many of them*, which latter forms are also used of persons. (See Section XII, 4.)

4. THE GENITIVE PLURAL of the personal pronoun PRECEDING a numeral; as, *unser* *elliche*, *ihrer* *sechse* is not properly a partitive, but implies that the whole party amounts to the number stated; hence, *unser* *elliche*, means, *we were a few*; *ihrer* *sechse*, *their party consisted of six*. *Ihr* *seid* *eurer* *drei* *und* *wir* *nur* *unser* *zwei*. *You number three and we only two*.

5. a. *Ich*, &c., *selbst*, I, &c., *myself*, sometimes also *ich* *selber*, is more emphatic than the simple *ich*, *du*, &c.; *selbst* *ich*, *even I*; *selbst* *du*, *even you*.

b. *Einander*, each other; as, *unter* *einander*, *among each other* is often replaced by *uns*, *euch*, *sich*. (See page 57).

c. —*man* is the indefinite personal pronoun, and may be expressed by *one* (*one* thinks), by *they* (*they*

think), by *people* (*people* think), or best by the passive voice, (*it is thought*); its possessive in English, *one's*, is *sein*, *seine*; as, *Man muß sein Geld sparen. One must spare one's money*; *One's self*, *sich*. — *Einer*, *Eine*, *Eines*, *one*, somebody is sometimes colloquially substituted for *man*; but its use particularly in the *Dat.* and *Acc.* in this capacity, is not to be recommended; *ein Jeder* and *irgend Einer*, any person, anybody.

d. Jemand, somebody or anybody, some person, and *Niemand*, nobody, take *es* in the genitive, and *en* in the *Dat.* and *Acc.* *Keiner*, no one, none, as, *Keiner von beiden*, *neither of them*.

e. Etwas, (colloquially *was*), something, anything, as, *etwas Anderes*, *something else*; so *Etwas*, *some much thing*; *Alles*, everything, all.

f. Nichts, nothing; *Nichts als*, nothing but; *Nichts weniger als*, anything but. (Comp. with Section IX.).

SECTION IX. DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLES, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.

LEADING REMARKS. (See Table, p. 66). 1. *Der* masc., *die* fem., *das* neut., (originally a compound containing the elements of the 3^d personal pronoun *er* *he*, *sie* *she*, *es* *it* with a demonstrative prefix akin to *da* *there*) is, properly speaking, a pronoun and still frequently used both as a Demonstrative and Relative; but *der*, *die*, *das* is used besides as the definite article *the*. *Ein*, *eine*, *ein* is originally the numeral *Ein one*, but stands besides for the indefinite article *a*, *an*.

2. The characteristic of all articles and pronouns is, that, besides conveying a definite meaning, they perform the function of POINTING OUT CASE more completely than any other word. There are four cases in German, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Accusative*, the two latter with the force of the Engl. *Objective*.

3. Except in a few cases the accusatives singular of the feminine and neuter gender, and the accusa-

tive plural of all declined words are LIKE THEIR NOMINATIVES. (Comp. Table, p. 66).

4. Apart from their meaning there is this DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE DEFINITE AND THE INDEFINITE ARTICLES, as well as between the pronouns arranged below each in the table, that the *definite* article distinctly shows the masculine, feminine and neuter gender in the nominative singular, *each by a different form*, whilst the *indefinite* article fails to distinguish the masculine from the neuter gender in the nominative singular, both being alike *ein* (See Table). THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS share in this deficiency.

5. This difference has an effect in the FORMATION OF THE NOMINATIVES SINGULAR and the corresponding accusatives OF ADJECTIVES used attributively *with articles or pronouns*. (See foot of the table.)

6. THE PLURALS of all the words given in the table ARE ALIKE in all the three genders.

7. Of the COMPOUND DEMONSTRATIVES *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige*, and *derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe*, the first part is declined as the article, the second as the adjective. (See below, Adjective, 9.)

8. THE INDEFINITE NUMERALS given in the left division of the table to some extent share in the character of the pronouns, and take the plural terminations of the definite article, unless used with an article or pronoun, when they become adjectives.

THE ADJECTIVE

ought not to be said to have declension, notwithstanding the traditional formalism.*) The pupil will find the following explanation, based on the euphonic nature of the suffixes containing a soft *r* (See p. 24, Section III, The Accent) conclusive and somewhat simpler than the mechanical drudgery of the old arrangements.

1. The adjective undergoes NO CHANGE at all when used as an ADVERB OR as the PREDICATE of the clause.

*) See page 65, Note.

Gut, good, well. *Sie singt gut. She sings well. Du bist gut. Thou art good. Er, sie, es ist gut. He, she, it is good. Sie sind gut. They are good.* These examples show that the adjective used *as the predicate* is not in the least affected by gender or number; (a fact which at once places it in a position analogous to that in the Saxon-English and utterly different from that in the Classical languages.)

2. When used as an ADVERB OR PREDICATE the adjective generally stands AT THE END of the clause, and being mostly a powerful monosyllable, finishes the clause in an impressive manner. *Er benahm sich gegen seine Eltern immer sehr gut. He always behaved WELL towards his parents. Dies Gesetz war nur in einem gewissen Sinne gut. This law was GOOD only in a certain sense.* No addition is here desirable.

3. When, however, the adjective is used as an ATTRIBUTE, it is placed BEFORE THE NOUN which generally is, or begins with, a *powerful* syllable. The effect of this combination would be intolerable to the ear if no remedy were provided; for inst. gut Frucht, alt Mann, stark Knabe, grau Haus, roth Ochse. In English the greater softness of the vowels and the milder character of the final consonants are sufficient to prevent this harshness; comp. *good fruit, old man, strong knave (boy), grey house, red ox*; in German it could be avoided only by the *insertion of a soft suffix* between the two strong syllables; gute Frucht, alter Mann, graues Haus, rothen Ochsen.

4. Accordingly, the adjective when placed BEFORE THE NOUN receives an additional syllable containing a soft e. This SUFFIX is different according to circumstances.

5. When the *attributive* Adjective is PRECEDED BY ANY ARTICLE OR PRONOUN, the SUFFIX is *en* in all the cases, *except* the nominatives singular and the accusatives singular feminine and neuter which are like their nominatives and require to be particularly distinguished from the rest. (The consonant *n* is best adapted

to meet any sound with which the noun may begin, as it is that consonant which leaves the lingual organs in the most indifferent position.)

6. The Adjective takes a simple *e* in the NOMINATIVE SINGULAR of each gender, also in the Acc. Sing. of the fem. and neut. after the DEFINITE ARTICLE and after the pronouns arranged below it in the table, because these *show distinctly* each gender in the Nom. Sing. by a special form; as N. S., *der gute, die gute, das gute, the good; dieser gute, diese gute, dieses gute, this good*, the Acc. Sing. fem. and neut. corresponding with their nominatives, (all other cases taking *n*).

7. But the Adjective takes in the NOM. SING. masc. *er*, fem. *e*, neut. *es*, — the Acc. Sing. fem. and neut. corresponding with their Nominatives, after the INDEFINITE ARTICLE and all the POSSESSIVE pronouns, because these fail to point out the masc. and neut. gender in the Nom. Sing. and thus require the adjective to perform that function.

According to the above, the terminations of the adjective are.

a. After the DEFINITE Article etc.

Sing. N. (*der*) — *e*; (*die*) — *e*; (*das*) — *e*.
 G. (*des*) — *en*; (*der*) — *en*; (*des*) — *en*.
 D. (*dem*) — *en*; (*der*) — *en*; (*dem*) — *en*.
 A. (*den*) — *en*; (*die*) — *e*; (*das*) — *e*.

b. After the INDEFINITE Article etc.

Sing. N. (*ein*) — *er*; (*eine*) — *e*; (*ein*) — *es*.
 G. (*eines*) — *en*; (*einer*) — *en*; (*eines*) — *en*.
 D. (*einem*) — *en*; (*einer*) — *en*; (*einem*) — *en*.
 A. (*einen*) — *en*; (*eine*) — *e*; (*ein*) — *es*.

THE PLURAL, after *any* Article or Pronoun:

Nom. — *en*; Gen. — *en*; Dat. — *en*; Acc. — *en*.

8. If, however, the Adjective *precedes* the noun WITHOUT ANY ARTICLE OR PRONOUN to point out the case, its euphonic additional syllable is turned to advantage and made to receive the *terminations of the definite article* instead of the mere *n*, which is retained only in

the Gen. Sing. masc. and neut. because the Gen. here is unmistakably indicated by the noun itself; thus Gen. not *reines Weines*, but *reinen Weines*, *of pure wine*; not *frisches Fisches*, but *frischen Fisches*, *of fresh fish*; not *kaltes Wassers*, but *kalten Wassers*, *of cold water*. (There occur, indeed, genitives in *es*; as, *gutes Muthes*, *of good courage*; *gerades Weges*, *straight way*; but these are mere traces of the very irregular historical development of the declensions.)

Hence the terminations of the attribute-adjective used without any article or pronoun are:

SING.				PLUR.
	masc.	fem.	neut.	<i>of all genders.</i>
Nom.	(gut) er.	(gut) e.	(gut) es.	Nom. (gut) e.
Gen.	(gut) en (s).	(gut) er.	(gut) en (s).	Gen. (gut) er.
Dat.	(gut) em.	(gut) er.	(gut) em.	Dat. (gut) en.
Acc.	(gut) en.	(gut) e.	(gut) es.	Acc. (gut) e.

9. The PRONOUNS *jener*, *jene*, *jenes* and *selber*, *selbe*, *selbes* are used as SECOND COMPONENTS of the Demonstrative *der*, *die*, *das*; (see table, 3 & 4); farther, the possessive pronouns are always preceded by the article when *not placed before the noun (my book)* but referring back to it as in *the book is mine* (French, *le mien*) i. e. when they are SUBSTANTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. As the article in these combinations points out the case, it reduces the pronoun following it to a mere *adjective*, so much so, that it even receives the adjective-suffix *ig*. Hence: *derjenige*, *diejenige*, *dasjenige*; *derselb(ig)e*, *derselb(ig)e*, *daselb(ig)e*, (mostly without the *ig*); *der meinige*, *die meinige*, *das meinige*, — *deinige*, — *seinige*, — *ihrige*, — *unsrige*, — *eurige*, — *ihrige*, — (sometimes more expressive without the *ig*). These will be easily declined, taking *n* in all the cases, except the Acc. Sing. fem. & neut. which take *e* like their nominatives.

10. After the plural forms of the INDEFINITE NUMERALS given in the table, 9, the adjective fails to take the *n* in the Nom. and Acc., but has only *e*; as, *wenige echte Charaktere*, *few genuine characters*; (not *echten*, as

in the other cases). The same is the case after the plural *solche* *such*, and *welche* *which*, *what*, unless the latter is *the Relative*, after which the adjective has the usual *en*. After *alle* *all*, the *adj.* has *en* throughout.

11. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS, &c. See p. 67.

12. THE EUPHONIC *e* IS OMITTED both in pronouns and adjectives whenever their last syllable already contains a soft *e*. Thus *unser*, Gen. not *unseres*, Dat. not *unserem*, Acc. not *unseren*, but *unserē*, *unserm*, *unsern*; *müde*, *besser* &c., not *müdeern*, *besserern*, but *müden* *bessern*.

In those cases, however, which either *end* in *e*, or in which the *e* must be *retained* before a terminating *r*, as in *unserē*, *unserer*, the *e* belonging to the word itself is often dropped; hence: *unser*, *unserer*, *besser*, *besserer*; and the adjective *tapfer* *brave*, for inst., would be declined without the article, Nom. masc. *tapfer*, Gen. *tapfern*, Dat. *tapferm*, Acc. *tapfern*; Plural. Nom. *tapfer*, Gen. *tapferer*, Dat. *tapfern*, Acc. *tapfer*.

Note. Grammatical nomenclature ought either to elucidate the nature of the present forms of the language, or to give the student of historical philology a clue to its development in the past. Were the terms "strong and weak or ancient and modern declension" of adjectives of the least avail for either of these objects, the author would hesitate to depart from them, in spite of their great aptness to confuse the pupil, particularly in their natural connexion with the declension of Nouns. The scholar who has made himself familiar with the most recent subtle and conflicting speculations of German philologists on this very subject, (see Steinthal, *Charakteristik* &c. p. 303—311) will admit that a truly practical work should confine itself to pointing out the laws of the present language. The author has had the pleasure of meeting with a general approval of the tabular view in p. 66, (p. 13 in the first edition) as giving the simplest key to the most important inflectional forms in their various combinations. But whilst he would recommend beginners to study the table in the first place, experience has shewn him the necessity of extending the knowledge thus acquired and aiding the memory, by the addition of the comprehensive principle laid down in the explanation p. 60—65, which he bases entirely on *the euphonic nature and the grammatical economy* of the suffixes and terminations in the present *High German*. This explanation possesses the advantage of bringing the whole subject of declension into a coherent and perspicuous system, and may prove not undeserving of the attention of the general grammarian. (See *Bopp*, *vergl. Gramm.* § 287.)

66 DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLES, PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

(Compare Lead. Rem. and Section XI, Completing Remarks.)

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

SINGULAR.				SINGULAR.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	the	der	die	das	Nom.	a (or an)	ein
Gen.	of the	des	der	des	Gen.	of a	eines
Dat.	(to) the	dem	der	dem	Dat.	(to) a	einem
Acc.	the	den	die	das	Acc.	a	einen

The **PLURAL** of the definite article in all the three genders: *Nom.* die; *Gen.* der; *Dat.* den; *Acc.* die.

The following **pronouns** are declined like the definite article:

1. this	dieser	diese	dieses
2. that (yon)	jener	jene	jenes
3. that, he	derjenige	diejenige	dasjenige
4. the same, (it)	derselbe	dieselbe	dasselbe
5. each, every	jeder	jede	jedes
	(pl. alle)		
6. many a	mancher	manche	manches
7. such	solcher	solche	solches
8. which, who	welcher	welche	welches

9. and the following **NUMERALS**, after which the adjective has *e* in the *Nom.* and *Acc.*; as, *einige gute Menschen*; *andere*, other; *einige* and *etliche*, some, a few; *manche*, many; *mehrere*, several; *sämmtliche*, all, all appertaining to; *viele*, many; *wenige*, few; likewise *solche* and *welche*, (what).

The components *selbst* and *jenige* in *derselbe*, *derjenige*, are declined like adjectives, as below.

THE ADJECTIVE if preceded by any article or pronoun takes *en* in all the cases of the *Sing.* and *Plur.* except in the *Nom. Sing.* and the *Acc. Sing. fem.* and *neut.* in which it takes

after the above.

Nom. Sing.	e	e	e
Accusative	e	e	

after the above.

Nom. Sing.	er	e	es
Accusative		e	es

The adjective before a noun, when NOT PRECEDED by any article, pronoun, &c., assumes the terminations of the definite article in every case, except in the genitive singular masculine and neuter, in which, for the sake of euphony, it takes *en* instead of *es*.

Possessive pronouns are declined like the indefinite article.

my	mein	meine	mein
thy, your	dein	deine	dein
his	sein	seine	sein
her	ihr	ihre	ihr
its	sein	seine	sein
our	unser	unsre	unser
your	euer	eure	euer
their	ihr	ihre	ihr
your	Ihr	Ihre	Ihr
no, not a	kein	keine	kein

The plurals of the possessive pronouns, and of *sein*, *e*, *kein*, take the terminations of the *plural* of the definite article.

The definite article is used instead of the possessive pronoun in cases like *Sie faltet die Hände*, *She folds her hands*; *Er verlor die Beine*, *He lost his legs*, because the possessor is evident enough.

DECLINED AS ADJECTIVES are: — All adjectives used as nouns — the present and past participles of verbs used attributively; (as, das trinkende Kind, the drinking child; ein trinkendes Kind, a drinking child; ein geliebter Freund, a loved (beloved) friend.) — the ordinal numerals — the substantive-possessives, der meinige, die meinige, das meinige or meine mine; der deinige or deine thine; yours; der seinige his; der ihrige or ihre hers; der unsrige or unsre ours; der euerige and der Ihrige yours; die ihrigen theirs — the same used as nouns; as, das Meinige, Deinige, &c., my, your, &c., property, part, share; die Unsrigen, the people of our party, our troops; die Meinigen, die Deinsgen, &c., die Ihrigen, my, thy, &c., your family and relations, (always used with the article) — and the colloquial, meiner, -e, -es mine; deiner, &c. yours; ihrer, &c. theirs; Ihrer, &c. yours, (used without the article).

Note 1. In the adjective hoch high, the guttural changes into h before an e; as, der hohe, des hohen, höher, but der höchste.

Note 2. The Adjective *all the* before nouns which in their singular form express a PLURALITY; as, Volk people, Familie family, Zahl number, is rendered by ganz (the whole, the entire) preceded by the article; as, das ganze Volk, all the people; die ganze Familie, all the family; die ganze Zahl, all the number. Likewise das ganze Jahr, all the year; den ganzen Tag, all the day. Before the names of MATERIALS *all the* is aller, alle, alles; as, aller Wein, all the wine; alle Butter, all the butter; alles Geld, all the money; similarly alles Fleisch, all flesh. Alles Volk sprach Amen. All the people (the whole mass) said Amen. (Alle Leute, all people.)

As a NEUTER NOUN, Alles means everything, sometimes everybody. The repetition of PERIODS OF TIME, is expressed by the plural alle, every; alle Jahre, every year; alle Tage, daily (täglich); alle zwei Stunden, every two hours.

Note 3. All with COUNTRIES and PLACES is das ganze; as, das ganze Gauen, all Gaul. If not used literally, ganz all and halb half are employed without being declined; ganz Europa, all Europe; ganz London, all London. (See pp. 76 and 77.)

SECTION X. OBSERVATIONS ON THE ADJECTIVE.

1. Most adjectives can be used as nouns, as in the following instances: der Gute, the good man, good people; Die Gute, the good woman; Das Gute, the good (all

that is good); *Guter!* m. *Gute!* f. good one! *Ein Armer*, a poor man; *Eine Arme*, a poor woman;—*with the indefinite article the neuter is rarely used.*—Pl. *Arme*, poor people; also those derived from proper names of places, (see p. 69, 7). *Der* or *ein* *Pariser*, *Berliner*, *Edinburgher*, the, or a Parisian, Berlin, Edinburgh man; feminine, *Die* *Pariserin*, *Berlinerin*, *Edinburgherin*.

2. After *Etwas* something; *Nichts* nothing; viel much, (a great deal); *wenig* little, (not much), the adjective becomes a neuter noun with the terminations of the neuter article; as, *Etwas Neues*, something new; *Nichts Gutes*, nothing good; *viel Schlimmes*, a great deal of bad; *wenig Angenehmes*, not much that is agreeable.

3. The adjective, preceded by the definite article, is in poetry sometimes placed *after the noun*, in order to make it more impressive; as, *Un's Vaterland*, an's thure *(schließ' dich an. Cling to thy dear fatherland. Das Meer, das wilde, läßt sich nicht gebieten. The wild sea obeys no command.*

4. In poetry, the adjective before a neuter noun frequently *loses the termination es* in the nominative and accusative singular; as, *Ein neu Gesetz*, instead of *Ein neues Gesetz*, A new law; *Welch grausam Spiel!* What cruel sport! and this even in the comparative and superlative degree; as, *Mich treibt ein besser(es) Verlangen. A better desire prompts me. Mein erst(es) Gefühl sei Preis und Dank. Let my first feeling be praise and thanks.*

5. When an adjective occurs *after a personal pronoun* of the first or second person, it assumes the terminations of the definite article, but in the D. S. *en*, and in the plural *en* in all cases; as, *Ich armer Kerl!* Poor fellow that I am! *Dir, guten Kinde*, To you, good child; *Dich, liebes Herz*, Thee, dear heart; *Wir muntern Bursche*, We merry fellows; *Euch, lieben Leute*, You, good people, (Acc.)

6. *From proper names of nationalities* adjectives are formed by changing the final *e* or *er* into *isch*; as, *dänisch* Danish, from *der Däne* the Dane; *preussisch*

Prussian, from *der Preuße* the Prussian; *französisch* French, from *der Franzose* the Frenchman; *schottisch* Scottish, from *der Schotte* the Scotsman; *italienisch* Italian, from *der Italiener* the Italian; *römisch* Roman, from *der Römer* the Roman; *holländisch* Dutch, from *der Holländer* the Dutchman, &c. &c. From *der Spanier* the Spaniard, is formed *spanisch*. *Englisch* English, and *irisch* Irish, are derived from the old names *der Angle* and *der Ire*, and not from the modern terms, *der Engländer* and *der Irländer*. *Deutsch* German, originally *teutisch*, from *Teut*, has passed over into *der Deutsche* the German; *polnisch* Polish, is derived from *Polonia*.

7. From proper names of *places* adjectives are formed by suffixing *er*. These remain undeclined; as, *Hamburger Rauchfleisch* Hamburg beef; *Pariser Moden* Paris fashions; *Berliner Witze* Berlin witticisms; whilst the declinable suffix *isch*, is used in referring to some ancient cities in their capacity of independent states, in the same way as in national adjectives; as, *der Bremische Senat*, the Senate of Bremen; *das Hamburgische Gesangbuch*, the Hamburg hymn-book; *Berlinische Nachrichten*, "The Berlin News."

8. From names of *materials* adjectives are formed by the suffixes *ern*, *n*, or *en*; as, *hölzern* wooden, from the plural *Hölzer* timber; *gläsern* crystal, from the plural *Gläser* glasses; *steinern* of stone, from *Stein* stone; *eisern* iron, from *Eisen* iron; *bleiern* leaden, from *Blei* lead; *woollen* woollen, *worsted*, from *Wolle* wool; *seiden* silk, from *Seide* silk; *golden* of gold, *golden*, from *Gold* gold; *silbern* of silver, from *Silber* silver. Adjectives of this kind are not used predicatively, but the name of the material, with the preposition *von*, is employed; as, *Der Ring ist von Gold*. The ring is of gold. *Der Shawl ist von Wolle*. The shawl is of wool. In a figurative sense, however, there occurs, *Er betrug sich sehr hölzern*. He behaves very awkwardly. *Seine Züge schienen eisern*. His features seemed of iron.

9. From *adverbs* or *prepositions* adjectives are formed by the suffix *ig*; as, *bisherig* (der, die, das *bis-*

hietig), from *bisher* hitherto; baldig, from *bald* soon; dazig and dortig of that place, from *da* and *dort* there; hiesig of this city, place, &c., from *hier* here; heutig to-day's, from *heute* to-day, gestrig yesterday's, from *gestern* yesterday — (from *morgen* to-morrow, *der morgende*, &c. to-morrow's, is formed) — jetzig the present, from *jetzt* just now; vorig the preceding (last), from the preposition *vor* before; diesseitig, jenseitig, from the prepositions *diesseits* on this side of, and *jenseits* on the opposite side of.

10. Derived from *numerals* are—einmalig, from *ein* mal one time, only once; as, Ein einmaliger Versuch beweist Nichts. A trial made only once proves nothing; thus, zweimalig, from *zweimal* twice; dreimalig, from *dreimal* thrice; mehrmalig several times repeated, from *mehr*mal several times; vielmalig many times repeated, &c.

The adjectives mentioned under 9 and 10 can be used as attributes only, and, like those under 8, cannot be compared.

SECTION XI. COMPLETING REMARKS ON PRONOUNS.

Jedermann *everybody, anybody, all people*, has in the Gen. Jedermanns. Jeglicher, *et, es*, and Jedweder, obsolete, for ein Jeder, *et, es* every one, every, each, are declined like adjectives.

ONE *after pronouns or adjectives*, is not expressed in German; as, This one Dieser; That one Jener; (no one Keiner) a good one Ein guter.

A. THE INDEFINITE OR SUBSTANTIVE DEMONSTRATIVES.

a. Dies *this* and Das *that* are used in pointing to persons, things or circumstances in the most general way; as, Dies ist er. *This is he.* Das war sie. *That was she.* Was war Das? *What was that?* Was soll Das heißen? *What is the meaning of that?* and there is hardly any difference in their force, Das being freely used in the sense of *this*. As they are not placed adjectively before the noun but are construed with the

verb, they remain the same with any gender or number, almost like the adverbs *hier here*, and *da there* to which they bear a close affinity. From the impersonal pronoun *es*, which is likewise used without regard to gender or number; as, *Es ist der Herr, It is the master*; *Es ist die Dame, It is the lady*; *Es sind meine Freunde, (ce sont mes amis) These are my friends*; they differ in this respect that they may be placed *before* all the persons Sing and Plur. of the verb *sein to be*; as, *Dies bin ich, This is I*; *Das warst du, That was you*; *Das sind wir, This is we*; *Das ist er, sie, That is he, she*; whilst the pronoun *es* must follow these forms; as, *Ich bin es. It is I. Sie ist es. It is she.* Examples: *Dies (hier) sind acht Äpfel und Das sind zehn Birnen. These are eight apples and those are ten pears.* *Dies sind gute und das sind schlechte Federn.. These are good and those are bad pens.*

6. THE GENITIVE of the above, *Dessen*, the DATIVE *Diesem* or *Dem* and the ACCUSATIVES *Dies* and *Das* are used with verbs and adjectives governing these cases (see Section XVIII.); as, *Ich erinnere mich Dessen, I remember (of) that*; *Bist du Dessen gewiß? Are you sure of that?* *Wir waren Dessen müde, We were tired of this*; *Kann man Dem (Diesem) nicht ausweichen? Can one not avoid that?* *Denken Sie Dem nach, Reflect upon that*; *Er ist Dem abgeneigt, He is averse to that*; and besides with any PREPOSITION, particularly when the Demonstrative is referred to by a *relative pronoun* in the succeeding clause*; as, *Er beklagte sich wegen Dessen, was man ihm vorgeworfen hatte. He complained of (that) what he had been taunted with.* *Er gab mir Nachricht von Dem, was geschehen war. He gave me intimation of (that) what had happened.* *Kümmere dich nicht um Das, was dich Nichts angeht. Do not trouble yourself about (that) what does not concern you.* It will be seen that the De-

* It will suffice here to state that clauses beginning with a relative pronoun or with a subordinative conjunction like *daß that*, are *dependent clauses*, (see Section XXX) the verb of which is placed at the end, the Auxiliary being last of all.

monstrative cannot be omitted, when it is the Antecedent of the Relative *was*.

c. The PREPOSITIONS stated Section VIII p. 58, 2, as forming compounds with *das*, *da* (*it*) are likewise JOINED to this Demonstrative which then has the principal accent. *Dies this*, is then sometimes replaced by *hier*; as, *hier'ferhalb* or *hier'halb* and *hier'megen* on account of this (*that*); *hier'bei* with or in doing this, *da'bei* with that; *hier'mit* with this, *da'mit* with that; *dem'gemäß*, *dem'nach*, *dem'zufolge* according to this or that; *hier'von* of this, *da'von* of that; *da'für* for that, (*this*); *hier'durch* through this, *da'durch* through that; *da'ran*, *da'rauf* on or upon that; *da'rum* for that (*reason*); *da'rüber*: about that. The COMPOUNDS with *Das* that can not be used as Antecedents of the Relative *was*, but are extensively employed in rendering sentences like the following: *He thanked me for having warned him, He blamed them for having neglected their duty*, in which the present participle occurs introduced by a preposition and with a subject different from that in the leading clause. In German they are expressed by two distinct clauses, the first of which contains the indispensable Demonstrative with the preposition; as, *Er dankte mir dafür*, *He thanked me for this*, whilst the second begins with the conjunction *daß* *that* and has the verb in a finite tense; as, *daß ich ihn warnte*. Hence: *Er dankte mir dafür, daß ich ihn warnte. He thanked me for warning him. Er tadelte sie deswegen, (on account of this) daß sie ihre Pflicht vernachlässigt hätten. He blamed them for having neglected their duty.* (Comp. Section XXV, D, on the use of Participles). When the two assertions of such sentences have the same subject, the second clause is generally rendered by the INFINITIVE with *zu*; as, *Er begnügte sich damit seine Meinung auszusprechen. He remained satisfied with expressing his opinion.* Sentences of the latter kind, however, do not always require the demonstrative compound; as, *Er war angeklagt, gestohlen zu haben. He was charged with having stolen.* (See Section XXV, C, The Infinitive.)

Note. If not referred to by a succeeding clause, the above compounds are generally AT THE BEGINNING of the clause by which means they are distinguished from the same forms representing the cases of *IT*; as, *Er ist hochmüthig geworden; da'rüber wundere ich mich nicht, aber ich staune über die Untermüthigkeit seiner frühern Gegner. He has become haughty; at THAT I do not wonder, but I am astonished at the submissiveness of his former opponents. Comp. with: Ich wundere mich nicht darü'ber, aber ich bedaure es. I do not wonder at IT, but I regret it. Da'von hat er mir Nichts gesagt. Of THAT he has told me nothing.*

B. THE ADJECTIVE-DEMONSTRATIVES.

See p. 66, 1. *Dieser, diese, dieses*, contracted *dies* (*der, die, das*, see p. 90, 2) *THIS, THIS ONE*, corresponds with the English when followed by the noun; as, *dieser Mann, this man; dieser reiche Mann, this rich man; diese Familie, this family; dieses große Volk, this great nation; diese Leute, these persons, people*; or when the noun is understood: *Dieser war es. It was this one. Ich will dir diesen geben. I will give you this one.* Used SUBSTANTIVELY it often occurs with the force of *der, die, das* letztere *the latter*, whilst *jener, jene, jenes* (see below 2) stands for *der, die, das* erstere *the former*; as, *Wellington und Blücher erschien den Sieg bei Waterloo; dieser erschien auf dem Kampfsplatze, nachdem jener sechs Stunden lang den wüthendsten Angriffen der Franzosen widerstanden hatte. Wellington and Blücher gained the victory of Waterloo; the latter appeared on the scene of combat, after the former had withstood for six hours the most furious charges of the French. Ich fand ihn in Gesellschaft der Herren Müller und Schulze; jener war sein Schwager, dieser sein Vetter. I found him in the company of the Messrs. Müller and Schultze; the former was his brother-in-law, the latter his cousin.*

See 2 of Table, Page 66. *Jener, jene, jenes* (*der, die, das*) *THAT, THAT ONE, YON*, is used only when the object is *in sight*, so that it can be pointed at, this pronoun thus requiring no phrase in explanation; as, *jener Baum, that tree yonder; jenes Gebäude, that building (yonder). Jener, &c., es*, sometimes stands for *he, she, it*, and fre-

quently has the force of *der, die, das* erstere the *former*, as stated above under *dieser*.

See 3 of Table, Page 66. *a. Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige* (*der, die, das*, see Section XII) *that, that one, he (who), she (who), that (which)*, differs from *jener, er, es*, above, in this respect, that it is used only when the OBJECT IS NOT WITHIN POINTING REACH, and thus requires to be farther explained, which is generally done by a *relative clause*; as, *Dies ist nicht der rechte Weg; der(jenige), welchen ich meine, führt grade nach der See. This is not the right road; that (one) which I mean, leads straight to the sea. Diese Feder kann ich dir nicht geben, nimm die(jenige), welche oben in meinem Schreibzeuge liegt. I can't give you this pen; take that (the one) which lies in my inkstand up stairs. Der(jenige), welcher dort kommt, kann es dir sagen. He who is coming yonder, can tell you. Die(jenige), welche Ihnen Das gesagt hat, ist dafür verantwortlich. She who told you that, is answerable for it. Die(jenigen) Herrn, welche aufstehen, sind für das Amendement. Those Gentlemen who stand up, are for the amendment.* For the omission of this pronoun see p. 88, Note.

b. Der, die, dasjenige is not always the antecedent of a Relative but is often EXPLAINED BY A GENITIVE OF POSSESSION OR AN ADVERBIAL EXPRESSION; as, *Dieser Hirt ist bequem; der(jenige) meines Bruders ist mir zu schwer. This hat is comfortable; that of my brother is too heavy for me. Mariens Haar ist dunkler als das(jenige) ihrer Schwester. Mary's hair is darker than that of her sister. Diese Kinderstube ist geräumiger als die(jenige) in unserer frühern Wohnung. This nursery is more roomy than that in our former dwelling-house. Keine Früchte schienen mir süßer als die(jenigen) aus meines Vaters Garten. No fruits seemed to me sweeter than those out of my father's garden.*

c. As the der, die, das is the real Demonstrative and the *jenige* merely appended for the sake of distinctness, the whole ACCENT rests on the former, whilst the latter is frequently omitted as indicated in the examples

above by its being put in parentheses. If *der, die, das* alone is used it requires a particular stress to distinguish it from the article or the relative pronoun, and when USED SUBSTANTIVELY it must be declined according to Section XII, Shorter form; the enlarged forms *dessen, deren, deren* being chiefly used in speaking of persons; as, *die Liebe dessen, den wir anbeten, the love of Him whom we worship; ein Freund deren, die wir ehren, a friend of those whom we honour. Sei denen dankbar, welche dich streng beurtheilen. Be grateful to those who judge you strictly.*

d. When the English *HE WHO, THOSE WHO* is used ABSTRACTLY, i. e. not with reference to a definite person or persons, but in the general sense of *any man who, any person who*, it can in the NOMINATIVE be rendered in contraction by the indefinite Relative *wer* with the force of *WHOEVER*, and *that which* used abstractly, by *was* *WHATEVER*. Examples: *Wer Gott fürchtet, liebt die Menschheit. He who (whoever) fears God, loves mankind. Wer Alles wirken will, wirkt Nichts. He who wants to do everything, does nothing. Was Händchen nicht lernt, lernt Hand nimmermehr. What little Jack does not learn, big Jack never learns. Was dem Einen Recht ist, ist dem Andern billig. That which is due to the one, is due to the other.* The other cases of *wer* and *was* (see D, Interrog. Pron. p. 82) occur similarly; but have always the Demonstrative in the succeeding clause; as, *Wessen Hände rein sind, der erhebe sie; lit. Whose hands are clean, he may lift them. — Let him whose hands are clean, lift them. Wen die Noth treibt, der findet Mittel. He finds means whom necessity urges.*

See 4 of Table, Page 86. *Derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe* (sometimes *ders, die-, dasselbige*, the accent on *selb*) THE SAME; as, *Es war derselbe Mann. It was the same man. Wir hatten ein(en) und denselben Gedanken. We had one and the same thought. Ich bin derselben Meinung, I am of the same opinion. Ich that es aus demselben Grunde. I did it from the same reason.*

As stated p. 58 and 59, this Demonstrative exten-

sively represents the English *it* in all its cases, particularly when used with prepositions; as, anſtatt deſſelben, *instead of it*; unweit deſſelben, *not far from it*; mit demſelben, *with it*; von demſelben, *of it*; durch denſelben, *through it*; für denſelben, *for it*; and ſometimes for the ſake of diſtinctneſs and euphony; as, Sie zeigte mir eine Statue; dieſelbe (for ſie) war von Rom gekommen. *She showed me a statue; it had come from Rome.* Wenn Sie ſich dieſelben erwerben (for wenn Sie ſie ſich). *If you acquire them for yourſelf.* Er empfiehlt Ihnen denſelben (for er empfiehlt ihn Ihnen). *He recommends it to you.* (See Section XXX, C, Position of the objects.)

But beſides it is uſed with advantage for the perſonal pronoun *it*, *ſie*, *es* in ſpeaking of PERSONS where the Engl. *he*, *she* &c. requires ſpecial interpretation, and in the ſame manner for the poſſeſſive pronoun; as, Er ſprach von dem Regenten; derſelbe ſei der Anſicht (for er ſei &c.). *He ſpoke of the regent; he (the regent) was of opinion.* Sie begleitete ihre Mutter; dieſelbe war leidend &c. *She accompanied her mother; she (the mother) was ſuffering &c.* Er reiſte mit dem Grafen und dem Bruder deſſelben (or deſſen Bruder). *He travelled with the count and his (the count's) brother.* Sie erzählte die Neuigkeit zuerſt Marien und dann der Schweiſter deſſelben (or derren Schweiſter). *She told the news firſt to Mary and then to her (Mary's) ſiſter.*

See 5 of Table, Page 66. Jeder, jede, jedes, plural alle, EACH EVERY, alſo uſed ſubſtantively, is properly an indefinite numeral with pronominal force. It affects the adjective like any of the preceding pronouns; as, jeder brave Mann, *every upright man*; jedes braven Mannes, *of every upright man*; jede ſchöne Stunde, *every fair hour*; jeder ſchönen Stunde, *of every fair hour*; jedes edle Weib, *every noble woman*; Plur. alle braven Männer, *all upright men*; alle ſchönen Stunden, *all fair hours*. Jeder, when preceded by the indefinite article, is treated like an adjective; as, ein jeder Betheiligte, *every one concerned*. Man kann nicht dem Rathe eines Jeden folgen. *One cannot follow the advice of everybody.*

Alle, alle, alles, the proper singular of alle is limited in its application, cannot be used with persons and means ANY, ALL, rather than every; as, Aller Anfang ist schwer. *Any beginning is difficult.* Alle Gewalt geht vom Volke aus. *All authority issues from the people;* Alles Gute, *everything good;* Alles Wissen, *any knowledge.*

Note 1. Alles, used substantively, EVERYTHING, ALL, is always referred to by the Relative was THAT; as, Alles, was ich habe, *everything that I have.* Alles, was du sagst, ist richtig. *All that you say, is right.*

Note 2. The plural alle *all the*, does not require the article, alle die standing for alle diejenigen *all those.* (Das All the universe). See also p. 67, Note 2 and 3.

Note 3. Aller &c. occurs without any termination; as, All mein Sehnen will ich, all mein Denken in des Lethe stillen Strom versenken, aber meine Liebe nicht. (Schiller.) *All my longings, all my thoughts will I sink in the stillstream of Lethe, — but not my love.* Mit all seinem Fleiße und all seiner Mühe richtet er Nichts aus. *With all his industry and labour he effects nothing.*

See 6 of Table, Page 66. Mancher, manche, manches MANY A, is also used substantively, as in English; as, Mancher glaubt Manches. *Many a one imagines many a thing;* manche Dinge, *some things;* manches Gute, *many a good thing.*

See 7 of Table, Page 66. Solcher, solche, solches SUCH, is usually preceded by the indefinite article, after which it is declined like an adjective; as, Ein solches Mannes, *Of such a man;* Zu einer solchen That, *To such a deed.* When followed by the indefinite article, it loses the inflectional terminations, the article only being declined. In this form it is more impressive; as, Solch eines Mannes, *Of such (so able, &c.) a man;* Zu solch einer That, *To such a (heroic, &c.) deed;* Pl. Solche Männer, *Such men;* Solcher Thaten, *Of such deeds.*

Such, in connexion with as, when used before a verb, is rendered by so, the noun being turned into an adjective, or preceded by an adjective of intensity; as, The violence of the storm was such as to make human efforts in vain. So gewaltig war der Sturm, or So groß war die Gewalt des Sturmes, daß menschliche An-

strennung vergebens war. In such cases the *as to* is always expressed by *daß*, as in the English phrase, *I was so stupified that I could not speak*. So betäubt war ich, daß ich nicht sprechen konnte. If *suck* in the above combination precedes a noun as a Demonstrative, *as* is rendered by a relative pronoun (see below); as, *Such men as are worthy*, Solche Männer, die würdig sind.

See 8 of Table, Page 66. (For the Interrogative and Relative see p. 81, 1; and p. 85, F). *Welcher*, *welche*, *welches* occurs colloquially in the sense of *Some*; as, *Wünschen Sie mehr Wein; hier ist noch welcher*. *Do you wish more wine, there is some here yet*. Its use is, however, better avoided, except after the adverb *Jirgend any at all* and then only in the plural; as, *Haben Sie irgend welche Aussichten? Have you any prospects at all?*

See 9 of Table, Page 66. The use of the SINGULAR of some of the pronominal INDEFINITE NUMERALS requires attention. *Ein anderer &c.* AN OTHER, means *a different one*; the English *another* in the sense of *ONE MORE* being noch *Ein*, *eine &c.* (den andern Tag, *the next day*; *neulich*, *the other day*.)

Einiget, e, es SOME and *sämmtlicher, e, es* THE WHOLE can be used only before the names of materials or abstract nouns; as, *Mit einigem Fleiße und einiger Geduld kannst du Das Alles überwinden*. *With some diligence and patience you can overcome all that*. Die Kinder hatten sämtliches Brod und sämtliche Milch verzehrt. *The children had consumed the whole of the bread and milk*.

Viel MUCH and *wenig* LITTLE remain undeclined when denoting a *single* large or small quantity; as, *Er hat viel getrunken und wenig gegessen*. *He has drunk much and eaten little*; mit wenig Wiß und viel Behagen, *with little wit and much complacency*. (*Ein wenig*, A LITTLE, a small quantity remains unchanged). They become adjectives after the definite article and the possessive pronouns; as, *Das viele Prozeßsiren hat sein wenigcs Vermögen aufgezehrt*. *The many litigations have consumed his little fortune*. For *wenig little*, in the sense of *limited*, ge-

ring may be substituted; as, von geringer Bedeutung, of little importance.

Vieler, *e*, *es*, however, assumes the terminations of the article when not a *single* large quantity, but the result of ACCUMULATION OR FREQUENCY is implied; as, *Vieler Gram und viele Sorge haben ihn gebeugt. Much grief and care have bowed him down; durch vieles Schütteln, through a great deal of shaking.* The GEN. and DAT., however, occur without such significance; as, *wegen vieler Arbeit, on account of much work; mit vielem Vergnügen, with much pleasure.*

Note. No difference between *SOME* and *ANY* is expressed in German, as in the English, *Have you any books? I have some books.* They are generally omitted; as, *Haben Sie Bücher? Ich habe Bücher. Geben Sie mir Brod. Give me some bread.* Or if they are rendered, *etwas* is used with the names of materials and abstract nouns or in referring to such, *irgend ein, e*, plur. *irgend welche*, with persons and things, and *irgend Einer*, *irgend Jemand*, substantively with persons; as, *Geben Sie mir etwas Geld. Give me some money. Ich hatte etwas or einigen Verdruß. I had some annoyance. Ich war etwas or ein wenig besorgt. I was somewhat or a little concerned. Wissen Sie irgend ein Mittel? Do you know any remedy? Gehen Sie zu irgend einem Juristen. Go to any lawyer. Irgend Einer or irgend Jemand muß es gesagt haben. Some one, some person must have said it. Ist irgend Jemand hier gewesen? Has any person been here?*

THE PLURALS OF THE ABOVE as given in the table page 66, 9, require no farther explanation.

C. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS AND *sein, e*.

Their declension, influence on the adjective &c. has been given in Section IX, pp. 61—67. The pupil's attention is required for the following:

a. *YOUR* is expressed in three ways: Speaking familiarly to *one* person by *Dein, deine, dein*; speaking familiarly to *several* by *Euer, eure, euer*; and speaking conventionally either to *one* or to a *number*, by *Ihr, Ihre, Ihr*. *Mein Kind, wo ist Dein Buch? My child, where is your book? Liebe Kinder, ich habe eure Bücher. Dear children, I have your books. Madam, hier ist Ihr Die-*

ger. *Madam, here is your servant.* Meine Herren, hier sind Ihre Pferde. *Gentlemen, here are your horses.* Where DEPENDENTS are addressed with *Er* and *Sie* (*you*) the possessive is of course *Er*, *e* and *Ihr*, *e* (*your*). *Your Majesty, Highness &c.* is *Eure Majestät, Hoheit &c.*

b. The possessive pronouns, of course, agree in gender and case with the noun which they precede or refer to; as, *mein Vater, my father*; *seine Mutter, his mother*; *unsre Kinder, our children*; Gen. *meines Vaters, seiner Mutter, unsrer Kinder &c.*

c. The same is the case with the SUBSTANTIVE-POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS; as, *Dieser Garten ist der meinige* (colloqu. *meiner*). *This garden is mine.* Ich habe meine Uhr nicht bei mir; leihe mir die deinige (colloqu. *deine*). *I have not my watch with me; lend me yours.* Die Meinigen werden erfreut sein die Ihrigen zu begrüßen. *My relations will be happy to salute yours.* Jedem das Seine (*sum cuique*). *To every one his due* (See p. 67).

d. The SUBSTANTIVE-POSSESSIVES when used in the nominative are employed without article and terminations in poetical language and when referring to any indefinite pronoun; as, *Der Pfeil, der von der Sehne flog, ist nicht mehr dein* (for *der deinige*). *The arrow that flew from the bow-string, is no longer thine.* Noch ist dies Bollwerk unser (for *das unsrige*). *As yet this bulwark is ours.* Sie wurde mein (for *die meinige*). *She became mine.* So lange ich dieses Reich mein nenne, *As long as I call these realms mine.* Wenn ich bedenke, was einst mein war, *If I consider what once was mine.* Was Euer ist, soll Euer bleiben. *What is yours shall remain yours* (64, 9).

Note. The possessive *Ihr* *her*, being identical with the dative *Ihr* of *she*, cannot be used for *der*, *die*, *das* *Ihrige*; as, *Was sie dir zeigt, ist nicht das Ihrige.* *What she shows you is not hers.*

e. *Rein*, *fein*, *kein* is a contraction of *nicht ein* *not a*, *no* and must be used not only where *no* and *not a* precede the noun in English; as, *no bread*, *kein Brod*; *not a word*, *kein Wort*; but even where *not* in English qualifies a verb having a noun with the indefinite article or the name of a material for its object; as, *Er*

hat mir kein Buch gegeben. *He has not given me a book.*
 Sie werden keine Umstände haben. *You will not have any trouble.*
 Wir wollten keinen Wein trinken. *We did not wish to drink wine.*
 Er liebt keine Complimente. *He does not like compliments.*
 The reason of this peculiarity is the identity in form of nicht ein *not a*, with nicht Ein *not one*; as, Ich habe kein Pferd. *I have not a horse.*
 Ich habe nicht Ein Pferd. *I have not one horse.*

f. *Kein* takes the TERMINATIONS OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE, Nom. keiner, keine, keines when used substantively, in the same manner as the numeral Ein *one* when referring to a preceding noun becomes einer, eine, eines; as, Wie viele Männer sind da? *How many men are there?*
 Keiner! *not one.* Nur Einer, *only one.* Haben Sie einen Bleistift? *Have you a pencil?* Ich habe keinen; ich werde einen holen. *I have none, I shall fetch one.* Gib mir eine Feder; ich habe keine. *Give me a pen, I have none.*

Keiner, e, es occurs for Niemand *nobody, no one, none of them*, in the same way as Einer, e, es for Jemand *some person, some one*; as, Keiner hat ihn gesehen. *Nobody has seen him.* Irgend Einer hat es bemerkt. *Some one has noticed it.*

D. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are used also as Relatives, for example in INDIRECT QUESTIONS, in which, as in all *dependent clauses*, (Section XXX.) the verb is placed at the end, the Auxiliary being last.

1. Welcher, welche, welches *which, what* as an Interrogative cannot be replaced by der, die, das, and is followed by the noun; as, Welcher rechtlich denkende Mann? *What right thinking man?* Welche Person meinen Sie? *Which person do you mean?* Welches Lied wollen wir singen? *What song shall we sing?* — or by the particle of a pronoun; as, Welcher von uns? *Which of us?* Welcher derselben? *Which of them?* Welchem von euch kann ich glauben? *Which of you can I believe?*

Sometimes, it is used substantively; as, Welcher war

es? *Which was it? Welche ist es? Which is it? Welchen haben Sie gebracht? Which have you brought?*

Welch(er) loses its terminations before the indefinite article; as, *Welch ein Leichtsin!* What frivolity! *Von welch einem Dämon bist du besessen!* By what demon are you possessed! *Welch ein Schauspiel!* What a spectacle! (*Was für ein* is sometimes substituted for *welch ein what a*, but ought to be used in the sense of *what sort of*, see below). *Welcher &c. some, any*, see Page 78.

2. *Wer who*, is a SUBSTANTIVE-INTERROGATIVE, and refers to persons INDEFINITELY. (*As a Relative* it has no expressed Antecedent, except in some elliptical phrases. See above *berrenige*. p. 75, d.). *Wer ist da? Who is there? Wessen or wess ist das Bild und die Unterschrift? Whose is the image and superscription? Wem gehören diese Sachen? To whom do these things belong? Wen suchen Sie? Whom do you seek?*

3. DECLENSION OF *Wer? WHO? AND Was? WHAT? WHICH?*

N. *Wer who.*

N. *Was which.*

G. *Wessen or wess of whom, whose.*

G. *Wessen or wess of what.*

D. *Wem (to) whom.*

D. *is wanting; (see below).*

A. *Wen whom.*

A. *Was which.*

Wer never forms compounds with prepositions; *wegen wessen? on account of whom? mit wem? with whom? wem gegenüber? opposite whom? für wen? for whom?*

4. *Was WHAT (wo es where it)* on the other hand, has the prepositions, stated in Section VIII, p. 58, 2, annexed to it; as, *weshalb and weshalb or weshalb, weshwegen on account of what, on what account?*

As the DATIVE is wanting, the prepositions requiring this case, and analogously those governing the ACCUSATIVE, are annexed to the original root *wo where, was what, of what, womit with what, wherewith, wofür (also für was) for what*; an *r* being inserted if the preposition begins with a vowel; as, *worauf out of what, worauf on what, worauf upon what, worauf upon which, worauf upon what, worin in what, in which, worin wherein, worüber above what,*

about *what* ~~was~~ *Warum* (*what for*); *wherefore*, *why*, has more recently changed into *pourquoi*.

The substitution of *Was?* for *Warum?* *why?*, although frequently met with in Schiller's works, (*Was legt ihm Hand an diesen Mann?* *Why do you lay hands on this man?*) is colloquial and cannot be recommended.

Such prepositions, governing the Gen. and Dat., as do not enter into composition, render a noun in explanation necessary; as, *Anstatt welches Dinges?* *Instead of which thing?* *für instead of what?* *Umweit welches Ortes?* *In the neighbourhood of what place?* *Außer welchem Umstand?* *Except which circumstance?* *außercept* *what?* *Widerum* *rather* *gegenüber?* *Contrary to what?*

All the above forms are also employed relatively; but the compounds of *wo* are only from carelessness substituted for the cases of *welcher*, *s.* *es* *which*, preceded by prepositions; as the latter pronoun is not deficient in its cases and has a regular dative; as, *Von welchem Buche?* *Of what book?* *Mit welchem Feder?* *With which pen?*

Was für ein, eine, ein? *WHAT SORT OF, WHAT KIND OF, is, Was für ein Baum war es?* *What kind of a tree was it?* *Was für eine Uhr möchten Sie?* *What sort of a watch do you wish?*

This form occurs substantively; as, *Was für einer war es?* *What sort of a man was it?* *Was für eine haben Sie gekauft?* *What sort of a (fence) thing have you bought?*

Für is sometimes awkwardly separated from *wo* &c.; as, *Es soll mich wundern, wo es zu dem Ende noch für eine Rolle spielen wird*, for *was für eine Rolle &c.* *I shall wonder what part he may yet act in the end.* This, of course, is not to be recommended.

The substitution of *Was für ein, eine, ein* for *welcher, ein, eine, welche*, is likewise objectionable, and may be seen *Was 44 44* (separated by the Nom. and adv. simple) personal pronoun in the relative occurs colloquially, as *was für ein, eine, ein* *what* *a* *variety* *of*

THINGS: as, *Seht, ihr Aelchen, was ich euch Alles mitgebracht habe.* Look you little ones, what a lot of things I have brought for you. *Es ist erstaunlich, was er Alles in seinem Laden hat.* It is astonishing what a variety of things he has in his shop. Was hat er dir denn Alles gesagt? *What all did he tell you?*

7. Was — auch WHATEVER (all the following combinations with *auch* being relative) and *nur* — *nur* (interrogative only) EXPRESSING WONDER; as, *Was er dir auch versprochen mag.* Whatever he may promise you. *Was er nur vorhat.* I wonder what he is about. *Was sie sich nur denkt!* What can she imagine!

8. Auch and *nur* have the same force in combination with *Wer*? *who?* *Wer auch whatever;* as, *Wer er nur ist, I wonder who he is;* — and likewise with the following:

E. INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE ADVERBS.

a. Wann? WHEN? at what particular time, date, hour? as, *Wann war es?* When was it? *Wann essen Sie?* When do you dine? *Wann do you take supper?* *Kommen Sie, wann es auch sein mag.* Do come, whatever time it may be. *Wann er nur damit fertig werden wird!* I wonder when he will have done with it!

b. Wie? HOW? in what manner? as, *Wie alt sind Sie?* How old are you? *Wie heißen Sie?* (How are you named?) *What is your name?* *Wie es auch damit sein mag, — However that may be. — Wie sehr ich dies auch wünsche, — However much I wish this. — Wie lange es nur dauern wird?* I wonder how long it will continue?

c. Wo? WHERE? in what place? *Woher?* WHENCE? from what place? *Wohin?* WHITHER? to which place? as, *Ergrast ihn, wo ihr ihn auch findet!* Seize him, wherever you may find him! *Wo er nur bleibt!* I wonder where he tarries? *Woher kommen Sie?* Where are you coming from? *Woher wissen Sie Das?* Whence do you know that? *Wohin gehen Sie?* Where are you going?

(last) *Wohin wollen Sie? Wohin bound?* (Compare Section XXIX).

F. THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The pronouns, adverbs and combinations given above under D and E are also used relatively, and then introduce DEPENDENT CLAUSES, the verb of which is placed at the end, the Auxiliary being last of all.

Note 1. Auch (ever) is sometimes omitted in relative combinations, but is easily understood; as, *Wie unangenehm es uns Allen war, wir mußten es dulden.* *However disagreeable it was for us all, we had to bear it.*

a. The Relative agrees only in GENDER with its Antecedent. Its CASE depends on its position in the clause; whether it is the Subject (Nom.) or the Object, or governed by a verb, adjective or preposition. It can NEVER BE ALTOGETHER OMITTED in GERMAN as is often done in English; as, *Der Mann, welchen du sahst, the man you saw*; nor can the preposition be separated from the pronoun; as, *The man I spoke of, Der Mann, von welchem ich sprach.*

If, however, the pronoun in the same case occurs in a SUCCESSION OF RELATIVE CLAUSES, it is generally rendered only once; as, *Er führte mich in den Garten, welcher nicht sehr lang, auf allen Seiten von grünen Hecken umgeben und in regelmäßige Beete abgetheilt war.* *He led me into the garden which was not very long, which was surrounded on all sides with green hedges and which was divided into regular beds.*

b. Wer who and was which, that, what, are INDEFINITE Relatives, since they have not, or at least, do not require an Antecedent, whilst welcher, welche, welches and its shorter form der, die, das are DEFINITE, in as much as they always refer to a noun or pronoun in a preceding clause, however indefinite the meaning of their Antecedent may be; as, *Niemand der u. nobody who &c.* (never *Niemand wer*).

c. Wer in the sense of HE WHO, whoever, and Was

in the sense of **THAT** which, *whateverly* have been dealt with under *Derjenige*, p. 75, d.

Note 2. Was and not das must be used in referring to **ALLES** ALL, **ETWAS** SOMETHING, **MANCHES** MANY A THING, **NICHTS** NOTHING, **VIELES** MANY THINGS; as, Sagen Sie mir Alles, was Sie wissen. Tell me everything (that) you know. Ich bringe Etwas, was euch gefallen wird. I bring something that will please you. Es giebt Manches, was man Menschen kaum erklären könnte. There is many a thing, which one could scarcely explain to man. Hier sehe ich Nichts, was mich fürchten wäre. Here I see nothing that should be feared. Vieles, was ich dort sah, mißfiel mir. Much that I saw there, displeased me.

The above indefinite pronouns, of course, take the **PREPOSITIONAL** COMPOUNDS of *was*, representing cases of *was*; (see above D, 4, p. 82) as, Manches, Vieles, Alles, woran ihr Herz hing, hatte sie verloren. Many a thing, — all to which her heart clung, she had lost.

But instead of the **GENITIVE** of *was*, (*dessen*), the demonstrative form *dessen* must be substituted after the above; as, Da ist Alles, *Es* was, Manches, Nichts, Vieles, *dessen* Sie sich rühmen können. There is all — something &c. of which you may boast.

THE INDEFINITE DEMONSTRATIVES *Dies* and *Das*, and *neuter* **SUBJUNCTIVES** used substantively, are construed as the above. Das, was du fürchtest, wird dich nicht treffen. Das Schlimmste, was dir begegnen kann, ist der Beifall gemeiner Seelen. That which you fear, will not happen to you. The worst that can befall you, is the applause of mean souls.

d. AS, in a dependent clause, when used in reference to the demonstrative pronoun *such*, is rendered either by the relative pronoun; as, *Choose such men as are worthy of your confidence*, Wählt solche Männer, die eures Vertrauens würdig sind; or by the relative adverb *wie*; as, *Such men as the emergency requires will not be wanting*. An solchen Männern wie sie der Augenblick fordert, wird es nicht fehlen. In the latter case, the Antecedent must be repeated in form of a personal pronoun as *he* above, or of a demonstrative pronoun used substantively; as, Briefe, wie ich dergn häufig erhielt, Letters, such as I frequently received.

Note 3. The relative pronoun and this relative adverb *wie* cannot, however, be used indistinctly, and it must, therefore, be observed, that *as* is rendered by the Relative, when it can be tolerably well replaced in the English sentence by *who*, *which*, *that*, whilst *wie* must be used in the sense of *after the manner of*, of a nature like that which.

e. In obsolete, chiefly in *scriptural* language, so occurs as a Relative.

f. The regular GENITIVE of the Relative *welcher*, *es* is NEVER USED, as it would appear like the Nom. masc. and neut. *welcher*, *es* of the Interrogative when placed before a noun: thus Nom. *die Frau, welche*, — *the woman who*, — (reg. Gen. *welcher*, whose); but, *The woman whose son*, *Die Frau, welcher Sohn* would appear like *the woman which son* &c.; — *Der Mann, welches Kind* &c. would appear like *The man which child* &c. and to avoid this awkwardness THE GENITIVE *des* (gen. *der* & *den*) OF THE SHORTER FORM (see below) is invariably substituted for the regular genitive, being for the sake of distinctness enlarged by the suffix *en*, and *des* receiving a second *s* to preserve the shortness of its vowel.

As to the rest of the cases, the use of the shorter form is optional. (See, however, below, 2, 3 & 4.)

SECTION XII. — SHORTER FORM OF PRONOUNS.

1. *Der, die, das*, the original Demonstrative is still very extensively used in place of other DEMONSTRATIVES, and is then always ACCENTED. When used without a noun it is ENLARGED in the genitive singular and in the Gen. and Dat. plural by the suffix *en*, in order to prevent its being confounded with the mere article; *des* receiving another *s*, merely to preserve the shortness of its vowel.

2. As stated above, (B, Adjective Demonstratives) most Demonstratives represent the English PERSONAL PRONOUN and hence the shorter form frequently occurs with the force of *HE, SHE, IT, THEY* &c.

3. But of particular importance is its use as a DEFINITIVE RELATIVE, in which capacity the pupil will readily recognize it, seeing it preceded by the COMMA (see p. 21, 4.) and finding the inflected verb placed LAST in its clause; as, *Hier ist der Mann, der das Geld gefunden hat.* Here is the man who has found the money. As a Relative, *der, die, das* is NOT ACCENTED.

Note. Cases even occur in which the shorter form represents at once the Relative and its demonstrative Antecedent; the Demonstrative being omitted, and the shorter form introducing the dependent clause (see p. 74, a); as, *Der hier ruht, war mein Freund.* *He who rests here was my friend.* *Gegnet die euch fluchen.* *Bless them that curse you.* Such contractions imply the identity in form of the two pronouns; as, *Gegnet die (jenigen), die euch fluchen.*

Singular.**Plural.**

Nom. der,	die,	das,	die, who, which, &c.
Gen. dessen (deß),	deren,	dessen.	deren, of whom, whose, but <i>derer</i> , of those.
Dat. dem,	der,	dem.	denen, to whom, to which.
Acc. den,	die,	das.	die, whom, which.

It will be seen that this shorter form is used for **THIS ONE, THAT ONE, HE, SHE, IT, WHO, WHICH** and **THAT**. Its use instead of the full forms is optional, except in the following cases. It must be used instead of the **RELATIVE** *welcher, er, es* —

a. Always in the **GENITIVE**, both singular and plural, so that there exists in practice no genitive singular or plural of the **Relative** *welcher, er, es*; as, *Der Mann, dessen (never welches) ich erwähnte;* *The man of whom I made mention;* *Die Dame, deren (never welcher) Sohn,* *The lady whose son;* *Das Weib, dessen (never welches) Kind,* *The woman whose child;* *die Bäume, deren (never welcher) Stamm,* *The trees, the pith of which.* From these instances it will be observed that this genitive must always be placed **BEFORE** the complement instead of after it as is done in English; as, *Der Berg, an dessen Fuße,* *The mountain at the foot of which;* *Die Blumen, deren lieblicher Duft,* *The flowers, the charming smell of which,* — and that it **IMPLIES** THE ARTICLE like the English Possessive *whose*.

b. As the German Relative has the form of the **third personal pronoun**, and always governs the verb in the third person, it is unfit by itself to render phrases like *"I who am his friend, have warned him."* — *Thou who art our father, hast given us Thy law.* — *You who are children, cannot understand that?* in which the English *who* governs the verb in the first and second persons and thus maintains the desirable conformity of

speech. In order to preserve this conformity in German, the personal pronoun corresponding with the Antecedent is introduced into the relative clause, being placed directly after the Relative, and made to govern the verb instead of it. This is done in the first and second persons, both in the Sing. and Plur. and in this kind of clauses the Relative must be used in its shorter form; as, Ich, der ich sein Groub bin, hab' ihn gewohnt. (See above.) Du, der Du unser Vater bist, hast uns Dein Geseß gegeben. Ihr, die ihr Kinder seid, könnt Das nicht verstehen. Wir, die wir den Tod nicht fürchten, wollen das Leben genießen. *We who do not fear death, seek to win life.* Unser Vater, der Du bist im Himmel. *Our father, who art in heaven.*

v. The shorter form is required after Jemand somebody, irgend Jemand any body, Niemand nobody, and Jedermann everybody; as, Jemand, der es sah. *Some person who saw it.* Niemand, den du kennst. *Nobody whom you know.* Jedermann, dem du den Fall vorstellst. *Everybody to whom you present the case.* Etwas something, any thing, is better followed by *was* than by *was*; as, Etwas, das dich erfreuen wird. *Something that will please you.* d. The indefinite pronouns Alles everything, Etwas something, Manches many a thing, Nichts nothing, and Mehrs many things, which otherwise are referred to by *was* that, require the genitive *dessen* instead of *dessen* as stated above, (F, THE REL. PRON. p. 86; Note 2).

The shorter form otherwise occurs as partly stated in Section XI, A and B—

1. For the indefinite substantive Demonstratives Dies this and Das that in the Gen. and Dat. cases (see p. 11 b); as, Er erwähnt Dessen nicht. *He did not make mention of this (that).* Er ist Dessen nicht schuldig. *He is not guilty of that.* Ich kenne Dens nicht beistimmen. *I cannot agree to this (that).* Ich weiß Nichts von alld. Dem. *I know nothing of all that.* It must be remembered that certain PROPOSITIONS, stated p. 58, 2, enter into composition with Das. (See you on account of that)

denis with *this, that &c.*), but even with these prepositions *Wessen* and *Dem* must be used when they are the ANTECEDENTS of the Relative *was*; as, *Ich bedaure ihn wegen Wessen, was er zu leiden hat. I pity him on account of what he has to suffer. Ich bin zufrieden mit Dem, was Sie mir geben. I am contented with (that) what you give me. (nachdem after that, demnach according to that).*

2. The shorter form is used for *dieser, er, es* THIS ONE and *jener, er, es* THAT ONE when used substantively, particularly with the adverbs *hier here*, and *da, dort there*; as, *Der hier ist mit dem dort nicht zu vergleichen. This one is not to be likened to that one. Geh zu der da; die wird es dir geben. Go to that one (her yonder); she will give it you. Gehen Sie den Weg hirs; der dort ist nicht der rechte. Go this road; that yonder is not the right one.* The Gen. *dessen* is here less usual.

3. The shorter form is used for *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige* THAT (*which*), *HE, SHE* (*who*). Here the enlarged forms *dessen, dessen, Gen. Plur. deren* of those, *Dat. denen*, are used only substantively in reference to persons. (See pp. 74, c and 75).

In speaking of things, the forms of the article suffice, pronounced with a certain stress or replaced by the full forms *desjenigen, desjenigen, denjenigen*, if distinctness requires it. As an illustration we give the harangue to the Bastards sword from "*der Gid*" by *Herder* in which the shorter form occurs both demonstratively and relatively:

Worth wird dessen, dem du dienst,

Der sein, dem fortan du dienest.

Worthy of him, whom thou servedst,

Will he be whom thou shalt henceforth serve.

4. The shorter form stands for *derselbe, die, selbe, dasselbe* THE SAME, *HE* (see p. 75, 4); as, *Suchen Sie Herrn N.? — Den finden Sie nicht zu Hause. Do you seek Mr. N.? — You will not find him in. Ich suche Frau N. — Die ist ausgegangen. I seek Mrs. N. — She has gone out;* also with the force of a POSSESSIVE; as, *Ich sah ihn mit Georg und dessen*

Bruder. I saw him with George and his (George's) brother. Er war mit seiner Frau und deren Schwester dort. He was there with his wife and her (the wife's) sister.

As *der, die, dasselbe* is extensively employed for *er, sit, es, it*, the shorter form likewise expresses the third personal pronoun, particularly in the genitives; as, Ich war dessen nicht gewahr, I was not aware of it. Die Stadt hat viele Kirchen; jede Confession hat deren mehrere. The city has many churches; each denomination has several of them. — With prepositions not entering into composition with *da* (see p. 58, 2), the full form is preferable; as, Sein Haus liegt an dem Plage und meine Wohnung war demselben gegenüber. His house is situated in the square, and my lodgings were opposite it.

Note. *Das* occurs as an expression of contempt used of persons with the force of *that sort of creatures*; as in Schiller's *Wallenstein*: (i), *Das muß immer faulen und fressen!* (The soldier saying of the starving peasantry) — *Why, that set must always be guzzling and gubbing*; or in Tell: *Das schleicht wie die Schneden.* These sluggards are crawling like snails.

SECTION XIII. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

THE MODIFICATION OF THE VOWEL (a into ä, o into ö, u into ü) forms a feature in comparison similar to the English *old, elder, eldest*. As the vowel cannot be changed in Derivatives, but only in the most ancient original words, signifying most primitive notions (see Derivation, p. 31, 32); and as all adjectives of this kind are MONOSYLLABLES, only monosyllabic adjectives and adverbs modify the vowel in the comparative and superlative degrees, EXCEPT those with *au* and the following, which from their nature may be held to be of later origin or are but rarely used in the Comparative and Superlative.*

* In connecting modification with the antiquity of the words in the derived forms of which it occurs, (compare p. 52, Note), the author, in the first place, wishes to afford the pupil some practical assistance in recognizing the words in which modification may be expected. But

bar, bare.	blatly, flat.
barb, gruff, harsh.	clump, clumsy.
brav, upright, noble.	dash, quick, rash.
bunt, variegated, gay-coloured.	rob, raw, rude.
dumpf, dull, obtuse.	rund, round.
fahl, withered, wasted.	sacht, gentle, soft.
falt, fallow, dun.	sant, soft, meek.
fals, false, wrong.	satt, satiated, sick of.
flach, flat, shallow.	schlaff, slack, without energy.
fröh, glad, joyful.	slant, slender.
hohl, hollow.	starr, ragged, unapproachable.
helt, gracious, graceful (benign).	starr, rigid, staring.
lahl, bald, bare.	stolz, proud.
larg, scanty.	straff, tense, stretched.
klar, clear, plain.	stumm, dumb, silent.
knapp, scanty, tight.	stumpf, blunt.
lahm, lame.	tehl, mad.
lah, slack, dispirited.	voll, full.
matt, powerless.	wehr, true.
niert, decayed, rotten.	zäh, tame.
nackt, naked.	zart, tender, soft, delicate.

The TERMINATIONS of comparison are, even in adjectives of many syllables, in the Comparative, and -st in the Superlative, (the *e* being euphonic). Examples of the degrees of comparison used PREDICATIVELY:

warm, warmer, (am) warmest; kalt, colder, (ist) coldest.

he would also direct attention to some facts affecting the established theory of modification. This theory is, that the vowel *i* (or in some languages *u*) in the suffix is the organic cause of the modification of the root-vowel. Thus the terminations of comparison *-er*, *-st*, *-ig*, *-igst* in the adjectives of the Gothic and old High-German, are held to be the cause of the subsequent modification of these adjectives. But the fact is that these terminations failed to affect the root-vowel during the whole period of the old High-German; from the 6th to the 13th century, while from the very beginning of this time the modified occurs in the plurals of primitive nouns and even in such, as *temper dumbo*, *tehl valleys*, which J. Grimm, Vol. II, p. 270, thinks likely to have been formed in analogy with the Comparative of adjectives. This discrepancy and further the observation of the effect of climatic influences on vowels (which in a similar manner may have produced modification in the ancient (Northern, Baktrian), embolden the author to suggest the possibility of modification having been received into German from the ancient and extensively modifying Norse, (Erisian, Anglo-Saxon &c.) as a convenient means of inflection, first in primary nouns, and afterwards in the degrees of adjectives recognisable as primary by the *ist* their terminations.

most; *groß* *great*, *größer* *greater*, (*am*) *größten* (*the*) *great-est*; *jung* *young*, *jünger* *younger*, (*der*) *jüngst*(*r*) *the young-est*. The Superlative of *groß* is generally contracted into *größt*. (For the form *am* — *sten*, see below Relative Superlative). *

A. ADJECTIVES USED AS ATTRIBUTES (that is, placed before the noun) add to the terminations of comparison those of declension; (see pp. 61—66) as, *ein wärmerer Tag*, *a warmer day*; *das wärmste Wetter*, *the warmest weather*; *des größern Theils*, *of the greater part*; *dem jüngsten Kinde*, *to the youngest child*.

Any degree of comparison may be used in the attributive form without a noun following it, if the noun to which it refers is mentioned before or after it; as, *Unter den Königen Englands war Richard III. der schlechteste und Karl I. der unglücklichste (König)*. *Among the kings of England Richard III. was the most wicked and Charles I. the most unfortunate*; or, *Richard III. war der schlechteste und Karl I. der unglücklichste König Englands*. *Richard III. was the most wicked and Charles I. the most unfortunate king of England*.

After *ein* *a*, *mein* *my*, *dein* *thy*, *sein* *his*, in the Nom. and Acc. Sing. neut., the adjective sometimes loses its attributive termination in poetry in all degrees of comparison; as, *ein löstlich(e)s Gut*, *a precious good*; *ein höher(e)s Verlangen*, *a higher longing*. *Mein erst(e)s Gefühl sei Preis und Dank*. *My first sentiment be praise and thanks*.

After the indefinite article the Superlative is used only in a limited sense; as, *Ein glücklichster Tag*, *a happiest day (in one's life)*; *Ein liebster Freund*, *a dearest friend*. The English Superlative, *a most happy*, *a most dear*, must be expressed by *ein sehr glücklicher*, *ein sehr theurer*; as, *Ein sehr angenehmer Tag*, *a most agreeable day*.

B. IF USED ADVERBIALY, the Comparative

* It is needless to give a list of adjectives which from their meaning do not admit of comparison.

always ends in *er*, but the Superlative is differently expressed.

THE SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE

occurs, 1. simply in *st* with adjectives terminating in *bar*, *ig*, *lich*, *sam*; as, *dankebarst*, *most thankfully*; *gütlichst*, *friendliest*; *höflichst*, *most kindly*; *gehorsamst*, *most obediently*; *ergebenst*, *most faithfully*. This form, besides, occurs in composition with participles, used as adjectives, forming their first component; as, in *den besten unterrichteten Kreisen*, *in the best informed circles*.

2. In *stens* only in the following adverbial expressions: *bestens*, *most kindly*, in the best manner, as well as one can; *frühestens*, as early as possible; *spätestens*, at the soonest; *höchstens*, at the highest, at the most; *längstens*, at the longest, at the furthest; *meistens*, generally; *mindestens*, at least; *nächstens*, very soon, in a little; *schönstens*, in the finest manner; *spätestens*, at the latest; *wenigstens*, at least;—and with numerals; as, *erstens*, in the first place; *leztens*, lastly.

3. With the preposition *auf* before the accusative neuter of the Superlative; as, *auf das Beste*, *in the best manner*; the preposition being usually contracted with the article; as, *auf's Beste*, *auf's Günstigste*, *most agreeably*.

THE RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE

is expressed by the preposition *an* before the dative neuter of the Superlative; as, *am besten*, *best*; *am liebsten*, *what one would like best*; *am meisten*, *most*.

This relative Superlative is not only used adverbially but also predicatively.

Note 1. WHEN USED ADVERBIALY, the relative Superlative does not denote the highest degree absolutely attainable, but merely the highest degree attained by a person or thing as compared with some others, (which need not even attain a very high degree at all); as, *Diese Schiffe segeln schlecht*, *these ships sail badly*; *Das Boot macht kaum acht Knoten*, *This boat makes scarcely eight knots*. Or it signifies the highest degree attained by a person or thing under particular circumstances; as, *Georg schreibt nicht gut*, *George does not write well*; *er schreibt am besten, wenn er steht*, *he writes best when he stands*.

Note 2. The relative Superlative "ought to be used—"

VELY only, when the person or thing is stated as possessing a certain quality in the highest degree under particular circumstances; as, Die Wirkung des Lichts ist am stärksten, wenn der Himmel nicht bedeckt ist. *The effect of the light is strongest when the sky is not clouded.* Das Wetter war seit mehreren Tagen sehr warm; heute ist es am wärmsten. *The weather has been very warm for several days; to-day it is warmest.* Wenn die Noth am höchsten, ist Gottes Hülfe am nächsten. *When need is highest, God's help is nearest.* Yet it occurs instead of the attributive form; as, Die, welche am eifrigsten sind, (for die Eifrigsten) sind oft am fernsten vom Ziele. *Those who are the most eager, are often the farthest from the goal.*

C. PARTICIPLES, not mentioned as adjectives in the dictionary, as well as adjectives formed with more than one weak suffix especially when ending in *isch*, form the Comparative with *mehr* and the Superlative with *am meisten*; as, Er ist mehr gefürchtet als der König. *He is more feared than the king.* Er ist am meisten beschädigt. *He is the most injured.* In dieser Form ist die Offerte am meisten trügerisch. *The offer is most deceptive in this form.* Negatively *weniger* and *mindert less*, and *am wenigsten*, *am mindesten least*, are employed.

Even attributively the above adverbs are inserted between the article and the adjective &c.; as, Die am meisten trügerische Verheißung. *The most deceptive promise of all.* Ein minder annehmbarer Vorschlag. *A less acceptable proposal.* Auf der am meisten verdunkelten Seite des Horizontes war die Erscheinung am mindesten wahrnehmbar. *On the most obscured side of the horizon the phenomenon was least perceptible.*

D. THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE USED PREDICATIVELY, as rendered by *most*, before the Positive in English, is expressed by the Positive preceded by *höchst* (*in the highest degree*); or by any of the following adverbs: *sehr* (*very*), *äußert* (*extremely*), *ungemein* (*uncommonly*), *überaus* (*exceedingly*), *durchaus* (*absolutely, utterly*); as, Die Sache ist höchst fatal. *The thing is most untoward.* Die Rede war sehr schön. *The speech was most beautiful.*

E. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
ADJECTIVES.		
gut, good	besser	best
hoch, high	höher	höchst
nabe, near	näher	nächst
viel, much	mehr (mehrere, several,	meist, mehrst die meisten, most of the).
wenig, little	mindere, less,	mindest, least
but also	weniger	wenigst.
ADVERBS.		
balb, soon	eher	am ehesten
gern, readily, gladly	lieber (rather)	am liebsten
gut, wohl, well	besser	am besten

Note 1. Preceded by an article, &c., the Positive of *both* is *both* (*-er*), *-er*, *-er* (*-er*); &c.

Note 2. NO SOONER THAN is rendered by *kaum*, *als*; *as*; *kaum* hatte er den Strand erreicht, *als* er zusammenbrach. *No sooner* had he reached the shore, than he broke down.

Note 3. *Wenig* little (in quantity and degree) has both *weniger*, *less*, *wenigst* *least* and *mindere*, *less*, *mindest* *least*; the latter expressing 'degree.' Its use see p. 95, C.

Note 4. *Mehr* before the Positive (unless used with the adjectives and participles characterized p. 95, C), has the force of *rather* when it is to be used only in distinguishing two qualities having an element in common with each other; as, *Er ist mehr schlau als sähig*. *He is, cunning rather than able*, cunningness and ability having some features in common with each other. Becker's explanation of this so called 'compound Comparative', viz. that it is used when one quality is ascribed in a higher degree than another to the same person or thing, holds good only in so far as the above distinction may be inferred; else one might compare; '*He is more polite than little*.'

Note 5. *Most* used Adjectively; as, *most people*, *most cities*, requires the article in German; as, *die meisten Leute*, *die meisten Städte*.

Note 6. *MUCH* before a past participle is *sehr*; as, *much loved*, *sehr geliebt*; *much wanted*, *sehr gewünscht*; *much admired*, *sehr bewundert*.

Note 7. *MUCH* before the Comparative is always *viel*; as, *viel länger*, *much longer*; *viel weiter*, *much farther*; *viel besser*, *much better*.

F. PARTICLES OF COMPARISON.

1. *so so, as*, before the positive degree is used not only in negative assertions as in English: *Er ist nicht so reich als sein Bruder. He is not so rich as his brother.* — but also affirmatively: *Er ist so reich als sein Bruder. He is as rich as his brother.*

2. *AS* in the second member of comparison is *als*; as, *Wir waren nicht so glücklich als ihr. We were not so lucky as you. Es ist so lang als breit. It is as long as broad.*

3. *THAN* is rendered by *als*; as, *Er ist jünger als ich. He is younger than I.* Formerly *denn* and sometimes *weder (nor)* were used after a Comparative, as in Luther's translation of the Bible: *Denn es ist besser um sie handthieren weder um Silber; und ihr Einkommen ist besser denn Gold. For the merchandise of it is better than the merchandise of silver and the gain thereof than fine gold.*

Note 1. *als as, than*, in the second member of comparison is not preceded by a comma when placed immediately after the Comparative or after the word with regard to which the comparison is instituted; as, *Der Stahl ist härter als das Eisen. Steel is harder than iron. Sie zeigt mehr Fleiß als ihre Schwester. She shows more application than her sister. Wir werden von Niemanden so sehr gehaßt als von denen, die uns beleidigten. By nobody are we hated so much as by those who have offended us.* On the other hand: *Sie ist fleißiger gewesen, als ihre Schwester. She has been more diligent than her sister. Ich glaube, daß ich größer bin, als du. I believe that I am taller than you.*

The comma is likewise required before *als* when it introduces a complete grammatical clause; as, *Es ist nicht so weit, als ich dachte. It is not so far as I imagined. Sie sehen die Dinge schlimmer, als sie sind. You see things worse than they are.*

Note 2. If the sentence in which the comparison occurs contains a PAST PARTICIPLE OR AN INFINITIVE, or if it is a DEPENDENT CLAUSE (with the verb at the end), it requires to be completed before the clause with *als* is joined to it; as, *Ich habe es öfter gesehen, als du. I have seen it oftener than you. Sie können es so leicht finden, als ich. You can find it as easily as I. Zeigen Sie, daß Sie größmüthiger sind, als Ihre Feinde. Show that you are more generous than your enemies.*

Note 3. *als* is used for *but* after *Nichts nothing*, *Keiner, Niemand nobody*, *Wer sonst who else &c.*, when these expressions can be contracted with *als* into *nur only*, that is, when the idea of an ex-

CLUSION is to be conveyed; as, *Wer Anders als du hat die Macht? Who else but you has the power?* (Nur du, *only you* &c.) Sie beweisen Nichts als Ihren bösen Willen. *You prove nothing but your ill-will.*

4. wie LIKE, AS, is never used after the Comparative and must not be confounded with als as. Wie is used in expressing SIMILARITY or in comparing manner; as, muthig wie ein Löwe, *courageous as (like) a lion*; schwarz wie die Nacht, *black as night*. Er handelt wie sein Bruder. *He acts like his brother.* (See also such as, p. 77; p. 86, Note 3, and Conjunctions, Section XXIX).

5. Je —, je —; or Je —, desto —; THE —, THE —; as, Je älter, je weiser. *The older, the wiser.* Je höher man steigt, desto kälter wird die Luft. *The higher one ascends, the colder becomes the air.* Desto is often replaced by um so *the*, especially when the first member of comparison is understood; as, Sie sind schon hier? Um so besser! *You are already here? So much the better*; but also Je weiter nördlich, um so (or desto) größer die Kälte. *The farther north, the greater the cold.*

6. Immer always, before the Comparative is rendered as follows: Immer näher, *nearer and nearer*; (also Näher und näher); immer weiter or weiter und weiter, *farther and farther*; immer heftiger, *more and more vehemently*. In adjectives of more than two syllables, the use of immer is preferred to the repetition of the Comparative; as, Immer unzufriedener, *more and more dissatisfied*.

7. ALLER OF ALL, is sometimes rather superfluously prefixed to Superlatives; as, der aller kleinste Vogel, *the smallest bird of all*; ein allerliebsteß Ding, *a most delightful thing*; am allermeisten, *most of all*; am allerbesten, *best of all*. This form is not to be recommended.

8. zu too entirely agrees with the English; as, zu viel, *too much* (quantity); zu sehr, *too much* (degree); zu klein, *too small* (size); zu wenig, *too little* (quantity or degree); zu gut, *too well*.

G. Adjectives sometimes, as in English, acquire the force of Superlatives by composition: folgschwarz

jet-black, (as black as coal), rabenschwarz as black as a raven; pechfinster pitch-dark; stockblind stoneblind; erzdumm shockingly stupid, &c.

SECTION XIV. THE NUMERALS.

CARDINAL NUMBERS. 1 *Ein* *one, one thing*, (used abstractly). When preceding the noun, *ein*, *eine*, *ein* like the indefinite article but distinguished in print or spelt with a capital; as, *Ein Mann, one man; Ein* *Mannes, of one man; eine Person, one person; einer Person, of one person; nur ein Wort, only one word; mit Einem Worte, with one word.* When used substantively, *Ein* takes in the Nom. masc. *er*, and Nom. and Acc. neut. *es*; as, *Wünschen Sie einen Stod? Hier ist einer. Do you wish a cane? Here is one. Wenn Sie ein Pferd brauchen, will ich Ihnen eines leihen. If you require a horse, I will lend you one.*

When preceded by the definite article, it is treated like the adjective; (see Table, p. 66) as, *des Einen, der Einen of the one; von dem Einen zum Andern, from the one to the other.* Used as the unit in compound figures it remains undeclined; as, *für einundzwanzig Thaler, for one and twenty dollars; ein Mann von einundsechzig Jahren, a man of sixty one; — likewise in Einhundert one hundred, Eintausend one thousand, Eine Million one million; as distinguished from ein Hundert a hundred, ein Tausend a thousand, eine Million a million, in which it is the article and declined.*

The plural form *die Einen* is used in opposition to *die Andern*; as, *Die Einen beteten, die Andern jammerten. One part of the people was saying prayers, the other was lamenting.*

2 *zwei* (formerly masc. *zween*, fem. *zwo*, neut. *zwei*).

3 *drei*. — *Zwei* and *drei* are not declined when preceded by the definite article; as, *der zwei Freunde, of the two friends; den drei Männern, to the three men.* Without the article, *zwei* and *drei* take *er* in the geni-

tive; as, die Aussage zweier Zeugen, *the evidence of two witnesses*; in Gesellschaft dreier Freunde, *in company of three friends*. The dative in *en* occurs only quaintly in expressions like: vor zweien Zeugen, (more commonly vor zwei), *in the presence of two witnesses*; nach dreien Tagen aufgefahen, *risen after three days*.

Cardinal numerals chiefly those of *ONE* syllable, when used as substantives, take *e* in the Nom., Gen., and Acc. and *en* in the Dat., especially when preceded by the definite article; as, Man wählte unter Dreien. *The election was made from among three*. Keines der Viere steht in dem Thiere. *None of the four (elementary spirits) is in the beast*. (Goethe's 'Faust'). Das Direktorium der Fünfe. *The government of the five directors (in France 1795)*; mit Sechsen fahren, *to drive in a coach and six*; zu Achten, *by eights, eight and eight*; zu Hunderten, *in hundreds*.

Note 1. The English expression *TWO OR THREE* must not be rendered by *zwei oder drei* which means *two*, or *at the most three*, but by *einige a few, mehrere several*, or more commonly by *ein Paar (a pair)*; as, ein Paar Freunde, *two or three friends*; ein Paar Thaler, *two or three thalers*. Ein Paar besides means *a pair* or *a couple* with two objects usually connected in counting; as, ein glückliches Paar, *a happy couple*; drei Paar Strümpfe, *three pairs of stockings*; zwei Paar Schuhe, *two pairs of shoes*.

Note 2. The adjective *beide both, the two*, is used not to designate *two* of a larger number, but to comprise two mentioned objects under one idea as having something in common; as, Beide Freunde waren reich. *Both the friends were rich*. Die beiden Städte besitzen Privilegien. *The two cities possess privileges*. Ich habe beide Augen verloren. *I have lost both my eyes*. Only as a neuter noun *Beides* has the force of *both — and —*; Uns ist gegeben zu erkennen Beides, das Gute und das Böse. *To us it is given to know both the good and the evil*.

Only *Ein, Eine, Ein* affects the adjective like the indefinite article; (see Table, p. 66) as, Ein treuer Freund, *one true friend*; Einer treuen Freundin, *of one true (fem.) friend*; Ein treues Herz, *one true heart*; but when this numeral is preceded by the definite article, it becomes an adjective itself; as, der eine treue Freund, *the one true friend*; das eine treue Herz, *the one true heart*. (des einen, *of the one*; dem einen, *der*

einen, to the one &c.). No other Cardinal has pronominal force, not even *zwei* and *drei*, as sometimes erroneously stated, and hence the adjective following these numerals is dealt with independently of them. (See Section IX).

The remaining cardinal numerals, have no regular genitive and to express this case, unless that is done by a preceding article or pronoun, the preposition *von* is used; as, *Die Hälfte von fünf ist zwei und ein halb. The half of five is two and a half. Der dritte Theil von sechs ist zwei. The third part of six is two. Im Besitze von fünfhundert Thalern (von governing the dative), in the possession of five hundred thalers.*

4 vier, 5 fünf, 6 sechs, 7 sieben, 8 acht, 9 neun, 10 zehn, 11 elf or *elf*, 12 zwölf, 13 dreizehn, 14 vierzehn, 15 fünfzehn, 16 sechzehn, 17 siebzehn, 18 achtzehn, 19 neunzehn, 20 zwanzig.

From 21 to 99 the units are expressed first: 21 ein und zwanzig, 22 zwei und zwanzig, &c.; 30 dreißig, 40 vierzig, 50 funfzig, 60 sechzig, 70 siebzig, 80 achtzig, 90 neunzig, 100 (ein) hundert, 101 (ein-) hundert (und) ein, 102 einhundert (und) zwei, 121 einhundert ein und zwanzig, 1000 (ein-) tausend, a million, eine Million. *Kein, keine, fein, not one, none, no*; pronominally, *keiner, keine, keines*. 1862 Eintausend achthundert zwei und sechzig or Achtzehnhundert zwei und sechzig *eighteen sixty-two*.

Note 3. The names of the figures are of the feminine gender and take *en* in the plural; as, *Die Eins hier ist nicht deutlich. The "one" here is not distinct. Du mußt die Dreien besser schreiben. You must write the threes better. Die Neunen sehen gut aus. The nines look well.*

Note 4. With the suffix *er*, numerals are used as substantives in certain technical terms; as, ein *Vierzehner*, or more frequently *Vierzehrender*, a stag of fourteen antlers; ein *Dreier* (also *Dreißling*), ein *Sechser* (*Sechßling*), certain small coins; guter *Gilfer*, good wine of the vintage of 1811; ein *rüstiger Sechziger*, a vigorous man of sixty years of age (sexagenarian). Adjectively used, this form occurs before *Jahren*; as, in den *dreißiger Jahren*, in one of the years between 1830 and 1840. As a noun it occurs, in den *Dreißigern*, *Vierzigern*, meaning *between thirty and forty, between forty and fifty, &c., years of age*. Thus, in den *ersten Zwanzigern* means, *about two, three, or four-and-twenty years of age*.

THE ORDINAL NUMBERS from *second* to *nineteenth* are formed by the addition of *te*, from *twentieth* upwards by the addition of *ste* to the cardinal numbers; and this rule is observed in all Compounds. The Ordinals are treated entirely as adjectives and occur both WITHOUT and WITH the definite and indefinite articles.

Der, die, das erste *the first* is the Superlative of the adverb *the ere*, and hence preserves the long vowel.

The second, der, die, das zweite (*andere*); the third, der, die, das dritte; the fourth, der, &c., vierte; the nineteenth, der, &c., neunzehnte; the twentieth, der, &c., zwanzigste; the thirtieth, der dreißigste; the hundredth, der hundertste; the hundred and fifth, der hundert und fünfte; the hundred and twenty-first, der einhundert ein und zwanzigste; the thousandth, der tausendste.

Der dritte Mai, *the third of May*; adverbially: den dritten Mai or am dritten Mai, (*on*) *the third of May*; den fünfundzwanzigsten Juli 1861, (*on*) *the twenty-fifth of July 1861*. It will be seen that the name of the month is not declined in stating the date.

Note 1. The German language possesses an ADJECTIVE-INTERROGATIVE, der, die, das wievielte (Lat. *quotus*), from *wie viele* how many, by which the ordinal number is elicited; as, der wievielte Schuß war dies? *What (the how manyth) shot was this?* Es war der zehnte. *It was the tenth.* In asking the date, with the adverbs gestern, heute, morgen &c. or the name of the weekday the words '*day of the month*' are not rendered; as, der wievielte war Dienstag? — gestern? *What day of the month was Tuesday? — yesterday?* Der Dritte, *The third.* Den wieviesten haben wir heute? — morgen? *What day of the month have we to-day? — to-morrow?* Den fünften, den sechsten. *The fifth, the sixth.*

Note 2. With the name of sovereigns the Ordinal is used as in English, but assumes the case of the preceding name; as, Katharina die Zweite (Katharina II); Catherine II; Heinrichs des Vierten, (Heinrichs IV) of Henry IV; Wilhelm dem Ersten, to Wilhelm I.

DISTINCTIVE NUMERALS. Erstens, in the first place; zweitens, secondly; drittens, thirdly; neunzehntens, in the nineteenth place; zwanzigstens, in the twentieth place; letzens, lastly.

FRACTIONS. A half, or half a, ein halber, eine halbe, ein halbes, or ein halb; a third part, ein drittel; a fourth, ein viertel; a quarter, ein Viertel; a fifth, ein fünftel; a twentieth, ein zwanzigstel; (Compounds of the numeral and Theil *part*). A millionth part, ein Milliontheil. Die halbe Welt, half the world; mein halbes Leben, half of my life; but halb London, half London; halb Europa, half Europe.

Instead of the compound fractions, ein ein halb, $1\frac{1}{2}$; zwei ein halb, $2\frac{1}{2}$; drei ein halb, $3\frac{1}{2}$ &c. in which halb is declined, there occur the expressions anderthalb, i. e. one whole and the other half ($1\frac{1}{2}$); drittelhalb i. e. two whole and the third but a half ($2\frac{1}{2}$); viertelhalb, $3\frac{1}{2}$, &c., in which halb is not declined.

Note 1. The expressions *a twelvemonth* and *a sixmonth* are rendered by ein Jahr, *a year* and by ein halbes Jahr, *half a year*; likewise ein Vierteljahr, *three months*; drei Vierteljahre, *nine months*.

Note 2. In dividing the hours of the day, the expressions ein Viertel *a quarter*, halb *half*, and drei Viertel (*three quarters*), a *quarter to*, are employed in the following manner:—The minute-hand is assumed as starting from the full hour (12), and moving onwards to the same; as, ein Viertel auf eins, *one quarter towards one*, i. e., a quarter past twelve, (also, ein Viertel nach zwölf); halb eins, (Scottish, *half one*), *half past twelve*; drei Viertel auf eins, the hand has completed three quarters of its course towards one, i. e., *a quarter to one*; zehn Minuten bis or vor eins, *ten minutes to one*; zwanzig Minuten nach eins, *twenty minutes past one*.

DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS. Je zwei, each two; je drei, each three, every three; je vier, each four, every four; zu zweien, by twos, by couples; zu dreien, three by threes; (zu hundertem,) in hundreds.

MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERALS. Zweifach and zweifältig, twofold; dreifach and dreifältig, threefold; einfach, simple, single; (einfältig, simple, artless); hundertfältig, hundredfold, vielfältig, manyfold.

VARIATIVE NUMERALS. Einerlei, all of one kind, the same; zweierlei, of two different kinds; zwanzigerlei, of twenty different sorts; mancherlei, various; vielerlei, of many sorts.

REITERATIVE NUMERALS. *Einmal* one time, once; *zweimal* two times, twice; *dreimal* three times, thrice; *viermal* four times, &c.; *vielmals* many times; (*niemals* never). *Dreimal drei ist neun.* ($3 \times 3 = 9$). *Three times three are nine.* The adverb *einmal* *once*, *some day*, *sometime*, *only*, has the accent on *mal*, by which it is colloquially replaced; as, *Stehen Sie (ein) mal still! Stand still, please!*

THE INDEFINITE NUMERALS

have been noticed in the following places: *Alle*, pp. 64, 10—66, 5—67, Note 2 & 3—76, 77, Notes—83, 6. — *andere*, pp. 64, 10—66, 9—78, 9—102. — *einige* (not to be confounded with the adjective *einig* *united*, *agreed*, *one*) and *etliche*, pp. 64, 10—66, 9—78. — *jeder*, pp. 66, 5—70—76, 5. — *jedlicher* and *jedweder* p. 70. — *fein*, *feiner*, pp. 60, *d*—66—80, *e*—81, *f*. — *mancher*, pp. 64, 10—66, 6 and 9—77, 6. — *mehrere*, pp. 64, 10—66, 9—95, E. — *Die meisten*, p. 95, E. — *viele*, pp. 64, 10—66, 9—78, 9—79—95, E—96, Note 7. — *welche*, pp. 65 (64, 10)—66, 9—78, 8. — *wenige*, pp. 64, 10—66, 9—78—96, Note 3.

SECTION XV. — NOUNS. — GENDER.

LEADING REMARKS. 1. Every German noun is either of the masculine, feminine or neuter gender; as, *Baum* masc. *tree*, *Blume* fem. *flower*, *Kraut* neut. *herb*. A few nouns have two genders, each, however, with a different meaning; as, *Reis* masc. *rice*, *Reis* neut. *spring* (See p. 114). The grammatical gender depends only in some cases on the NATURAL GENDER, *i. e.* on the gender of the sex; as, *Vater* m. *father*, *Mutter* f. *mother*; (but *Mensch* m. *human being*, *Waise* f. *orphan*, *Weib* n. *woman*. See p. 112, 1). On the other hand the natural gender is extended to a vast number of abstract nouns, and of common nouns denoting inanimate things, which thereby receive a peculiar significancy apart from their meaning; as, *Geist* m. *spirit*, *Sprache* f. *language*,

Leben n. *life*; *Kopf* m. *head*, *Brust* f. *breast*, *Herz* n. *heart*.

Not that this feature is peculiar to the German language which shares it with the most ancient languages of the East, with the classical Greek and Latin, as well as with all modern languages, except the English, the latter having preserved but few traces of that imaginative life of which the free use of the genders is the expression.*

2. The form and meaning of a German noun only afford a SURE indication of its gender in the cases stated in the rules pp. 109—112. In other cases the dictionary must be consulted.

Complete lists of the genders are of little practical value, as the numerous exceptions defy the memory which may be more profitably concentrated upon the lists connected with the declension of nouns, these to a great extent serving the same object.

3. The declension of the article (p. 66) shows that the Nom. Sing. masc. and the Gen. and Dat. Sing. fem. are alike (*der*), that the Nom. and Acc. Sing. fem. are the same as the Nom. and Acc. Plur. of any gender (*die*), and that the Gen. *der* and the Dat. *den* of the Plur. of any gender cannot by themselves be distinguished from the same forms in the Sing. This suffices to show how anxiously the pupil should endeavour to ascertain and to fix in his memory the gender of each noun with which he has to deal, as reliance on the article alone would lead to utter confusion.

4. At the same time the above facts show that the gender of the German nouns very materially tends to keep the forms of declension within moderate limits,

* There can be no doubt that the English language has by the present arrangement of its genders obtained certain advantages with regard to briefness and ready use, in as far as, in clearing away every admixture of the imaginative, it has, as it were, laid bare every idea in its practical and definite reality. But it is at least questionable whether such advantages outweigh the loss, evidently caused by the conflict between its Anglo-Saxon and Norman-French elements, whilst it will appear from the above remarks, that the German language can never, as is occasionally insinuated, follow its example in this respect.

various cases, identical in form, being clearly distinguished by the gender to which the nouns belong; as, *der Ritter*, Nom. Sing. masc., *the knight*; *der Sitter*, Gen. or Dat. Sing. fem., *of* or *(to) the guitar*; *der Sitter*, Gen. Plur. neut., *of the railings*; — *den Bogen*, Acc. Sing. masc., *the arch*; *den Bogen*, Dat. Plur. fem., *(to) the waves*.

5. Of far greater importance, however, is the advantage which the GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURE of the German language derives from the distribution of the genders. When it is considered that the English pronouns *it*, *this*, *that*, *which*, *who*, can be properly used only in reference to the last noun preceding them, whilst the threefold form of the pronouns in German admits of an extension of their reference, according to the gender, to one noun out of several of different genders, it will be conceived how vastly the genders contribute to that free play and precision of construction which distinguish the German language.

Those prolonged periods, indeed, and those involutions of clauses so trying to the patience of the English reader, can by no means be always attributed to a want of taste in the German writers: for what would appear an unwieldy conglomeration in a language without genders, is by their agency rendered very generally a comprehensive and well organized tissue, exhibiting definite and lucid relations or at all events relieved of much of its seeming obscurity and unshapeliness.

6. Lastly, the extension of the natural gender to abstract nouns and inanimate objects, constitutes an essential element in German POETRY and in all compositions aspiring to beauty. It must not be confounded with the personifying and allegorizing application of gender to abstract ideas in English poetry, as in the case of *time*, *death*, *nature*, *hope*, but probably finds a complete analogy only in the feminine gender of the English word *ship*, and in the use of the same gender by the mechanic in speaking of engines, implements &c., the working of which supports and gratifies him, whilst they obey his will. It rather unconsciously, but not the less powerfully awakens ideal associations of thought

and feeling in the mind of the reader or listener, masculine nouns coming in more or less with a touch of the strong, active, aggressive &c., whilst the feminine nouns are calculated to suggest the mild and gentle, latent and yielding, and the neuter represents the GENERAL AND WHOLE, as may be illustrated by a comparison of the genders of the following nouns:

NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
Leben, life:	Trieb, the impulse.	Ruhe, rest.
Bewußtsein, con-	Geist, the spirit.	Seele, the soul.
sciousness.	Wille, the will.	Neigung, inclination.
Gemüth, mind, dis-	Muth, courage.	Furcht, fear.
position.		
Gefühl, feeling.	Haß, hatred.	Liebe, love.
Licht, light.	Strahl, beam, ray.	Helle, brightness.
	Tag, day.	Nacht, night.
Feuer, fire.	Funke, spark.	Gluth, the glow, heat.
	Blitz, flash, lightning.	Flamme, flame.
Land, land.	Berg, mountain.	Ebene, plain.
Feld, field.	Acker, ploughed field.	Wiese, meadow.
Wasser, water.	Strom, current.	Fluth, flood.
Glied, member of the	Fuß (πους, pes, m.),	Hand (χείρ, manus,
body.	foot. Arm, arm.	f.) hand.
	Kopf, head.	Brust, chest, breast.
Thier, animal.	Löwe, lion.	Gazelle, gazelle.
	Stier, bull.	Maus, mouse.
Gewächs, vegetable.	Adler, eagle.	Taube, dove.
	Stamm, stem.	Wurzel, root.

If it is farther considered that besides the above distinctions, the gender is expressive of many other relations of imagination; for inst. *der Wille* *will*, *die That* *the deed*; *der Entschluß* *the resolve*, *die Ausführung* *the execution*; *der Wunsch* *the wish*, *die Hoffnung* *the hope*; *der Fels* *the rock*, *die Quelle* *the fountain*, *spring*; *der Stamm* *the trunk*, *die Wurzel* *the root*, *die Ranke* *the tendril*, *creeper*; *der Sturm* *the tempest*, *die Stille* *the calm*; — and farther that synonyms are often distinguished by the gender according to the slightest shade of meaning, it will be conceived what resources the system of genders affords to the poet and the orator and

how it imparts to his compositions a subtle charm of life and motion in addition to the poetical combination which he introduces to the mind. (Comp. *J. Grimm*, *Deutsche Grammatik*, Vol. III., p. 346).*

The following passage, translated from *Hebel's* 'Allemanische Gedichte', may serve as a specimen of this poetical use of the gender. Although a production of this century, it reflects in a truly wonderful manner the naiveté of the primitive sentiment to which the German language owes the application of the natural gender to inanimate objects.

Derweil kämmt sich die Sonne und sauber gekämmt und gewaschen
Kömmt mit dem Stridzeug sie hervor aus den Bergen gegangen,
Wandelt ihren Weg hoch an der himmlischen Landstrag';
Strickt, und sieht herab; gleichwie eine freundliche Mutter
Nach den Kindern sieht. Sie lacht dem Keimchen entgegen,
Und das thut ihm so wohl bis tief an die Wurzeln herunter:
Solche schöne Frau, und doch so gütig und freundlich!
Aber was strickt sie denn nur? Gewöl aus himmlischen Düften. —
Da! schon tröpfelt's, ein Sprügerchen kömmt, drauf regnet es tüchtig;
Keimchen trinkt sich satt.

In the meanwhile the sun** combs herself, and tidily washed and combed,

Comes walking forth from the mountains with her knitting,
And takes her walk aloft on the heavenly highway;
She is knitting and looks down, like a kindly mother
Looking after her children. She smiles upon the little sprout,
And that does it ever so much good down to its very roots:
Such a beautiful lady, and yet so generous and kind!
But what is she knitting, I wonder? Why, clouds of heavenly vapours.
There comes already a sprinkling and then it rains smartly;
My little sprout drinks its fill.

The following rules will aid the pupil in remembering the gender of German nouns.

COMPOUND NOUNS, of course, have the gender of their LAST component; as, *der Birnbaum* *the pear-*

* *Becker*, indeed, (*Ausführl. Gramm.* Part. I, § 120) refers the gender of nouns exclusively to their etymological formation. This, however, cannot affect the use which the imaginative genius of the people would make of the genders as existing, whilst it would be easy to prove that *B.* in pointing to facts, not sufficiently appreciated, was led to a onesidedness, characteristic of the grammarian rather than of the poet.

** The masculine gender of the English word *sun* is a foreign importation. The Anglo-Saxon '*sunne*' is feminine; '*mona*' the moon being masculine as in all Teutonic dialects.

tree, die Bruderstochter *the niece*, das Vaterhaus *the home*.

The only exceptions are der Mittwoch *Wednesday* (*middle of the week* — Woche fem.), and the following feminine Compounds with der Muth *spirit*; die Anmuth *grace*, Demuth *humility*, Großmuth *magnanimity*, Langmuth *longsuffering*, Sanftmuth *meekness*, Schwerimuth *melancholy*, Wehmuth *mild sadness*, (die Armuth *poverty* is not a Compound, but a Derivative —) and lastly, die Heirath *marriage* with der Rath *council*.

A. MASCULINE are: The Derivatives formed with the suffixes stated p. 34, 1, and Derivatives chiefly denoting individual actions formed of verbs without an addition to the stem, and without prefixing the syllable *Ge*, (see C. Neuter); as, der Beginn *the beginning*, from beginnen *to begin*; der Ertrag *the produce*, from ertragen *to bear, to yield*; der Fall *the fall*, from fallen *to fall*; der Sprung *the spring*, from springen (Past Part. gesprungen) *to spring*; der Schuß *the shot*, from schießen (Past Part. geschossen) *to shoot*; der Verstand *the understanding*, from verstehen (Imp. verstand) *to understand*; der Entwurf *the scheme, sketch*, from entwerfen (Past. Part. entworfen) *to scheme, to sketch*. FEMININE is die That *the deed*, from thun (Imp. that) *to do*. The NEUTER exceptions are, das Bad *the bath*; das Band *the tie*; das Bünd *the bunch*, from binden *to bind*; das Grab *the grave*, from graben *to dig*; das Leid *the sorrow*, from leiden *to suffer*; das Lob *the praise*, from loben *to praise*; das Maas *the measure*, from messen *to measure*; das Spiel *the game, play*, from spielen *to play*; das Theil *the portion, share*, from theilen *to divide*; — das Begehrt *the desire*, from begehren *to desire*; das Besteck *the set of instruments*, and das Versteck *the hiding place*, from stecken *to put*; das Verbot *the prohibition*, from verbieten *to forbid*; das Verdeck *the deck*, from decken *to cover*; das Verdienst *the merit*, from verdienen *to deserve*; das Verhör *the trial*, from hören *to hear*; das Verließ *the dungeon*, probably from lassen (Imp. ließ) *to leave*.

Compounds with monosyllabic forms of verbs are very numerous and the rules given with regard to these are of importance for the advanced pupil.

MASCULINE are farther: Seasons, (except *das Jahr the year*, and *die Nacht the night*), months, (never used without the article), days, mountains, stones, winds, the non-European rivers, (except those of the Russian empire, in a); the rivers of Great Britain, (except *die Themse, Isis, Ouse, and Severn*); the rivers of the Peninsula, those of Italy in o, those of France not ending in e, (only *Aube* and *Judre* are masculine), and the following German rivers: *der Bober, Elbing, Inn, Kocher, Lech, Main, Neckar, Regal, Regen* and *Rhein*. The names of some mountains have the gender of the last component, *viz.* *die Jungfrau, die Schneefoppe*, (also *die Furka*) *das Schredhorn, das Wetterhorn*; (likewise, *das große Rad*).

B. FEMININE are: The Derivatives formed with the suffixes stated p. 34, 2, and those formed with the stems of verbs by the addition of a t; as, *die Bucht the creek, bay, bight*, from *biegen to bend*; *die Fahrt the journey*, from *fahren to fare*, (*Wohlfahrt welfare*); *die Gift the dowry*, from *geben to give*, (but *das Gift the poison*); *die Kunst art*, from *können can*; *die Macht might, power*, from *mögen may*; *die Vernunft reason*, from *vernehmen to perceive*, *die Zucht the discipline, breed*, from *ziehen to draw, to bring up*; — also Derivatives in e formed of adjectives and denoting an abstract quality; as, *die Ferne the distance*, from *fern far*; *die Fremde foreign land*, from *fremd foreign, alien*; *die Höhe the height*, from *hoch high*; *die Nähe the vicinity, nearness, presence*, from *nahe* near; sometimes highly poetical; as, *die Reine (Goethe) the pureness*, *die Schöne beauteousness*, *die Trübe (Goethe) the dimness*.

FEMININE are farther: All rivers not mentioned above as masculine, most flowers, fruits (except *der Apfel, der Pfirsich*), trees, if not used in composition with *=baum* (m.); as, *die Eiche the oak-tree*, *die Linde the*

lime-tree (but, *der Eichbaum*). Exceptions are *der Ahorn the maple-tree*, *der Lorbeer the laurel*.

C. NEUTER are: The Derivatives formed with the suffixes stated p. 35, 3 (chiefly Diminutives);—all infinitives used as nouns and rendered by participles in English; as, *das Kommen und Gehen, the coming and going*; *im Leben und Sterben, in living and dying*, (*Leben und Tod, life and death*); *das Wiedersehen the meeting again*; — further those Derivatives formed with the prefix *Ge* having a collective meaning; as, *das Gebirge the range of mountains*, from *der Berg the mountain*; *das Gewölk accumulated clouds*, from *die Wolke the cloud*; *das Gewässer the flood*, from *das Wasser the water*; *das Gerede the talk, rumour*, from *reden to talk*; *das Gewissen the conscience*, from *wissen to know*; — and Derivatives formed by the prefix *Ge* from stems of verbs; as, *das Gebet the prayer*, from *beten to pray*; *das Gedicht the poem*, from *dichten to write poetry*; *das Gericht the judgment*, from *richten to judge*; *das Gesäß the seat*, from *sitzen to sit*; *das Gesicht sight*, from *sehen to see*. The exceptions of this class are, a. MASCULINE, *der Gebrauch the use, custom*, from *brauchen to use*; *der Gedanke the thought*, from *denken to think*; *der Gehalt the value, capacity*, from *halten to hold, to contain*, (but *das Gehalt the salary*); *der Gemahl the consort*, (*das Gemahl, quaint, the spouse*); *der Genoss the associate* and *der Genuß the enjoyment*, from *genießen to enjoy*; *der Geruch the odour*, from *riechen to smell*; *der Geschmack the taste*, from *schmecken to taste*; *der Gefell and der Gefährte the companion*; *der Gestank the stench*, from *stinken to stink*; *der Gewinn and der Gewinnst the earning, gain*, from *gewinnen to gain*; b. FEMININE, *die Gebühr the due*, from *gebühren to be due*; *die Geburt the birth*, from *gebären to give birth*; *die Geduld the patience*, from *dulden to suffer*; *die Gefahr the peril*, from *fahren to fare, (perire)*; *die Gestalt the figure, stature*, from *stellen to place*; *die Gewähr guaranty*, from *gewähren to grant*; *die Gewalt power, force*, from *walten to prevail*.

NEUTER are likewise, nouns in *e* and *es* derived from adjectives and not denoting abstract qualities but things possessing such qualities; as, *das Große the great, all that is great, (die Größe greatness, magnitude); das Alte the old, Etwas Altes, something old; das Schöne the beautiful, all that is beautiful, viel Schönes much that is beautiful.*

Denn wo das Spröde mit dem Zarten,
Wo Starkes sich und Milde's paarten,
Da giebt es einen guten Klang. (Schiller).
*For where the brittle and the tender,
Where the strong and mild unite,
There will be a good tone.*

Other parts of speech and the letters of the Alphabet are neuter when used substantively with an abstract meaning; as, (*das*) Recht und (*das*) Unrecht, *right and wrong*; *das Mein und Dein, mine and thine*; *das große A, the capital A*. Ich bin *das A* und *das O*. *I am the Alpha and Omega*. Der Mann, der *das Wenn* und *das Aber* erdacht, hat sicher aus Häckerling Gold schon gemacht. (*Bürger*). *The man who invented the 'if' and the 'but', surely made gold of chopped straw.*

NEUTER are farther: Countries and towns, except *der Haag the Hague*. Feminine, however, are the names of countries ending in *au, ei, ie* and *z*, which are always used with the article, as also *die Krim the Crimea*, *die Levante*, *die Provence* and *die Ufrâne*, whilst *der Peloponnes* and the Compounds of *Gau (district)*; as, *der Aargau Argau*, *der Breisgau* are masculine. NEUTER are metals, except *der Stahl steel*, *der Tombak pinchbeck*. *Kobalt, Nickel, Wismuth* and *Zink* are masculine in common language, but remain neuter in the language of science.

Note 1. *Der Mensch* the human being, mankind, *homo* (contemptuously, *the fellow, individual*), *die Person* the person, *der Mann* the male (sex), *das Weib* the female (sex), *die Eltern* (Pl.) the parents, *das Kind* the child, *der Bruder* the brother, *die Schwester* the sister, *die Geschwister* (Pl.) the family (brothers and sisters), *die Gebrüder* (Pl.) bro-

thers, *der* or *die* Verwandte the male or female relative, *die* Waise the orphan, *der* Knabe the boy, *der* Jüngling the youth, *das* Mädchen the girl, *die* Jungfrau the virgin, maiden, *das* Frauenzimmer the female person, *das* Weib woman (in a noble sense), but also *das* alte Weib the old woman, *das* Mannweib virago, *die* Frau the married woman, *mein* Mann my husband, *meine* Frau (sometimes *mein* Weib) my wife, *der* Herr the gentleman, *die* Dame the lady, (these terms cannot be used to indicate character in society, as in the English, '*He is a Gentleman*', '*she is a Lady*' &c., instead of which *ein* Mann, and *eine* Frau von Erziehung (of education); or *ein* gebildeter Mann, *eine* gebildete Frau, *ein* gebildetes Mädchen are in use), *der* junge Herr master, *das* Fräulein the young lady; Hr. W. Mr W., Frau or Madame W. Mrs W., Fräulein W. Miss W.

Note 2. With station and rank: *der* Rath the councillor, *die* Rätbin the councillor's wife, *der* Graf the count, *die* Gräfin the countess, (the vowel being modified only in nouns of German origin), therefore, *der* Baron the baron, *die* Baronin the baroness, *der* General the general, *die* Generalin the general's wife. As in French: *Monsieur le Duc*, *Madame la Duchesse*, the Germans, when speaking ceremoniously, place Herr and Frau or Madame before the title; thus also, *Ihr* Herr Vater, *Ihre* Frau Mutter, *Ihr* Fräulein Schwester your father, your mother, your sister, like the French, *Monsieur votre père*, &c., for which the English employ in formal language the family-name; as, *May I see Mr W?* (meaning *your husband, father &c.*); German: Darf ich *Ihren* Herrn Gemahl, *Ihren* Herrn Vater &c. sehen?

Note 3. The names of species of animals are generally masculine; as, *der* Löwe the lion, *der* Hund the dog, whilst the sexes are distinguished by *das* Männchen the male, and *das* Weibchen, the female; the latter also by the suffix *in*, with the vowel modified; *der* Hase the hare, *die* Häsfin the female hare; *der* Löwe the lion, *die* Löwin the lioness. Some names of species are feminine; as, *die* Ziege the goat, and then the male is expressed by a different word; *der* Bock the he-goat, *die* Katze the cat, *der* Kater the he-cat; and many, especially the smaller species of birds and fishes are feminine; *die* Lerche the lark, *das* Lerchenbühnchen the male lark, *die* Taube the pigeon, *der* Tauber or Länberich the male pigeon, *die* Gans the goose, *der* Gänserich the gander. The adjectives *der*, *das* männliche the male and *die*, *das* weibliche the female, are also used for distinguishing the sex. Some species of animals are expressed by a neuter common name; as, *das* Eichhorn the squirrel, *das* Kamel the camel, among which the following express the sexes by a different name: *das* Huhn the fowl, *der* Hahn the cock, *die* Henne or *das* Huhn the hen, *das* Küchlein the chicken; *das* Rind neat-cattle, *der* Stier or Bull the bull, *der* Ochse the ox, *die* Kuh the cow, *das* Kalb the calf; *das* Pferd or Ross the horse, *der* Hengst the stallion, *die* Stute or Mähre the mare, *das* Füllen the colt; *das* Schaf the sheep, *der* Bock the ram, *das* Lamm the lamb. The terms Stier, Kuh, Kalb, Hengst, Stute, Füllen, Bock are also applied to the sex and offspring of similar species; as, *der* Zebrahengst, *die* Zebraßute, *das* Felsfüllen; *der* Hirsch the

stag, deer, die Hirschkuh the hind, das Reh the roe, der Rehkeß the roe-buck, die Rehziege the female roe, das Rehkalb the young roe; das Elefantentalb; das Schwein the swine, der Eber the boar, die Sau the sow, das Ferkel the young pig.

NOUNS HAVING DIFFERENT MEANINGS WITH DIFFERENT GENDERS.

Band,	der, volume.	das, ribbon, tie. (die Bande, the gang).
Bauer,	der, peasant.	das, bird's cage.
Buckel,	der, hump.	die, boss.
Bund,	der, federation, bond.	das, bundle.
Chor,	der, chorus.	das, choir.
Erbe,	der, heir.	das, inheritance.
Erkenntniß,	die, knowledge.	das, judicial sentence.
Flur,	der, lobby.	die, rural plain.
Gehalt,	der, value, pith, contents.	das, salary.
Geißel,	der, hostage.	die, scourge.
Gift,	die, dowry.	das, poison.
Harz,	der, the Harz, mountains.	das, resin.
Heide,	der, heathen, pa- gan.	die, heath, moor.
Hut,	der, hat.	die, heed, protection.
Kiefer,	der, jaw.	die, pine.
Kunde,	der, customer.	die, intelligence.
Leiter,	der, leader, con- ductor.	die, ladder.
Lohn,	der, reward.	das, wages.
Mandel,	die, almond.	das, number of 15.
Mangel,	der, want.	die, mangle.
Mark, die	{ boundary, mar- graviate; merk 8 ounces, of gold or silver.	das, marrow.
Marſch,	der, march.	die, cultivated marsh.

Mast, der, the mast of a vessel.	die, fattening of cattle, &c.
Mensch, der, man, mankind.	das, wench.
Messer, der, meter, measurer.	das, knife.
Onkel, der, uncle.	die, awn.
Reis, der, rice.	das, twig.
Schild, der, shield.	das, signboard.
Schwulst, der, bombast.	die, swelling, tumour.
See, der, lake.	die, sea.
Sprosse, der, shoot, sprout, scion.	die, step of a ladder.
Steuer, die, tax.	das, helm.
Stift, der, tack, stile (<i>stilus</i>).	das, foundation, cathedral.
Theil, der, part.	das, share.
Thor, der, fool.	das, gate.
Verdienst, der, profit, earning.	das, merit.
Wehr, die, defence, militia.	das, wear, sluice.
Weib(e), der, kite, vulture.	die, consecration.

SECTION XVI. NOUNS. — DECLENSION.

The Table, p. 128, must throughout be kept in view.

LEADING REMARKS. 1. The declension of nouns consists in **ADDING TO THE NOMINATIVE, that is to the full form, the terminations of case, viz. THE CONSONANTS n and s.***

* In the Gothic and in the old High-German, terminations and forms of declension of nouns were very numerous, because the language had to rely on these chiefly in expressing the relations of case, the use of the Demonstrative as an article being very limited. But in the middle High-German (from the beginning of the 13th century) the use of the article became quite general, and the language, as if become aware of the advantage to be derived from the combination of articles or pronouns with the substantive, almost at once reduced the terminations of the noun to their present limits, the consonant-terminations *n, ns, v, j*, being dropped altogether, and the termination-*vowels a, ai, o, es, u, i* being reduced to the present soft *e*, which the author considers from what he conceives to be the law of euphony and of grammatical economy in the present High-German, should no lon-

2. Nothing but these consonants is added to all nouns containing in the LAST SYLLABLE of the nominative a soft *e*, or formed with the suffix *lein*. (*n* is not added to nouns ending in *en* or *lein*).

NOMINATIVE.

Segel sail.
 Regen rain.
 Anker anchor.
 Rose rose.
 Männchen manikin.
 Blümlein floweret.

CASES OF DECLENSION.

Segel-*s*, Segel-*n*.
 Regen-*s*.
 Anker-*s*, Anker-*n*.
 Rose-*n*.
 Männchen-*s*.
 Blümlein-*s*.

The only exceptions from this rule are the few nouns in *end*, to which an *e* must be added for the sake of euphony, particularly before the termination *n*; viz. *Gegend district*, *Gegenden districts*; *Tugend virtue*, *Tugenden virtues*; — also *Abend evening*, *Abende*, *Abenden*; and *Elend misery*, *Dat. Elende*.

3. To all nouns, on the other hand, which do NOT CONTAIN in their last syllable the soft *e*, an *e* is ADDED in all the cases Sing. and Plur., to supply, as it were, the requisite euphonic syllable. (Comp. p. 24, A, and particularly p. 25). The terminations *n* and *s* are placed after the *e*. Nouns taking *es* in the Gen. Sing. do not, however, add an *e* in the Acc. Sing.; and in many plurals the *e* is accompanied throughout by an *r* to render the suffix stronger. (See List V, p. 126).

NOMINATIVE.

Arm arm.
 Kind child.

CASES OF DECLENSION.

Arm-*e*, Arm-*es*, Arm-*en*.
 Kind-*e*, Kind-*es*, Kind-*er* (children),
 Kind-*ern*.

Balsam balm.

Balsam-*e*, Balsam-*(e)s*.

Jüngling youth.

Jüngling-*e*, Jüngling-*(e)s*, Jüngling-*en*.

ger be regarded as a termination of case. The pupil who has paid some attention to the statements respecting the nature of the soft *e* in p. 3, and particularly in p. 24, A, will realize at one glance the practical advantage of the system of declension here introduced.

The pupil must understand that the above examples merely serve to illustrate the manner in which the consonant-terminations and the euphonic suffixes *e* and *er* are added to nouns, and that the declensions must be learned from the following rules.

4. There are but TWO DECLENSIONS in German, the one taking *n* in ALL the cases and hence called the N-declension, the other taking *s* in the Gen. Sing. and *n* in the DAT. PLUR. only, and called the S-declension.

5. MODIFICATION OF THE VOWEL IN THE PLURAL, analogous to the English *man, men; mouse, mice; foot, feet*, takes place in the S-DECLENSION only. As a rule only nouns signifying the MOST PRIMITIVE things and notions, and only such Derivatives as are formed of the stems of verbs without the addition of a suffix, undergo modification of the vowel. (Exceptions, see Lists VI & VII, p. 130). Examples: *Vater father, Väter fathers; Bod ram, Böde rams; Mann man, Männer men; Fuß foot, Füße feet; Gans goose, Gänse geese; — Fall fall, Fälle falls, from fallen to fall.*

6. There are nouns forming the Sing. according to the S-, and the Plur. according to the N-form (see List IX, p. 131); and there are nouns forming DIFFERENT PLURALS with different meanings (see List X, p. 132). PROPER NAMES have some peculiarities in declension. (See D, Declension of proper names).

7. Nouns of FOREIGN ORIGIN are declined like German nouns. Peculiarities are stated at the foot of List I, III, in List VIII and at the foot of List IX. (For *Christus Christ, Jesus Jesus*, and *Gott God*, see D, proper names, p. 135).

8. FEMININE nouns remain altogether unchanged in the Sing., except in the following quaint expressions: *die Kirche unsrer lieben Frauen* (also *Frauenkirche*), *the church of our Lady*; *auf Erden* (scriptural), *on earth*; *mit Freuden*, *with joy*; *vor Freuden*, *for joy*; *in and zu Gnaden*, *in favor*; *Euer Gnaden*, *your grace*; *zu Gunsten*, *in and into favor (of)*; *zu Schanden machen*, *to spoil, to frustrate*; *zu Schanden werden*, *to fail disgracefully*; *von Seiten*, *on the part of*; *bei Zeiten*, *in*

time. The termination *it* in these cases is a relic of former declension. It also occurs in poetry, particularly in Ballad-style; as, *das Licht der Sonnen, the light of the sun.*

Fest gemauert in der Erden

Steht die Form,

Firmly walled within the earth

Stands the mould,

(Schiller's lay of the bell).

A. THE N-DECLENSION.

(Analogy in English, *ox, oxen*).

Grammarians call this form the *weak* or *modern* form. Strictly speaking, it is as little a declension as that of the adjectives. Indeed, the nouns comprised under this form, are much like adjectives in their origin, denoting qualities rather than objects. As in the adjective the *n* does not point out case and is obviously euphonic.

Nouns declined by the N-form take in ALL THE CASES SING. AND PLUR. *n*, and NEVER ALTER their vowel.

SINGULAR.

N. der Knabe the boy.

G. des Knaben of the boy.

D. dem Knaben (to) the boy.

A. den Knaben the boy.

SINGULAR.

N. der Ochse(e) the ox.

G. des Ochsen of the ox.

D. dem Ochsen (to) the ox.

A. den Ochsen the ox.

PLURAL.

N. die Knaben the boys.

G. der Knaben of the boys.

D. den Knaben (to) the boys.

A. die Knaben the boys.

PLURAL.

N. die Ochsen the oxen.

G. der Ochsen of the oxen.

D. den Ochsen (to) the oxen.

A. die Ochsen the oxen.

(der Löwe the lion).

(der Mensch the human being).

To this form belong: 1. All nouns signifying MALE BEINGS AND ENDING IN *e*, and the following nouns which formerly ended in *e* (or a similar vowel), but of late have DROPPED it in the Nom. as *Ochse* above. Apart from a few derivative names of animals, these denote qualities of men, not of a primitive nature like *father, brother, son*, but developed at an advanced stage of history, such as names of *nations*, and terms like *so-*

vereign, princee, count, gentleman, ancestor, hero, fop; fool &c.

LIST I, (Table p. 128, column 1).

Masc. nouns, signifying male beings having dropped the *e* in the Nom.

der Bär, bear.	der Mensch, man.
der Baier, the Bavarian.	der Mohr, Moor.
der Barbar, the barbarian.	der Nachbar, neighbour (see Note 1 & 2).
der Bauer, peasant.	der Narr, fool.
der Christ, the Christian.	der Nerv, nerve.
der Elefant, elephant.	der Ochse, ox.
der Fink, finch.	der Prinz, prince.
der Fürst, prince.	der Rebell, rebel.
der Gese, fop.	der Schenk, cupbearer.
der Gesell, companion.	der Schöpse, wether.
der Graf, count.	der Spatz, sparrow.
der Grif, griffin.	der Tartar, Tartar.
der Held, hero.	der Thor, fool.
der Herr, gentleman, master (see Note 2).	der Tyrann, tyrant.
der Hirt, herdsman.	der Ungar, the Hungarian.
der Kaffer, Kaffir.	der Unterthan, subject.
der Kamerad, comrade.	der Vorfahr, ancestor.

By the N-form are declined also such nouns of FOREIGN ORIGIN, signifying male occupations, as have the following suffixes or components, terminating originally in *e*: — an(e), ant, arch, ast, at, ent, et, graph, ist, ist, it (yt), log, nom, on(e); ost, ot, phag, soph; also the following nouns signifying things: Diamant, Foliant, Consonant, Quadrant, Quartant, Sextant, Octant, Quotient, Recipient, Komet, Planet, Hippogryph, Telegraph.

Note 1. The genitive in *s* of some of the above-mentioned German nouns; as, Bauers, Nachbars, Unterthans, occurs with some writers, but is better avoided. Of Nachbar, the genitive proper in *s* may be admitted; as, Nachbars Kinder, the neighbour's children; Nachbars Fils, the neighbour's son, Frederick.

Note 2. Nachbar (without an *e*) has in all the cases Nachbarn, because it is a compound of Bauer, Gen. des Bauern. Herr takes u

in the Gen., Dat. & Acc. Sing., but in the Plur. it takes *en*; as, Acc. Sing. *den Herrn* the gentleman; Dat. Plur. *den Herren* (to) the Messrs.

2. To the N-FORM form belong also all FEMININE NOUNS IN THE PLUR. (the Sing. *remaining unaltered*, see p. 117, 8), EXCEPT those in *niss* (Plur. *nisse*) and the following, these exceptions adding the euphonic *t* in all the cases and taking *n* in the Dat. only. Those in the list modify the vowel in the Plur. because they all signify things or notions of a very primitive nature.

LIST II, (Table p. 128, column 2, 2^d Division).

The only fem. nouns not declined by the N-form, but like the paradigm *Gans*, p. 121.

die Angst, anguish, alarm.	die Luft, air.
die Ausflucht, evasion.	die Lust, lust.
die Art, axe.	die Macht, might.
die Bank, bench.	(Vollmachten, Ohnmachten).
die Braut, bride, betrothed.	die Magd, maid-servant.
die Brunst, in the compound,	die Maus, mouse.
Feuerbrunst, conflagration.	die Mutter, see below.
die Brust, breast, chest.	die Nacht, night
die Faust, fist.	(Weihnachten, Christmas).
die Frucht, fruit.	die Naht, seam.
die Gans, goose.	die Noth, need, distress.
die Geschwulst, tumor, swelling.	die Nuss, nut (Nüsse nuts).
die Gruft, grave, tomb, pit.	die Sau, sow.
die Hand, hand.	die Schnur, string, cord.
die Haut, hide, skin.	die Stadt, town.
die Kluft, cleft, gulf.	die Tochter, see below.
die Kraft, power.	die Wand, wall, partition.
die Kuh, cow.	die Wurst, sausage.
(die Zusammenkunft, meeting).	die Zunft, corporation.
die Kunst, art.	die Kriegsläufe, warlike times.
die Laune, louse.	die Zeitläufe, conjunctures.

and the compound plurals: die Einkünfte income, Zusammenkünfte meetings.

Die Mutter mother, and die Tochter daughter, are

the only *dissyllabic* feminine nouns declined in the plural by the ancient form (p. 128, third column); as, *Mütter mothers*; *Töchter daughters*; dative, *Müttern, Töchtern*.

FEMININE NOUNS are accordingly declined as follows:

N-FORM.		EXCEPTIONS.
<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>N. die Blume</i> the flower.	<i>die Art</i> the kind.	<i>die Gans</i> the goose.
<i>G. der Blume</i> of the flower.	<i>der Art</i> of the kind.	<i>der Gans</i> of the
		goose.
<i>D. der Blume</i> (to) the flower.	<i>der Art</i> (to) the kind.	<i>der Gans</i> (to) the
		goose.
<i>A. die Blume</i> the flower.	<i>die Art</i> the kind.	<i>die Gans</i> the goose.
<i>Plural.</i>		
(e supplied).		(e supplied).
<i>N. die Blumen</i> the flowers.	<i>die Arten</i> the kinds.	<i>die Gänse</i> the geese.
<i>G. der Blumen</i> of the flowers.	<i>der Arten</i> of the kinds.	<i>der Gänse</i> of the
		geese.
<i>D. den Blumen</i> (to) the flowers.	<i>den Arten</i> (to) the kinds.	<i>den Gänsen</i> (to) the
		geese.
<i>A. die Blumen</i> the flowers.	<i>die Arten</i> the kinds.	<i>die Gänse</i> the geese.
(<i>die Wachtel</i> the quail).	(<i>die Schlacht</i> the battle).	(<i>die Nacht</i> the night).

NOTE 1. The feminine Derivatives formed with the suffix *in* (see p. 34, 2); as, *Freundin fem. friend*, *Nachbarin fem. neighbour*, *Königin queen*, double in the Plur. the *n* of the suffix; as, *Freundinnen, Nachbarinnen, Königinnen*.

NOTE 2. The predominance of the N-declension in the plurals of fem. nouns is owing to the adjective character of the greater number of these.

B. THE S-DECLENSION.

(Ancient or strong form).

The pupil has *first to ascertain* whether a noun belongs to the N-form according to the above rules. All nouns which he finds DO NOT BELONG to the N-declension, are declined by the S-form. (Notice, however, List IX, and also List X, pp. 131, 132).

It will be found that ALL NEUTER NOUNS, all MASCULINE NOUNS not signifying male beings, and ending in *e*, or not given in List I, and of FEMININE NOUNS, only the PLURALS of those given in List II, belong to the S-Form.

The S-form is properly termed the ancient or strong form, because it has preserved the characteristic features of the most primitive declension.

The modification of the vowel in the Plur.* is peculiar to it, and the pupil may notice, that the more ancient a noun according to its meaning (denoting, for instance, objects of nature and of primitive life), the more certainly may it be expected to assume the modified vowel in the Plur.; whilst very few abstract nouns undergo Modification in the Plur., and among these chiefly such PRIMARY DERIVATIVES as are formed of stems of verbs without the addition of a suffix; as, *Gang walk*, *Gänge walks*, from *gehen* (Past. Part. *gegangen*) *to go*; *Brauch usage*, *Bräuche usages*, from *brauchen* *to use*; *Stoß toss, thrust*, *Stöße thrusts*, from *stoßen* *to toss, to push*; *Spruch saying*, *Sprüche sayings*, from *sprechen* *to speak*. THE EXCEPTIONS in point of Modification are given in Lists VI and VII p. 130.

THE TERMINATIONS of this form are *s*, the Gen. SING. and *n* in the Dat. PLUR.

The pupil should proceed as follows:

1. (See Table p. 128, column 3). Add only *s* in the Gen. SING. and *n* in the Dat. PLUR. to all nouns of this form WHICH CONTAIN in their last syllable the unaccented *e*, but omit the *n* in the Dat. Plur. when the noun ends in *n*, or has the suffix *lein*; as,

Nominatives.

Der Käse, das Segel, der Fischer, der Hafen, das
The cheese (loaf), the sail, the fisher, the hook, the
Sternchen, das Blümlein.
starlet, the floweret.

Genitive Singular.

Des Käses, Segels, Fischers, Hafens, Sternchens, Blüm-
leins.

Dative Plural.

Den Käsen, Segeln, Fischern, Häfen, Sternchen, Blümlein.

* See pp. 3, 4, 31 and 32, 91 and particularly Note, pp. 91 & 92.

The rest of the cases like the Nom. Sing.
Räse, Segel, Fischer, Hafen, Stündchen, Blümlein.

(It may be remarked that a few nouns in *en* and *sel* occur in this class, besides those formed with the suffixes *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, *chen*, *lein*, which have been exemplified above).

The INFINITIVES of verbs used as NEUTER NOUNS; as, *das Reisen travelling*, *das Leben living, life*, and the following MASC. NOUNS ENDING IN *e*, but also occurring with the Nom. Sing. in *en* are declined like nouns in *en*; as, Nom. *Friede* or *Frieden* *peace*, Gen. *Friedens*, the rest of the cases *Frieden*.

LAST III.

Nouns with the double Nom. in *e* and *en*, Gen. *ens*.

der Buchstabe, letter.	der Haufe, the multitude.
der Fels, (also Acc. Fels), rock.	der Name, name.
der Friede, peace.	der Same, seed.
der Funke, spark.	der Schade, detriment, Plur. modified, Schäden.
der Gedanke, idea.	der Wille, the will.
der Glaube, faith.	

In the double nominatives of most of the above nouns, a distinction between their ABSTRACT and literal meaning is observable, similar to that of masculine and neuter abstract nouns derived from verbs: *der Lauf* the course, *das Laufen*, the running; *der Fall* the case, *das Fallen* the falling. Distinguish between *Fels* figuratively, the rock (of faith), and *Felsen*, literally, a rock or cliff; *Friede* peace, and *Frieden* a peace; *Funke* a spark (of hope, genius, &c.), and *Funken* a spark of fire; *Gedanke* the idea, spirit (of the law), and *Gedanken* a thought; *Glaube* faith, trust, and *Glauben* a creed; *Haufe* the multitude, and *Haufen* a heap; *Name* a good name, reputation, and *Namen* a name, (lit.); *Same* the seed, fig., as of discord, and *Samen* seed of plants; *Schade* detriment, injury (moral), and *Schaden*, damage, injury (physical); *Glauben*, *Namen*, and *Willen*, have almost disappeared from the language.

The declension of these nouns has an analogy in:

the Latin *sermo*, *sermonis*, and *nomen*, *nominis* (Gothic *namans*); and their formerly occurring in the N-declension seems to be accidental.

Of these nouns containing the soft *e* in their last syllable, ONLY THE FOLLOWING VERY ANCIENT ONES MODIFY the vowel in the Plur., (the rest being of later origin or having vowels not liable to Modification), *e. g.* Bruder, Plur. Brüder.

LIST IV. (Table p. 128, col. 3. Paradigm, Nagel p. 129).
The only *dissyllabic* simple nouns of the S-form in which the vowel is modified in the Plur.

der Acker, ploughed field; acre.	der Mangel, deficiency, want. der Mantel, mantle, cloak.
der Apfel, apple.	der Nabel, navel.
der Boden, bottom, loft.	der Nagel, nail.
der Bruder, brother.	der Ofen, stove, oven.
der Faden, thread.	der Sattel, saddle.
der Garten, garden.	der Schaden, damage.
der Graben, ditch.	der Schnabel, beak.
der Hafen, harbour.	der Schwager, brother-in-law.
der Hammel, wether, mutton.	der Vater, father.
der Hammer, hammer.	der Vogel, bird.
der Handel, affair.	der Zagen, tail.
der Laden, shop.	
der Magen, stomach.	

Das Kloster, *the cloister*, Plur. die Klöster, and the plurals of Mutter and Tochter — Mütter *mothers*, Töchter *daughters*, — belong to this list.

2. (See Table, p. 128, column 4). ADD THE EUPHONIC *e* in all the cases Sing. and Plur., *except the Acc. Sing.*, to all nouns of the S-form which do not naturally possess an *e* in their last syllable, or which have not the suffix *lein*. The TERMINATIONS *es* in the Gen. and *n* in the Dat. Plur. are made to follow the euphonic *e*. The nouns given in List V, and also the nouns in *thum* take the ENLARGED PLURAL in *er*, Dat. *ern*, which is invariably accompanied by the modification of the strong root-vowel, and of *sthum* into *sthümer*.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

	ball,	toll,	foot,	beam, tree,	king,	destiny.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ball m.,	Ball m.,	Fuß m.,	Baum m.,	König m.,	Schicksal n.
<i>Gen.</i>	Balles,	Ball'es,	Fuß'es,	Baumes,	König(e)s,	Schicksal(e)s.
<i>Dat.</i>	Ball'e,	Ball'e,	Fuß'e,	Baume,	Könige,	Schicksale.
<i>Acc.</i>	Ball,	Ball,	Fuß,	Baum,	König,	Schicksal.

Plural.

	balls,	tolls,	feet,	beams,	kings,	destinies.
<i>Nom.</i>	Bälle,	Bälle,	Füße,	Bäume,	Könige,	Schicksale.
<i>Gen.</i>	Bälle,	Bälle,	Füße,	Bäume,	Könige,	Schicksale.
<i>Dat.</i>	Bällen,	Bällen,	Füßen,	Bäumen,	Königen,	Schicksalen.
<i>Acc.</i>	Bälle,	Bälle,	Füße,	Bäume,	Könige,	Schicksale.

Note 1. The *e* is NOT ADDED IN THE ACC. SING., as all neuter nouns must be alike in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*, and the masculine nouns seem to have been influenced by this rule.

Note 2. The *e* before the *s* in the GEN. SING. is generally DROPPED in nouns of more than one syllable, and also in those which occur as last components, on account of the reduced accentuation of the suffix or last component (see p. 25, 2 and 3), and owing to the termination *s* conveying by itself a certain amount of sound; as, *des Königs of the king*, *des Jünglings of the youth*, *des Balsams of the balm*, *des Schicksals of the destiny*, *des Spielballs of the playing-ball*, *des Wegezeigers of the road-toll*, *des Apfelbaums of the apple-tree*. In compound nouns ending in *s*, *ß*, *j* or *sch*, the *e* in the *Gen.* is always PRESERVED to make both the final consonant and the termination audible; as, *des Futtergrases of the green fodder*, *des Vorderfußes of the fore-foot*, *des Wertwises of the pan*, *des Seefisches of the sea-fish*. In other cases the preservation of the *e* is euphonic; as, *des Seebades of the sea-bath*, (not *des Seebads*); *des Felsengrabes of the grave in the rock* (not *des Felsengrabs*).

Note 3. The euphonic *e* is OMITTED IN THE DAT. SING. when the noun is governed by a preposition immediately preceding it; as, *aus Haß, from hatred*; *mit Grund, with reason*; *nach Verlauf, after the lapse of*; chiefly in idiomatic expressions; as, *mit Weib und Kind, with wife and children*; *von Haus und Hof, from hearth and home*; *mit Gut und Blut, with life and property*. When an adjective, article &c. intervenes, the *e* is RETAINED; as, *aus altem Haße, from ancient hatred*; *mit gutem Grunde, with good ground*; *nach dem Verlaufe, after the lapse*.

Note 4. Nouns in *ß* and those in *nß* either change or do not change the *ß* into *ff* according to the rules laid down in the three paragraphs on the *ß* and *ff*, pp. 16 and 17; accordingly, *der Fuß*; *des Fußes*; but, *der Guß*, *des Gusses*; *der Fluß*, *des Flusses*.

Note 5. If DOUBLED VOWELS undergo MODIFICATION, only a SINGLE modified vowel is written; as, *Saul hall*, *Säit hatte*; *Veit*

boat, *Böte boats*. The diphthong *au* only modifies the *a* — *äu*; as, *Baum tree*, *Bäume trees*.

Note 6. A number of nouns, of the masculine and neuter gender, taken from modern languages, retain the plural in *s* in all cases; as, *Cousins* cousins (male), *Complets* complets, *Détails* details, *Kausticks* easy-chairs, *Genies* geniuses, *Clubs*, *Cafinos*, *Dominoes*, *Banquiers*, *Rentiers*, *Fortis*, *Lieutenants*, *Fonds*, *Lordis*, *Agios*, *Hôtels*, &c. &c.; and especially such in ment, as have retained the French pronunciation (mang) in that suffix; as, *Abonnements* (subscriptions), *Arrangements* (arrangements), *Amendements*, *Bombardements*, *Établissements*, *Falsiffements*, *Gouvernements*, &c., &c. The following, however, have German pronunciation and declension; as, *Plur. Elemente*, *Sakrament*: *Aliment*, *Argument*, *Compliment*, *Connoissement*, *Élement*, *Emblément*, *Extrément*, *Firmitment*, *Firmament*, *Fundament*, *Monument*, *Parlament*, *Pergament*, *Postament*, *Sakrament*, *Segment*, *Testament*.

Note 7. The foreign nouns *Diadem**, *Emblem**, *Problem**, &c. and *Phänomen** add the euphonic *e*. Likewise *Charakter* in its *Plur. Charaktere*.

3. THE FOLLOWING MOST ANCIENT NOUNS take, in the *Plur.* throughout, the suffix *er* (*Dat. ern*), and invariably modify the vowel.* Nouns with the suffix *thum* take in the *Plur.* *thümer*. In committing to memory the nouns of this list, the pupil may notice, that of all nouns in the language these are the most ancient, and in fact, with the exception of a very few stray words, represent the objects of life in its most primitive condition.

LIST V. (Table, p. 128, column 4, 2^d Division).

Nouns with the enlarged plural in *er*, and vowel modified. Paradigm *Thal*, p. 129.

The nouns marked* have double plurals. (See List X, p. 132).

das *Wag*, carrion.

das *Augenlid*, eyelid.

das *Amt*, office.

das *Bad*, bath.

* The nouns which receive in the *Plur.* the suffix *er* (o. H.-G. *it*) together with the modified vowel, seem to be characterized as most ancient in the Gothic by the absence of the usually developed consonantic termination in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Plur.* They end, *Nom. a*, *Gen. e*, *Dat. am*, *Acc. s*, and lose this apparently feeble *a* in the old High-German, thus becoming open to the hitherto unexplained addition of the *er* which may have found its way into the German from the North to supply a practical want. The ancient Frisian and Anglo-Saxon show distinct traces of this form of plural; as, Fr. *kindern children*. Ang. S. *ægern eggs* (*Æter*), *tsalfru calves* (*Kälber*), *lambru lambs* (*Lämmern*).

*das Band, ribbon.	das Haus, house.
das Bild, picture.	das Korn, grain.
das Blatt, leaf.	das Kraut, herb.
das Brett, board.	das Lamm, lamb.
das Buch, book.	*das Land, country.
das Dach, roof.	der Leib, body.
das Dorf, village.	*das Licht, light.
*der Dorn, thorn-bush.	das Lied, song.
das Ei, egg.	das Loch, hole.
das Fach, compartment.	*der Mann, man.
das Faß, cask.	das Maul, mouth.
das Feld, field.	das Nest, nest.
das Holz, wood.	*der Ort, place.
das Horn, horn.	das Pfand, pledge.
das Huhn, fowl.	das Rad, wheel.
das Kalb, calf.	der Rand, margin.
das Kind, child.	das Reis, twig.
das Kleid, garment.	das Rind, neat-cattle.
der Geist, spirit.	*das Schild, signboard.
das Geld, money.	das Schloß, lock, castle.
das Gemach, apartment.	das Schwert, sword.
das Gemüth, mind.	*das Stift, ecclesiastical
das Geschlecht, sex.	foundation.
*das Gesicht, face.	*der Strauch, shrub, copse.
das Gespenst, spectre.	das Thal, valley.
das Gewand, garment.	das Tuch, cloth.
das Glas, glass.	das Volk, people.
das Glied, limb.	der Vormund, guardian.
der Gott, the god, idol.	der Wald, forest.
das Grab, grave.	das Wams, jacket, doublet.
das Gras, grass.	das Weib, woman.
das Gut, estate.	*das Wort, word.
das Haupt, head.	der Wurm, worm.

and the foreign nouns das Capital capital (of a pillar); das Hospital or Spital hospital; and das Regiment the regiment.

The plurals Gewande garments, Lande lands and Thale valleys occur in poetry. Mann, man has, besides the Pl. Männer, an old form, Mannen vassals, retainers, and in Compounds Leute men of a class; as, Seemann, Pl. Seeleute seamen.

In using the table of declension, the pupil has to ascertain, firstly, whether the noun comes under the head of col. 1, secondly whether it is a feminine noun, (when the exceptions in the second subdivision of the plural require to be considered). All other nouns belong to the S-form, and require simply to be classed according to the headings of col. 3 and 4, the terminations being throughout added to the Nom., that is, to the full word.

Compound Nouns, see p. 132; *Nouns of foreign origin* see p. 117, 7.

N-DECLENSION. (modern weak or adjective-form), admitting no modification of vowel in the plural.		S-DECLENSION. (ancient or strong form), attended by the modification of vowel in the plural of nouns of a primitive meaning, and comprising all neuter nouns, and all masculine nouns not accounted for in col. 1.	
Masc. nouns, signifying male beings and ending in <i>n</i> , and those given in List I. p. 119, as having formerly ended in <i>e</i> .	Feminine nouns remaining <i>unaltered in the singular</i> , except in the quaint phrases given p. 117, 8.	When containing a soft <i>e</i> in their last syllable, or ending in <i>lein</i> .	When not containing a soft <i>e</i> in the last syllable.
<p><i>Singular.</i></p> <p>Nom. — (e) Gen. — n (or en) Dat. — n Acc. — n</p> <p><i>Plural.</i></p> <p>Nom. — n — n (or en) — e Gen. — n — n — e Dat. — n — n — en Acc. — n — n — e</p> <p>To the 2^d division belong also a few fem. Derivatives in <i>nig</i>. Pl. <i>niff e</i>.</p>		<p><i>Singular.</i></p> <p>_____ s _____ s _____ t _____ t</p> <p><i>Plural.</i></p> <p>The vowel is modified only in the nouns of List IV.</p> <p>Expts. See p. 130. List V.</p> <p>_____ e — er _____ e — er _____ en — ern _____ e — er</p> <p>To the second subdivision belong also the Derivatives in <i>thum</i>, Plur. <i>thumer</i>.</p>	
<p>See List III.</p> <p>Then in the Dat. Plur. is not added to nouns ending in <i>n</i>.</p> <p>The Sing. of foreign nouns in <i>or</i>, <i>um</i> & <i>ium</i> belong to this column.</p>			

Observe also that there are: 1st, a number of nouns forming the singular according to the N- and the plural according to the S-form, (see List IX, p. 131); and 2nd, a number of nouns, forming *different plurals with different meanings*, (see List X, p. 132). See also declension of proper names, p. 134 and the Notes, p. 125, 126.

The lists in connexion with the declensions should be gradually committed to memory according to their order.

THE S-DECLENSION IN ITS THREE FORMS IS THUS EXEMPLIFIED.

<i>the nail.</i> (natural e).	<i>the pole.</i> (e supplied).	<i>the valley.</i> (er supplied in the Plur.)
<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Nom.</i> der Nagel.	der Pfahl.	das Thal.
<i>Gen.</i> des Nagel = s.	des Pfahl = es.	des Thal = es.
<i>Dat.</i> dem Nagel.	dem Pfahl = e.	dem Thal = e.
<i>Acc.</i> den Nagel.	den Pfahl.	das Thal.
<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Nom.</i> die Nägel.	die Pfähle = e.	die Thäler = er.
<i>Gen.</i> der Nägel.	der Pfähle = e.	der Thäler = er.
<i>Dat.</i> den Nägel = n.	den Pfähle = en.	den Thäler = ern.
<i>Acc.</i> die Nägel.	die Pfähle = e.	die Thäler = er.

EXCEPTIONS IN POINT OF MODIFICATION.

a. Of nouns, containing in their last syllable a soft e, only those stated in List IV, p. 124, *modify* the vowel in the plural.

b. Of *neuter* nouns only those forming the plural in *-er*, given in List V, p. 126, and these three monosyllables forming the plural in *e* are modified in the Plur. das Boot *the boat*, Pl. die Böte; das Floß *the raft*, Pl. die Flöße, and das Rohr *the tube, barrel*, Pl. die Röhre; of neut. dissyllables only Kloster, Pl. Klöster.

c. The following masculine nouns, forming the plural in *e*, do not modify the vowel.

LIST VI.

Some primitive nouns contained in this List, formerly did modify the vowel; as, *Arm arm*, *Hund dog*, &c.

der Aal, eel.	der Mond, moon.
der Aar, eagle.	der Mord, murder.
der Amboss, anvil.	der Ort, } meaning <i>place, room</i> , } (<i>locus</i>).
der Arm, arm.	der Park, park.
der Bern, well, spring.	der Pfad, path.
der Dachs, badger.	der Pflau, peacock.
der Dacht, wick.	der Pol, pole (of the earth, &c.)
der Dolch, dagger.	der Puls, pulse.
der Dom, cathedral.	der Punkt, point.
der Druck, } pressure, print, (modified in its compounds).	der Ruf, call, cry.
der Fund, discovery.	der Schacht, shaft, pit.
der Grad, degree.	der Schast, } shaft, (sometimes modified).
der Gurt, girth, belt.	der Schust, scamp.
der Halm, blade, stalk of grass.	der Schuh, shoe.
der Hauch, breath.	der Staar, starting.
der Huf, hoof.	der Steff, stuff.
der Hund, dog.	der Sund, sound, strait.
der Kobold, } hobgoblin, and other compounds of beld.	der Tag, day.
der Kork, cork.	der Tact, tact, bar (in music).
der Lachs, salmon.	der Thron, throne.
der Lack, lac.	der Unheld, } mischievous being, } wicked spirit.
der Laut, sound.	der Vieftraß, glutton.
der Luchs, lynx.	der Wiedehopf, hoopoe.
der Molch, salamander.	der Zell, meaning <i>inch</i> .
der Monat, month.	

d. Also the following masculine Derivatives do not modify the vowel.

LIST VII.

Beßuf behoof, purpose, Beruf calling, Besuch visit, Erfolg success, effect, Erfolg manifesto, Verdacht suspicion, Verhaß and Verhaun abattain, Verlust loss, Versuch attempt. Der Verrath treason, and der Betrug fraud, if referring to single actions, assume the plural of the feminine nouns Verrätherei treasonable action, Betrügerei fraudulent action; and der Verzug delay, assumes the plural of die Verzögerung, and der Verdruß trouble, annoyance, the plural of die Verdrießlichkeit.

e. Nouns of foreign origin do not modify the vowel, EXCEPT the following, of which it is interesting to observe that they are chiefly terms connected with the church and apparently carefully germanized.

LIST VIII.

der Abt, abbot.	der Marsch, march.
der Altar, altar.	der Morast, morass.
der Bischof, bishop.	der Palast, palace.
der Chor, chorus, (das) choir.	der Papst, pope.
der Choral, choral, hymn.	der Pöbst, prebendary.
der Canal, canal, channel.	der Vogt, bailiff, protector of a
der Kaplan, chaplain.	convent.
der Kardinal, cardinal.	

ANOMALIES.

The following masculine and neuter nouns are declined in the singular by the S-form, and in the plural according to the N-form; as, das Auge, des Auges, Plur. die Augen; das Ohr, des Ohres, Plur. die Ohren.

LIST IX.

der Ahn, ancestor.	das Ohr, ear.
das Auge, eye.	der Pantoffel, slipper.
der Bauer, peasant.	der Pfau, peacock.
das Bett, bed.	der Psalm, psalm.
der Consul, consul.	der Schmerz, pain, grief.
der Dorn, thorn, sting.	der See, lake.
das Ende, extremity, end.	der Sporn, spur.
der Fasan, pheasant.	der Staat, state.
der Forst, forest.	der Stachel, sting.
der Gau, district.	das Statut, statute.
der Schwatter, godfather.	der Strahl, ray, beam.
das Hemd, (better anc.), shirt.	der Strauß, ostrich.
das Insekt, insect.	das Stück, fragment.
der Kapaun, capon.	der Vetter, (male) cousin.
der Lorbeer, laurel.	der Toß, toe.
der Mast, mast.	der Zierrath, ornament.
	der Zins, rent, interest.

Farther, such foreign nouns, signifying male occupations, as end in an unaccented er; as, Director, Pl. Directoren; neuter nouns in um or ium, Pl. en and ten; in ist, Pl. isten (Krokodil, Profil, Reptil have e in the Pl.); and the following in al, Pl. allen,

das Bacchanal, bacchanal.	das Material, material.
das Capital, capital, stock.	das Mineral, mineral.
das Cereal, cereal.	das Regal, crown-income.

And the plurals:
die Saturnallen, saturnalia.
die Repräsentanten, reprisals.
die Utensilien, utensils.

Note 1. The masc. nouns inismus and ius are not declined in the Sing., but in the Pl. change us into en; as, Anglistenismus,

Note. The pupil has been advised, pp. 32, 2, and 84, Note, to abstain from forming Derivatives, and this advice holds good also with regard to the formation of compound nouns, owing to the following peculiarities.

a. The genitive termination is sometimes added to the first component, and sometimes not; as, *Herrmann* husbandman, *Herrbauer* cultivator of the soil, agriculturist; *Landmann* fellow-countryman, *Landmann* countryman, peasant.

b. The termination *s* is often added to first components of the feminine gender; as, *Geburtstag* birthday, (for *Tag der Geburt*), *Liebesdienst* act of kindness, *Liebesgabe* gift of love, *Heirathsgut* marriage-portion, *Hochzeitstag* wedding-day, *Religionslehren* doctrines of religion. The *s* is always added to feminine Derivatives in *Heit*, *Leit*, *Muth*, *Schaft* ung, ion and tüt, and with these the formation of Compounds is comparatively safe; as, *Freundschaftsbündniß* friendly alliance, *Heffnungsstrahl* ray of hope, *Universitätslehrer* academical teacher.

c. In some cases a euphonic *t*, *l*, *f*, or *r* is inserted between the two components.

d. The first component has often the plural form with a Singular meaning; as, *Gänselei* goose-quill; particularly in the Compounds with *braten* roast; as, *Gänsebraten* a roasted goose, *Rinderbraten* roast-beef, *Schweinebraten* roast-pork.

e. The compound noun has often a significance not possessed by the components in the attributive combination; as, *ein Taubenpaar*, a pair of pigeons, *ein Paar Tauben*, two pigeons; *die Bruderhand*, the brotherly hand, *die Hand des Bruders*, the hand of the brother. (See p. 143, 2).

D. DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

A. Proper names, except those stated in Note 1 and 2, are not declined when PRECEDED BY AN ARTICLE (see p. 137, B) or pronoun; as, *des Ganges*, *des Nil*, *des Po*, *des Mississippi*; *des Archipelagus*; *des Erir*, *des Lago Maggiore*; *des Sinai*; *des Libanon*, *des Speßart*. Farther, *des Achill*; *der Ernst eines Dante*, the earnestness of a Dante; *die Werke unseres Goethe*, the works of our Goethe; *das Schicksal jenes Manfred*, the fate of that Manfred; *der Fleiß meiner Sophie*, the diligence of my Sophie.

Note 1. Neuter names of countries and places are DECLINED LIKE COMMON NOUNS, as also are the names of some German rivers of the masculine gender, and of some masculine and neuter Compounds with common nouns signifying districts, lakes, seas, mountains, which are always used with the definite article; as, *des einigen Italiens*, of united

Italy; des schönen Frankreichs, of fair France; an den Ufern des Rheins und des Mains, on the banks of the Rhine and the Maine; des Bodensees, of the lake of Constance; des Eismers, of the Polar-sea; des Schwarzwaldes, of the black forest. The genitives des Brodens, of the Brocken; des Harzes, of the Harz-mountains, are formed in analogy with the common names Brocken *crumb*, Harz *resin*. The genitives des Bettes, des Eundes, des Rattegats take the s from the same reason as the above.

Note 2. A proper name, preceded by an adjective, must always be used with the definite article or with a pronoun. When, in such a combination it is used as the attribute in the genitive-case before another noun, it receives the termination s, unless it is of the feminine gender or ends in a vowel or in s, or another sibilant; as, des kühnen Tells That, the deed of bold Tell; des großen Alfreds Leben, great Alfreds life; des stolzen Albions Siege, proud Albion's victories; On the other hand, der kleinen Marie Wünsche, little Mary's wishes; des geliebten Göthes Lieder, the poems of beloved Goethe; des hässlichen Theristes Schmähungen, the reviling of ugly Thersites.

Note 3. After a possessive pronoun, the genitive in s of masc. Christian names is not uncommon in colloquial language; as, der Brief meines Karls, the letter of my (son) Charles; die Ankunft unseres Friedrichs, the arrival of our Frederick.

B. Proper names NOT PRECEDED by an article or pronoun are declined as follows:

a. Names of FEMALES TERMINATING IN e assume nß in the genitive, and n in the rest of the cases; as, Nom. Marie, Gen. Mariens, Dat. Marien, Acc. Marien. The same occurs with names of male persons ending in sch, s, r and z; as, Vossens „Louise“, the poem “Louise,” by Voss.

b. ALL OTHER PROPER NAMES assume s in the genitive; as, Alexanders, Vidos, Annas, Scipiods, Berlins, Englands, Preussens. The dative is sometimes pointed out more distinctly by the same case of the definite article; dem Socrates, der Elisabeth. The same is done in the genitive with proper names in s; as, des Socrates, of Socrates; des Mars, of Mars. With places, especially when they end in s and z, von is used to point out the genitive; as, von Paris, of Paris.

Note 4. No genitive is, however, formed of the name of a country or place after the terms expressing its nature or rank; as, die Insel Madeira, the island of Madeira; das Königreich Sachsen, the kingdom of Saxony; das Großherzogthum Baden, the grandduchy of

Baden; das Erzbisthum Köln, the archbishopric of Cologne; die Universität Berlin, the university of Berlin; der Regierungsbezirk und die Stadt Magdeburg, the governmental district and the city of Magdeburg; die Festung Königstein, the fortress of Königstein.—(The City von London is used to denote that particular part of the metropolis).

c. When Christian names PRECEDE THE FAMILY-NAME, the *latter* only is declined; as, der Geist Martin Luthers, the spirit of Martin Luther; Leopold Ranke's Geschichte von England, Leopold Ranke's history of England; Gustav Freytag's Schriften, the writings of Gustav Freytag.

d. If the proper name of a person is PRECEDED BY A TITLE, &c., without the article; as, König Friedrich, King Frederick, Captain Cook, the genitive of the *proper name* only is expressed; as, König Friedrich's, of King Frederick; Kaiser Albrechts Tod, the death of the Emperor Albrecht; Lord Broughams Wohnsitz, the residence of Lord Brougham; Vetter Michel und Nachbar Hansens Kinder, Cousin Michael's and neighbour John's children.

With a preceding article, however, the TITLE &c. is declined, and the proper name remains unchanged; as, der Tod des Prinzen Albert, the death of Prince Albert; die Denkwürdigkeiten des Kaisers Napoleon, the memoirs of the Emperor Napoleon. The British titles Earl, Lord, remain unchanged even after the article and are only declined, when no proper name follows; as, das Leben des Earl von Clarendon, the life of the Earl of Clarendon; die Gemahlin des Lord Byron, the lady of Lord B.

e. *Plurals* of names generally agree with those of common nouns. With families' and distinguished houses mentioned collectively, an *s* occurs as in English; as, Brauns sind gute Leute. *The Browns are good people.* Die Rothschilds charakterisiren unsre Zeit. *The Rothschilds characterize our age.* The article is used in speaking of families of a public character, as, artists, performers &c.

f. Christus CHRIST and Jesus JESUS have retained the Latin declension.

<i>Nom.</i> Christus, Christ.	Jesus, Jesus.
<i>Gen.</i> Christi, Christ's, of Christ.	Jesu, of Jesus.
<i>Dat.</i> Christo, (to) Christ.	Jesu, (to) Jesus.
<i>Acc.</i> Christum, Christ.	Jesum, Jesus.

When preceded by *der Herr* *the Lord* or *Lord* they are not declined; as, *des Herrn Christus*; *dem Herrn Jesus*. Yet the accusative in *um* occurs; as, *unsern Herrn und Heiland Jesum Christum*, our Lord and saviour Jesus Christ. — *Gott* *God*, *the Lord* drops the *e* in the dative, but retains it when used in the sense of a *deity*; *Götter* gods.

SECTION XVII. — ON THE USE OF THE ARTICLE.

The article is EMPLOYED where it is employed in English, EXCEPT in the following phrases:

Er ist Vater, He is a father. *Sie ist Mutter*. She is a mother. *Er hat Familie*, he has a family; in *Wuth*, in a passion; in *Eile*, in a hurry; mit *schwacher* &c. *Stimme*, with a faint &c. voice. *Ich habe Kopfschmerz*. I have a headache. *Ich habe Lust*. I have a mind. *Ich fand Gelegenheit*. I found an opportunity. Likewise: *Er wurde Soldat*, General, Kaufmann; *Sie wurde Schauspielerin*. He became a soldier, a general, a merchant; she became an actress, &c. &c. Likewise *auf, von, — gen, nach Norden, Osten, Süden, Westen*, from, — towards, from the N., E., S., W.; — *but im Norden, zum Norden* &c. Lastly, *einige, hundert* &c. *Schritte, Dinge, &c.*, a few hundred, &c. steps, things, &c.; *aufsend mal* a thousand times.

The article is used in German where it is NOT EMPLOYED in English.

A. BEFORE ANY SUBSTANTIVE, the case of which is not sufficiently distinguished by its termination. This occurs chiefly with proper names ending in *s* or a similar consonant, with the singulars of feminine nouns, and in those cases of the plural which cannot by themselves be recognized. Here the article serves instead of the English *of* and *to*; as, *der Tod des Sokrates*, the death of Socrates; *des Ajax*, of Ajax; *dem Ulysses*, to Ulysses. *Ich habe es dem Hans gegeben*, I have given it to Johny. *Reinheit der Seele*, purity of soul; *das Glück der Freundschaft*, the happiness of friendship. *Er zieht Wein dem Wasser und der Milch vor*. He prefers wine to water or milk.

The *genitive*, however, is rendered far more extensively than in English *by the formation of compounds*; as, *Seeleureinheit purity of soul*; *ein Lebensbild, a picture of life*; *die Naturgesetze the laws of nature*, *Religionslehren doctrines of religion*, or *religious doctrines*; (comp. p. 132, and p. 143. 2).

B. THE ARTICLE BEFORE PROPER NAMES

cannot be omitted. 1. When they are PRECEDED BY ADJECTIVES; as, *das lustige England, merry England*; *das schöne Venedig, beautiful Venice*; *der große Friedrich, Frederick the Great*, *die kleine Marie, little Mary*.

2. Before feminine names of COUNTRIES; as, *die Normandie Normandy*, *die Pfalz the Palatinate*, *die Schweiz Switzerland*, *die Türkei Turkey*, also before the plurals *die Niederlande the Netherlands*, *die Hochlande or das Hochland the Highlands*; and the compounds of *der Gau the county*; as, *der Aargau, der Appenzel, der Briegau*; likewise *das Elsass Alsace*, and *das Arelat the dukedom of Arles*. (See p. 112.)

3. Before the names of MOUNTAINS; as, *Mount Zion*, *der Berg Zion*; *Mount Sinai*, *der Berg Sinai*; and rivers, lakes, and seas; as, *der Rhein, the Rhine*, *die Elbe the Elbe*.

4. Before the names of MONTHS AND SEASONS; as, *der August the month of August*, *im März, in March*; *zum September, for September*; *für den Juli, for July*; *im Sommer, in summer*; *während des Winters, during winter*. Wir erwarten den Frühling. We await spring. When the season is used as the PREDICATE after the verbs *es ist, it is*; *es wird, it becomes*, &c., the article is omitted; as, *Es war Herbst. It was autumn*. *Es wurde Winter. It became winter*.

The English *or* is not rendered when the name of the month is preceded by the noun *Monat*, and after this noun the article is not used; as, *der Monat Mai, the month of May*; *im Monate Juni, in the month of June*.

Note. Sometimes the article denotes the work of an author or artist; as, *ein Randskye, a painting of Vandyke. Ich habe den Goethe. I possess the works of Goethe.* In speaking of friends or members of a family, the article is *not* used, but it is sometimes employed in speaking of inferiors. *Der Johann soll das Pferd bringen. John (the coachman) is to bring the horse. Die Marie soll herinkommen. Let Mary (the servant) come in.*

With titles preceding the name, the article is less frequently dropped than in English; as, *der Statthalter Hastings, Governor Hastings; der Admiral Napier, Admiral Napier; der Feldmarschall Blücher, Fieldmarshal Blücher; die Königin Victoria, Queen Victoria.*

C. THE ARTICLE BEFORE ABSTRACT NOUNS. OR NOUNS USED ABSTRACTLY.

The article CANNOT BE OMITTED in speaking of any particular faculty, power, quality, in an ABSOLUTE SENSE; as, *Die Zeit ist flüchtig. Time is fleeting. Wenn die Gewalt herrscht, verbirgt sich das Recht. When might prevails, right hides herself. Die Jugend ist die Zeit der Saat, youth is the time of sowing. Das Geld ist eine alte Erfindung. Money is an ancient invention.*

The same is the case with *common nouns, if denoting the whole genus or class*; as, *Nicht der Zufall beherrscht das Geschick des Menschen. It is not chance that rules the destiny of man. Das Weib ist nicht geringer als der Mann, nur sein Beruf ist ein verschiedener. Woman is not inferior to man, only her mission is a different one. Here sometimes in German the plural is used where the English put the singular, and vice versa; as, "Der Frauen Schicksal ist beklagenswerth," (Goethe's Tasso). The lot of woman is pitiable; on the other hand: Der Arme hat keine Freunde. The poor have no friends.*

WHERE TWO OR MORE NOUNS of this description are used in *connexion* as a whole, the article is generally *dropped*; as, *Jugend und Schönheit vergehen. Youth and beauty pass away. Kämpft für Vaterland und Ehre! Fight for country and honour! Jugend und Gerechtigkeit sind nicht immer beliebt. Virtue and justice are not always well liked. Er handelt gegen Gesetz und Sitte. He acts contrary to law and custom. Gold und Silber sind edle Metalle. Gold and silver are precious metals.*

Common names, however, even when connected, RETAIN the article in the singular; as, Das Kind und das Schaf sind die wichtigsten Hausthiere. Cattle and sheep are the most important domestic animals. Die Eiche und die Buche sind die edelsten Waldbäume. The oak and the beech are the noblest forest-trees. Der Adler und der Löwe leben einsam, während Krähen und Wölfe in Haufen schwärmen. Eagles and Lions dwell in solitude, whilst crows and wolves flock together in crowds.

If, however, *abstract nouns* are used RELATIVELY, (in application to particular cases) or PARTITIVELY, *the article is dropped as in English*; as, Dieser Mann hat Verstand. This man has (a great deal of) common sense. Jugend und Güte sprachen aus ihren Zügen. Her features bespoke youth and kindness. Geld macht nicht glücklich. (Much) money does not make one happy.

D. THE ARTICLE BEFORE COMMON NOUNS.

Nouns of different gender, when used in connexion, require, in the singular, *their respective articles* or pronouns; as, Ich habe den Mann und die Frau gesehen. I have seen the man and the woman. Er reiste mit seinem Bruder, seiner Frau und seinen Kindern ab. He departed with his brother, wife, and children.

In enumerating objects and distinguishing them from each other, the article is repeated, even if their gender be the same; as, Der Bär, der Wolf, der Fuchs und der Fuchs sind die Raubthiere Europas. The bear, the wolf, the lynx and the fox are the beasts of prey of Europe. In the same manner, der Vater und der Sohn, the father and son; die Mutter und die Tochter, the mother and daughter; der Kaiser und der König, the emperor and the king, — in which the article must be REPEATED unless one individual is meant to represent more than one character; as, der Kaiser und König, the emperor-king; der König und Herr, the king and lord.

Phrases, like the above are, as in English, also used without the article; as, Vater und Sohn, father and son.

3. The article *must be used* CONTRACTED with the preposition zu after the verbs machen TO MAKE, TO CREATE, ernennen to nominate, TO APPOINT, erwählen to elect, be-

rufen *to give a call* (to a pastor, &c.), weihen *to ordain*, stempeln *to stamp, to stigmatize*; as,

Er machte sich zum Kaiser. He made himself emperor. Er wurde zum Offizier ernannt. He was appointed officer. Er ist zum Präsidenten erwählt. He has been elected president. Er ist zur Professur berufen. He has been chosen professor. Er ist zum Bischof geweiht. He has been ordained bishop. Dies stempelt ihn zum Betrüger. This stigmatizes him as a cheat. Sie ist zur Ehrendame ernannt. She has been appointed maid of honour. Also, Er nahm sie zur Frau, zum Weibe. He took her to wife.

In the PLURAL, however, the article is OMITTED; as, Er machte sie zu Knechten. He made them slaves, (reduced them to servitude). Sie wurden zu Råthen ernannt. They were appointed councillors.

Before possessive pronouns *zu* is used, of course, without the article; as, Sie machten sie zu ihrer Königin. They made her their queen. Ich machte ihn zu meinem Diener, zu meinem Freunde, &c. I made him my servant, my friend, &c. *Zu* is sometimes used with the indefinite article; as, Sie machen mich zu einem glücklichen Menschen. You make me a happy man.

4. After the verb *werden to become*, the article is used as above, contracted with *zu*, chiefly when the idea of a *reducing to, turning or changing into something bad*, is conveyed; as, Er wurde zum Bettler. He became a beggar, (was reduced to begging). Er wurde zum Betrüger, zum Verräther, zum Schurken. He became, or turned, a cheat, traitor, villain. — Before the names of MATERIALS the article is OMITTED; as, der Wein wurde zu Eiß. The wine turned vinegar. Diese schönen Hoffnungen wurden zu Wasser. These fine hopes vanished, went up in smoke.

5. The article is used, sometimes in contraction with prepositions, in phrases like the following: In der Stadt, in town; nach der Stadt or better in die Stadt, to town; nach der (zur) Schule, to school; in der Kirche, at church; in die (zur) Kirche, to church, (see p. 44, e) and in similar cases; as also, zur Vertheidigung, in defence; in der Gegenwehr, in self-defence; zum (zu dem) Trotz, in defiance; im Gegensatz zu, in opposition to; in

der Zeit, im Falle der Noth, in time of need, in case of necessity; in der Absicht, on purpose; &c., &c.

6. The article CANNOT BE OMITTED with the following terms, unless, as in Himmel und Erde, *heaven and earth*, several of them are used in connexion:

die Aristokratie aristocracy, das Frühstück breakfast, die Christenheit Christendom, das Christenthum Christianity, die Sitte custom, der Tod death, das Mittagessen dinner, die Erde earth, das Schicksal fate, das Glück fortune, die Regierung Government, der Himmel heaven, die Hölle hell, der Ehestand matrimony, die Monarchie monarchy, die Nachwelt posterity, das Paradies paradise, das Parlament Parliament, das Fegefeuer purgatory, das Abendessen supper, der Thee tea, die Vorsehung providence. *Some breakfast, some dinner is simply, Frühstück, Mittag.* Exclamations, as, Himmel! Heaven! have no article.

7. The DEFINITE ARTICLE is used for the English *indefinite* article before nouns denoting *weight, number, or measure* in the singular; as, *sixpence a piece*, fünf Groschen das Stück; *three shillings a pound*, einen Thaler das Pfund; *twice a-week*, zweimal die Woche; *half a guinea an ell*, einen Dukaten die Elle; einen Gulden das Hundert, *one florin a hundred*; zehn Thaler das Tausend, *thirty Shillings a thousand*. In the plural the article is omitted as in English: *You can buy them in dozens.* Sie können sie zu Duzenden kaufen.

SECTION XVIII. — ON THE USE OF THE CASES.

APPPOSITION.

A noun in apposition stands in the same case as the noun or pronoun to which it refers; as, *Nom.* Der Vater, ein wahrer Landmann, begrüßte mich herzlich. The father, an honest farmer, gave me a hearty welcome. *Gen.* Der Ruf dieser Dame, einer Freundin des Herzogs von Orleans, war nicht der beste. The reputation of this lady, a friend of the Duke of Orleans, was not the best. *Dat.* Sie können ihm, als einem geschickten Advokaten, Alles vertrauen. You can confide to him everything as to a clever advocate. *Acc.* Er verrieth den Ungläub-

lichen, den Bruder seiner Frau und seinen frühern Freund. He betrayed the unfortunate man, brother to his wife, and formerly his friend.

The *ordinal numbers* following the names of *sovereigns* take the case of the name. (See p. 102, Note 2).

THE NOMINATIVE.

Like the verb *sein to be*, a number of other verbs denoting different forms or modifications of *existence*, are followed by the nominative; as, Er ist (wird, bleibt, heißt, scheint, &c.), ein rechtschaffener Mensch. He is (becomes, remains, is called, seems, &c.) an upright man.

Note 1. The verb *werden to become*, is sometimes construed with *zu* and the dative. (See p. 140, 4).

Note 2. The phrase *es giebt, there is, there are, one gets, (il y a)* which is used where vagueness with regard to locality is expressed, changes the English nominative into an accusative; as, *Es giebt irgendwo einen Mann. There is a man somewhere.* This is owing to the verb *geben* (of which *giebt* is the 3^d pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. governing the accusative).

THE GENITIVE (POSSESSIVE).

This case, sometimes replaced by *von* with the dative, is used, A, as an Attribute; B, as Partitive; C, as the object governed by adjectives and verbs; D, in adverbial expressions, with or without the preposition.

A. THE ATTRIBUTE. 1. Where, in English, the preposition *of* indicates relationship, *possession*, authority, or agency, in German the MERE GENITIVE suffices; as, der Vater des Knaben, the father of the boy; die Schwester der Dame, the sister of the lady; das Buch des Freundes, the book of the friend; der Besitzer des Gartens, the proprietor of the garden; der Befehlshaber der Truppen, the commander of the troops; das Wort Gottes, the word of God; die Wirkung des Feuers, the effect of the fire.

Present Participles preceded by *or*, when employed as nouns, are rendered by the genitive of the infinitive used as a neuter noun; as, die Freude des Wiedersehens, the joy of meeting again; die Furcht des Verlierens, —

the fear of losing, — des Sterbens, of dying. But when the participle has the force of a verb governing an object, it is treated as stated in Section XXV, D, 4, *d* and *e*.

Chiefly with proper names and nouns indicating persons, the *genitive* may be placed first, as in English: Heinrichs Freunde, Henry's friends; Edwards Buch, Edward's book; Wilhelm's Vater, William's father; Mariens Schwester, Mary's sister; and even more extensively; as, Wellington's Thaten, the deeds of Wellington; Karls des Zweiten Tod, the death of Charles the Second; Jacobs des Ersten Regierung, the reign of James the First; likewise, des Vaters Zimmer, the father's room; meines Bruders Arbeit, my brother's work; auf ihrer Mutter Bitte, at her mother's request.

Note 1. Schiller's poems, especially, abound with genitives PRECEDING their complements, of which latter the article is omitted, and must in translating be supplied; as, in der Bräute Locken, in the locks of the brides; mit Feuers Hüfte, with the help of fire; in Schlafes Arm, in the arms of sleep; der Mutterliebe zarte Sorgen, the tender cares of maternal love.

By the *mere genitive* also, expressions like the following are rendered: *Sister to my wife*, meiner Frau Schwester; *Purveyor to the Queen*, Lieferant der Königin; (*purveyor of* is expressed by a compound; as, *purveyor of wine*, Weinlieferant).

Note 2. Expressions like, *a father to the poor*, *an enemy to cunning* &c., may be rendered by the *genitive*; as, ein Vater der Armen, ein Feind des Truges; but the dative, dem Armen ein Vater, dem Truge feind is more impressive. Sometimes the dative is even necessary to make a certain distinction as in the English *a friend to*, and *a friend of*: Dem Verfolgten ein Freund, *a friend to the persecuted man*; ein Freund des Verfolgten, *a friend of (one of the friends of) the persecuted man*.

2. The *genitive* is very extensively RENDERED BY THE FORMATION OF COMPOUNDS, (see Compound Nouns p. 132), with regard to which, however, the pupil is reminded that they frequently do not represent the ordinary sense of the two nouns in the attributive combination; as, Religionslehren, *dogmas, doctrines* of some religion (which may not even be of a truly religious

nature); *Lehren der Religion*, teachings of religion; — *das Vaterhaus* home, *das Haus des Vaters*, the house of, or simply, belonging to, the father; — *der Landesherr*, the native prince, sovereign; *der Herr des Landes*, the master (perhaps conqueror) of the land. The above might be termed *GENUINE* compound nouns, whilst others, like *Zettelanfleber* *billsticker*, *Bärenfell* *bear-skin*, are mere contractions of an attributive combination, and may be freely resolved into such; as, *Anfleber von Zetteln*, *sticker of bills*; *Fell eines Bären*, *skin of a bear*.

8. THE POSSESSIVE EXPRESSED BY *VON* WITH THE DATIVE.

a. The preposition *OF* must be rendered by the German *VON* with the dative, if the noun in the possessive stands *without any article* or pronoun; as, *im Besitze von Geld*, in possession of money; *in einem Aufsatze von Zorn*, in a fit of passion; *in einem Meere von Boine*, in a sea of joy; *Erbe von großen Gütern*, heir to large estates.

b. If, however, the noun without the article is PRECEDED BY AN ADJECTIVE, *OF* may be expressed either by the *mere genitive*, or by *VON* with the dative; as, *eine Reihe glücklicher*, or *eine Reihe von glücklichen Tagen*, a succession of happy days; *ein Schatz weiser Lehren*, a treasure of wise rules; also, *Vater von drei Kindern*, or *Vater dreier Kinder*, father of three children.

c. The Possessive expressing the CHARACTER or QUALITY of the complement, or the MATERIAL out of which a thing is made, is rendered by *VON* with the dative; as, *ein Mann von Grundsätzen*, *von Urtheil*, a man of principles, of judgement; *ein Herr von hohem Range*, a gentleman of high rank; *ein Ereignis von größter Bedeutung*, an event of the greatest importance; *ein Buch von geringem Verdienste*, a book of little merit; *ein Gefäß von geschliffenem Crystall*, a vessel of cut crystal; *ein Wamms von Gamsleder*, a doublet of chamois-leather; *ein Kranz von Feldblumen*, a wreath of field-flowers.

d. The CARDINAL NUMERALS above drei *three*, are indeclinable, and their possessive can be expressed by von only; as, ein Gefolge von sechs Dienern, a retinue of six servants; die Hälfte von sieben, the half of seven; der dritte Theil von zehn, the third part of ten.

Note 3. The MERE GENITIVE of the SUBSTANTIVE, however, is used after der Theil *the part*, die Hälfte *the half*, and after fractions; as, ein Theil des Jahres, Monats &c., a part of the year, month &c.; die Hälfte des Landes, the half of the land; ein Viertel der Zeit, the fourth part of the time.

Note 4. After the word Monat and in dates, the NAME OF THE MONTH remains *unaltered*; as, im Monat Mai, in the Month of May; den dreizehnten März, the thirteenth of March; am fünfundzwanzigten Juni, on the twentyfifth of June.

e. Proper names of places, especially those, ending in s or ß form the possessive with von (See p. 134 *b* and Note 4); as, die Umgebung von Paris *the environs of Paris*, von Dresden or Dresdens *of Dresden*.

f. With the RULERS and GOVERNMENTS of countries von is used: as, die Königin von Großbritannien, the Queen of Great Britain; der Prinz von Preußen, the Prince of Prussia; der Statthalter von Irland, the Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. (Die Könige Roms, the kings of Rome).

Note 5. In poetical and rhetorical language, however, the name of the country in the genitive often precedes the title of the ruler; as, Englands Königin, Englands Queen; Deutschland's Fürsten, Germany's rulers.

g. Feminine names of countries (which always must be preceded by the article) express the Possessive by the GENITIVE; as, der große Rath der Schweiz, the Grand Council of Switzerland; der Kaiser der Türkei, the Turkish Emperor; der Divan der hohen Pforte, the Divan of the Sublime Porte. Notice also, der Kaiser der Franzosen, the Emperor of the French; der Selbstherr aller Russen, the Autocrat of all the Russians; der König der Belgier, the King of the Belgians.

B. THE PARTITIVE. There is in German no Partitive in the strict sense of the French "*Donnez moi du pain et de la viande.*"

1. Nor is the Partitive of *names of materials* expressed in common language after the terms stating the amount, measure, weight of a substance, or after the expressions by which articles are commonly counted, (such as pair, dozen, score) the name of the material or article remaining altogether unaltered; as, eine Menge, ein Haufen Nüsse, a large number, a heap of nuts; eine Menge Honig, a quantity of honey; eine Anzahl Kartoffeln, a number of potatoes; ein Glas Wein, a glass of wine; ein Trunk Wasser, a drink of water; eine Tasse Kaffee, a cup of coffee; ein Sack Mehl, a bag of flour; eine Tonne Kohlen, a ton of coals; ein Korb Kirichen, a basket of cherries; drei Pfund Zucker, three pounds of sugar, (see Section XIX, Use of the Numbers, 3); drei Ellen Band, three ells (two yards) of ribbon; ein Paar Handschuhe, a pair of gloves; ein Duzend Servietten, a dozen of table-napkins; ein Trupp Soldaten, a troop of soldiers; ein Pack, Stoß, Bücher, a parcel of books.

Even after Art, Gattung, *species, kind*, the noun remains occasionally unaltered; as, jede Art Menschen, every kind (manner) of men; eine gewisse Gattung Insekten, a certain species of insects; dieser Schlag Leute, this set (class, race) of people. THE LESS DEFINITE, however, such terms of numbering are, the more common is the use of von with the dative; as, eine Gruppe, ein Haufe, eine Menge, eine Art, eine Classe, ein Schlag von Leuten.

Note 1. In POETICAL and SOLEMN language, however, and when to the noun after any of the above terms a (poetically) DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVE is added the Partitive is frequently expressed by the genitive; as, Laß mir den besten Becher Weins in purem Golde reichen, (*Goethe*). Let them reach to me the best beaker of wine in pure gold. Ein Trunk frischen Wassers, a drink of fresh water; eine Schale süßer Milch, a bowl of sweet milk; eine Menge reifer Äpfel, a number of ripe apples; ein Korb köstlicher Trauben, a basket of delicious grapes.

2. The adjective voll, (sometimes voller) *full of* is used with any of the above forms of the Partitive; as, die Taschen voll Geld, the pockets full of money.

Er ist voller Zuversicht, He is full of confidence; voller Eifer, full of zeal; voll des heiligen Geistes, (full of) filled with the Holy Ghost. Sie sind voll süßen Weins. These men are full of new wine (Acts II). Voll von and voller express abundance; as, eine Wiese voll von Blumen, a meadow full of flowers; voller Fehler or voll von Fehlern, full of mistakes. (See below C, 1).

3. The partitive possessive of the PERSONAL PRONOUN, as expressed by von with the dative, is fully explained p. 59, 3 and 4. Other pronouns also are used in the partitive with von and the dative; as, viele von denjenigen, many of those. Soll ich einen von diesen oder von jenen nehmen? Shall I take one of these or of those?

4. The DEMONSTRATIVE ders, dies, dasselbe, often replacing the PERSONAL pronoun, expresses the Partitive by the genitive; as, Viele derselben, many of them; genug derselben, enough of them; or, in the shorter form, deren genug, enough of them. (See p. 58, 59, 1, 2, 3).

5. With NOUNS preceded by an article or pronoun, either the genitive or von may be used to express the Partitive, but von is more common before a pronoun; as, einer der Knaben, one of the boys; einer von diesen Knaben, one of these boys; — particularly after a pronoun ending in er; as, welcher von jenen Männern, which of those men, — not, welcher jener Männer.

C. THE GENITIVE AS THE OBJECT is governed.

1. By the following ADJECTIVES; as, des Glaubens bar, void of faith. Sind Sie Ihrer Sache sicher? Are you sure of the thing?

The adjectives marked *, govern also the accusative, and on the whole the adjectives and verbs given in the following lists are not precluded from being variously construed. Sometimes they occur only in one or two phrases with the case stated in the list. The pupil should, therefore understand that the lists in this section are mainly for grammatical reference in reading and that for the purposes of composition he cannot dispense with the careful use of a good dictionary.

- anſichtig, (with werden & ſein), getting or having ſight of.
 bar, void of.
 bedürftig, in need of.
 beſiſſen, engaged in the ſtudy of.
 benöthigt, in want of.
 bewußt, conſcious of.
 eingeſent, mindful of.
 ungeeignet, forgetful of.
 fähig, capable of.
 unfähig, not capable of.
 froh, glad of, enjoying.
 *gewahrt, aware, ſenſible of.
 gewärtig, in expectation of, ready for.
 gewiß, certain of.
 *gewohnt, accuſtomed, inured to.
 habhaft, with werden & ſein, getting or having poſſeſſion or hold of.
 *inne, alive to, ſenſible of.
 kundig, to know, to be well acquainted with.
 unfundig, ignorant of.
 ledig, free of.
 *loß, (with the Gen. of the pers. Pron., elſe with the Acc.), rid of.
 mächtig, maſter of.
 müde, tired of.
 quitt, quit of.
 *ſatt, ſatiated, ſick of.
 ſicher, ſure of.
 ſchuldig, guilty of.
 theilhaft, } participant of, par-
 theilhaftig, } taking in.
 *überdriſſig, weary of.
 verdächtig, ſuſpected of.
 verluſtig, forfeiting, deprived of.
 *voll, full of, (ſee p. 146, 2).
 *werth, worth.
 würdig, worthy of.
 unwürdig, unworthy of.

The genitive after the adjectives *genug* enough, *viel* much, and *zu viel* too much is partitive; as, *genug des Geredes*, enough of talking; *mir ward des Lärmens zu viel*, the noiſe became too much for me; *deſſen, deren genug*, enough of it, of them; (*genug davon*).

2. The genitive as THE ONLY OBJECT is required by the following verbs of which thoſe marked * are commonly uſed with the accuſative. — e. g. *Genieße nun des Werks, das uns erfreut!* (*Goethe*). *Enjoy then the work which delights us.* Or with the accuſative, *das Glück, das wir genießen*, the happineſs we enjoy. Likewise, *Er hat keinen Biſſen geſſen.* *He has not enjoyed (eaten) a morsel.* *Ich achtete des Schmerzes* (or *den Schmerz*) *nicht.* *I did not heed the pain.* *Dieſe Behauptung ermangelt des Grundes.* *This aſſertion is void of foundation.*

(Theſe verbs govern the genitive only when uſed in the ſenſe here given).

- * achten, to heed.
- * Acht haben, to attend to.
- * bedürfen, to need, to require.
- * begehren, to desire, to covet.
- * brauchen (impers.) to be required.
- * entbehren, to be without, to be destitute of.
- entrathen, to dispense with.
- ermangeln, to be without, to be void of.
- * erwähnen, to mention.
- denken, { to remember.
- gedenken, }
- * genießen, to enjoy, (something morally, else with Acc.).
- harren, to wait, hope for.
- lachen, to laugh at, to scorn.
- * pflegen, to take care of, to cherish.
- * schonen, to spare, to treat leniently.
- spotten, to scorn.
- * verfehlen, to miss.
- * vergessen, to forget, to be forgetful of.
- * wahrnehmen, to avail oneself of.
- * warten, to attend to, to wait.

3. The GENITIVE OF THE THING *along with the accusative of the person* is required by the following verbs mostly in the sense of *accusing of, divesting, deposing of, freeing from*. With some of them the *dative*, governed by *von*, is more commonly used instead of the genitive. When this is the case, *von* is marked in the List. Examples: *Man beschuldigte, bezüchtigte, zieht ihn der Unredlichkeit. They (one) charged him with dishonesty. Er wurde des Diebstahls angeklagt. He was accused of theft. Dies würde mich der Verantwortlichkeit entheben, entladen, entlasten. This would free me from the responsibility. Er entband ihn seines Eides und Versprechens. He released him from his oath and promise. Er wurde seines Amtes entlassen or entsetzt. He was dismissed from, deposed, his office; der Fälschung überführt, convicted of forgery.*

- anklagen, to accuse of.
- belehren (eines Andern, Bessern) to disabuse.
- berauben, to deprive of.
- beschuldigen, to accuse of.
- bezüchtigen, to accuse of.
- entbinden (von), to release from.
- entblößen (von), (in the past Part.) destitute of.
- entheben, to exempt, to free.
- entkleiden, to divest.
- entladen (von), to discharge, free from.
- entlassen (von) to dismiss.
- entlasten, to exonerate.
- entledigen, to ease, free from, acquit of.
- entsetzen, to depose.
- entwöhnen, to disaccustom.
- überführen, to convict of.
- überheben, to excuse from, to spare.

überzeugen (von), to convince of. würdigen, to deign, to honour
 versichern (von), to assure of. with.
 verweisen (des Landes), to banish zeihen, to accuse, to impute.
 the country.

4. The GENITIVE AS THE OBJECT is required by the following *reflective* verbs, several of which cannot be used reflectively in English; e. g., Wir nahmen uns des Kindes an. *We interested ourselves in (we protected) the child.* Ich beuge mich meiner Rechte. *I waive my claims.*

sich annehmen, to interest oneself in, to assist.	sich entsinnen, to recollect.
sich bedienen, to make use of, to avail oneself of.	sich erbarmen, to have mercy upon.
sich bestreuen, to apply oneself to, to study.	sich erfreuen, to enjoy.
sich begeben, to give up, to waive.	sich erinnern, to remember.
sich bemächtigen, to make oneself master of, to seize.	sich erwehren, to keep off, to resist.
sich bemühen, to make oneself master over, to seize.	sich freuen, to rejoice in.
sich befinnen, only in the phrase, sich eines Andern, Bessern befinnen, to bethink oneself better.	sich getrösten, to expect hopefully.
sich entäußern, to give up, to resign.	sich rühmen, to boast of.
sich entbreßen, (quaint), to refrain from.	sich schämen, to be ashamed of.
sich enthalten, to abstain from.	sich überheben, to uplift oneself, to be vain of.
sich entschlagen, to free, rid oneself of (thoughts etc.).	sich vermessen, to profess boastingly (a deed).
	sich versehen, to expect (something) of.
	sich wehren, to resist (sich seiner Haut —, to defend one's life).
	sich weigern, to refuse.
	sich wundern, only in the phrase, sich des Todes wundern, to wonder beyond measure.

The following, which have all nearly the same meaning, occur only with *wessen*, in rather awkward phrases like the following: *Wessen erdreissen sie sich?* What liberty are you taking? What do you presume? *sich erdreissen, sich erfrechen, sich erlauben, sich unterfangen, sich unterwinden.*

5. The Genitive is used rather predicatively with the verbs *sein to be, bleiben to remain, werden to become*, in the phrases, *der Ansicht, der Meinung sein &c.*, to be &c., of opinion; *des Glaubens, der Ueberzeugung, der Zuversicht sein &c.*, to be &c. of the belief, persuasion, to be confident.

D. THE GENITIVE IN ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.

1. The Genitive is governed by the PREPOSITIONS stated p. 37.

2. By the *adverbs* *hinsichts* or *hinsichtlich*, and *rücksichtlich*, with regard to, regarding, as to; *inmitten*, in the midst of; as, *hinsichtlich deines Besuchs*, regarding your visit; *rücksichtlich des Geldpunktes*, as to the money-question. *Inmitten dieser Pläne* ereilte ihn der Tod. In the midst of these projects death overtook him.

3. Indefinite *time when* is put in the genitive; as, *des Morgens*, in the morning; *des Abends*, in the evening; (improperly, *des Nachts*, by night); *des Sommers*, in the summer; *des Winters*, in winter; also, *eines Morgens*, one morning; *eines Nachmittags*, one afternoon. (Comp. p. 46, b.).

4. The Genitive is used to indicate adverbially *mood* and *manner*; as, *reinen Herzens*, with a pure heart; *leichten Muthes*, with an easy mind; *stolzen Sinnes*, with a high spirit; *unverzagten Geistes*, with an undaunted spirit &c. Farther, *allen Ernstes*, in all earnest, *meinerseits* on my part; *Ihrerseits* on your part, &c.; *meines Erachtens* or *Dafürhaltens*, according to my opinion; *meines Wissens*, to my knowledge, so far as I know; *unverrichteter Sache*, without effecting one's purpose; *stehenden Fußes*, immediately "as I was;" *gerades Weges*, straightway, directly, unhesitatingly; *verabredeter Maßen*, according to agreement; *glücklicherweise* fortunately, &c.

5. The genitive occurs in *exclamations of lament*, (formerly governed by *ob about*); as, *O, dieses Zwists!* O, this discord! *O, dieser Leidenschaft*, Ah, this passion!

6. The genitive is peculiar to the idioms, *des Glaubens*, der Hoffnung leben, to live in the belief, in the hope; *der Ueberzeugung* sterben, to die in the conviction; *des Todes* verbleichen, to depart this life; *eines &c. Todes* sterben, to die a, &c. death; *des Weges* kommen, to come along the road; *seiner Wege* gehen, to walk off.

THE DATIVE.

(The dative is also called the person-case, because, in German, there is understood by it the person (or being &c.), to whose advantage or prejudice the action expressed by the verb tends. As this definition is not applicable to the English language, the pupil must carefully ascertain the use of the dative from the following rules and lists).

1. THE DATIVE AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT.

*Transitive verbs**), generally speaking, are such as require an object, *usually in the accusative*; as, Ich fand den Ring. *I found the ring.* Sentences like this are logically complete, wanting no essential part.

But sentences, formed with the verbs expressing GIVING, would not be complete with only *one* object; as, *I gave a ring*, because those verbs of GIVING, and in many cases their opposites, expressing a TAKING FROM, require besides the direct object or thing given or taken, *a second object*, the PERSON (being &c.), TO WHOM the thing is given, or FROM WHOM it is taken. This indirect or remote OBJECT is in the DATIVE case.

Verbs of this kind are the following, many of which in German have the force of the English verb, taken in connexion with the preposition adjoined in the List:

AFFIRMATIVELY.

geben, to give.
leihen, { (indiscriminately).
borgen, { to lend or to borrow.

NEGATIVELY.

nehmen, to take from.

* As the distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs in German Grammar is rather a nice one, (transitive verbs, strictly speaking, being only such as govern an accusative, whilst the object of many verbs called transitive in English, such as, *to thank, to threaten, to believe, to obey, to follow, to answer* (see List I), would be a German dative; and these verbs themselves Intransitives in German), the author has used the terms transitive and intransitive in the English acceptation, the former for verbs requiring an object, the latter for such as do not ordinarily govern an object. This arrangement has the advantage of saving the pupil unnecessary confusion whilst serving all practical purposes. The difficulty, however, would be altogether avoided, were English Grammars to adopt the terms *objective verbs* for verbs requiring an object, and *subjective verbs* for those which have no object, as already in use in German Grammar.

senden (refined)	} to send.	
schicken (common language)		
bringen, to bring, to take (something to some one).		holen, to fetch.
schenken, to present with.		stehlen, to steal from.
versprechen, } to promise.		rauben, to rob from.
zusagen, }		verweigern, to refuse
zeigen, }		bergen, }
weisen, }		verbergen, }
fagen, (when in the sense of) to tell.		to conceal from.
erzählen, to narrate, to tell.	}	verschweigen, to keep silence about, not to tell.
mittheilen, to tell, communicate.		
anvertrauen, to entrust.		verheimlichen, to keep secret from.
erlauben, }		verbieten, to forbid.
gestatten, }		
bieten, }		vorenthalten, to retain, withhold.
anbieten, }		ab schlagen, to refuse.
gewähren, to grant, to afford.		entziehen, to deprive of.
zumenden, to bestow upon.		mißgönnen, to grudge (some one something).
gönnen, not to envy, (but rather) to rejoice in some one's happiness		nachsehen, to consider inferior.
verzichten, to prefer.		verwerfen, to rebuke with, (lit. to throw before).
hoch anrechnen, to give much credit for.		

Other verbs of this kind, or verbs, only *occasionally* used with a direct and an indirect object, the pupil will readily construe, guided by their analogy with the above. — (About *lehren* to teach, *nennen*, *heißen*, *schelten*, *schimpfen* to call, to call abusively, and *lassen* to let, see p. 164 Note 1 and 2).

a. The direct object in the accusative, and the indirect object in the dative are *simple cases*, that is, they are *not* introduced by prepositions; as, Ich gab meinem Freunde den Ring. I gave (to) my friend the ring. (As to their position, see Section XXX, C).

b. When a sentence, the verb of which expresses *giving* &c., is construed in the PASSIVE VOICE, the direct object in the accusative is changed into a *nominative*, the subject is expressed by *von* (*by*) with the dative, but the *indirect object remains unaltered* in the DATIVE

case; as, Der Ring wurde dem Kinde von seinem Vater gegeben, the ring was given *to the child* by his father; for, Der Vater gab dem Kinde den Ring, the father gave (*to*) *the child* the ring. The pupil will see, that, owing to the strict preservation of this dative in the passive voice, constructions like the following, occurring in English, are *impossible in German*: I was promised a gift. (Mir wurde ein Geschenk versprochen). He was offered a situation. (Ihm wurde eine Stelle angeboten). She was told, advised, (Ihr wurde gesagt, gerathen); &c. &c.

c. The above rules explain the use of the dative with many reflexive verbs, the reflexive pronoun of which in the accusative represents the direct object; as, Ich unterzog mich diesem Gesähte. I undertook (devoted *myself* to) this task. Napoleon ergab sich den Engländern. Napoleon surrendered (gave *himself* up) to the English. Here den 'Engländern' is the *indirect* object in the dative.

In other reflexive verbs, the reflexive pronoun represents the indirect object in the dative; as, Er maßte sich den Thron an. He arrogated *to himself* the throne; den Thron, in the accusative, being the direct object. Ich nahm mir diesen Schritt vor. I proposed *to myself* this step; mir being the indirect, and diesen Schritt the direct object.

Reflexive verbs of this kind are, sich aneignen to acquire, to appropriate, sich anmaßen to arrogate to oneself, sich ausbitten to ask for oneself, sich denken (sich einbilden, sich vorstellen) to fancy, to imagine, sich erwerben to acquire, to earn, sich herausnehmen to presume, (to take a liberty), sich vornehmen to propose to oneself, sich zueignen to appropriate, to oneself.

2. The dative of the person &c. acted upon, is required as the object by the following transitive (objective) verbs, which admit of being construed in the passive voice in which case the dative is strictly preserved; as, Mein Kind, gehorche deinem Vater. *My child, obey thy father.* — Man dankte mir nicht. *They did*

not thank me. Passively: *Mir wurde nicht gedankt. I got no thanks.* — *Wer dem Vaterlande dient, dient der Menschheit. He who serves his country, serves mankind.* Passively: *Durch nationalen Dünkel wird weder dem Vaterlande, noch der Menschheit gedient. By national conceit neither one's country, nor mankind are served.*

(The verbs in the List govern the dative mainly in the application indicated by the English verb, but are differently construed, when used with another meaning.)

(A few verbs, contained in the List are liable to be construed both with the thing in the Acc. and the person in the Dat., but are introduced here because they more generally occur with the Dat. of the person only; such are *danke* to *thank*, which occurs in the sense of *verdanken* to *owe*; as, *Ich danke dir mein Leben, I owe you my life*; but is more generally used in sentences like, *Danket dem Herrn. Praise the Lord. Ich danke Dir. I thank you*; — *rathen* to *advise*, *erlauben* to *permit*, *glauben* to *believe* &c.).

abbitten, to beg pardon (for an insult).

abhefeln, to remedy, correct (a fault a want).

abratzen, to dissuade.

anliegen, to solicit, to sue.

antworten, to answer (a person); auf Acc. a letter &c.

auffelsen, to help up, aid.

aufschauern, to waylay.

aufpassen, to watch, spy.

aufwarten, to wait on, serve.

aushefeln, to help, accommodate with.

ausweichen, to give way, avoid.

begegnen, to treat (kindly, harshly), to meet.

beistimmen, to agree with (in an opinion).

beistpringen, to succour.

beistehen, to aid.

beistimmen, to assent, consent.

beitreten, to assent, join.

bürgen (für), to guarantee, to answer for.

danke, to thank, to owe.

dienen, to serve.

drohen, to threaten.

einstehe (für), to be surety for, to answer.

einwenden or *werfen*, to make objections.

erlauben, to permit.

fluchen, to curse.

folgen, to follow.

fröhnen, to be a slave to, to indulge in.

gebieten, to command.

gehören, to obey.

glauben, to believe.

grollen, to bear a grudge.

hefeln, to help, aid.

huldigen, to do homage.

hofschen, to listen (admirably or secretly).

lächeln, (zulächeln), to smile on.

leuchten, to light, hold a light, to shine on.

loohnen, to reward.

nachahmen, to imitate, copy.

nachäffen, to ape, mimic.

nachbeten, to copy, echo.

nachdenken, (a subject) to reflect upon.

nachhersehen, to search after, (investigate).

nachsehen, to emulate, vie with.

nachgeben, to yield.

nachrufen, to call out after.

nachsehen, } to look out after
nachbliden, } or behind.
nachschauen, &c. }

nachsetzen, to pursue, to give chase.

nachspüren, to trace, to track.

nachspotten, to repeat mockingly, to mimic.

nachstellen, to lay snares for.

nahe, to approach, to run near.

nützen, to be of use, to do good.

rathen, to advise, to counsel.

rufen, to call, to cry.

schaden, to harm, injure.

schmeicheln, to flatter.

steuern, (a mischievous) to repress,
put a stop to, — to pay contributions.

(ver-)trauen, to trust in.

trogen, to defy.

versichern, (sometimes with the Acc.) to assure.

verzeihen, to pardon.

verarbeiten, to pave the way for.

vorhauen and } to prevent,
vorbeugen (a danger) } obviate.

vorgrreifen, to forestall, anticipate.

vorleuchten, to shine before, to set an example. [manage.

verstehen, to rule, superintend, to

maße- and weisagen, to prophesy.

wehren, to hinder, to check.

weichen, to yield, give way.

widersprechen, to contradict.

widerstehen, to resist.

widerstreben, to strive against.

willfahren, to yield to.

winfen, to beckon, to motion to.

wohlwollen and übelwollen, to wish one well or ill.

zublinzeln, to wink to.

zuhören, to listen to.

zujuchzen and jubeln, to hail with shouts, to cheer.

zureden, to try to persuade.

zunichten, to greet with a nod.

zusprechen, to talk encouragingly, — to do justice (to a dish &c.).

zürnen, to be angry with.

zusehen, to watch, look at (one's doings).

zufehen, to importune.

zutrinken, to drink to some one's health.

zuvorkommen, to forestall.

zuminken, to motion to.

Note. Many of the verbs in the above and in the following lists are used with the PREFIX *be* and then require the ACCUSATIVE. The prefix, however, often alters the meaning; as, *folgen* (Dat.) *to follow* (either a person or a rule (&c.)), *befolgen* (Acc.) *to follow* (rules, principles, but not persons or objects); *antworten* (Dat.) *to answer*, *to reply* (to a person), *beantworten* (Acc.) *to answer* (a letter, question, request &c., but not a person).

The pupil is reminded that the following verbs are construed with the dative, only when used in the sense given in the Lists; these are placed beside each other to facilitate reference.

3. The following verbs, (of which no passive voice can be formed), govern the DATIVE OF THE PERSON; (often the English Nominative); as, *Ich begegnete ihm* or *Er be-*

4. The following IMPERSONAL verbs (see Section XXVII) and verbs used only in the third person, govern the DATIVE, generally of THE PERSON, which is fre-

gegnete mir auf der Straße.
*I met him or He met me
 in the street. Du fehlst mir
 überall. I miss you every-
 where. Er gefällt mir nicht.
 I do not like him.*

absterben, to become dead to.
 ähneln, to resemble slightly.
 angehören, to belong to.
 anhängen, to adhere, stick to.
 anschließen (sich), to attach oneself
 to, to join.
 auffallen, to strike, to appear
 strange.
 begegnen, to meet, (to treat).
 bechagen, to please, to gratify.
 beifallen, to side with.
 beikommen, to get at.
 beiwohnen, to be present at, to be
 inherent in.
 bleiben, to be left, to remain.
 büßen, (für) to pay for, (to smart
 for).
 eilen, to hasten away from, to
 disappear rapidly.
 entfliehen, to flee from, to run
 away from.
 entgehen, to escape, to elude.
 entgelten, to pay for, (to smart for).
 entkommen, to escape.
 entlaufen, to desert, to run away.
 entsagen, to renounce, to resign.
 entschweben, } to soar away
 entschwinden (sich), } from.
 entschwinden, to vanish from.
 entspringen, } to escape.
 entweichen, }
 entweichen, to escape, to withdraw
 from, and other verbs, expressing
 motion and formed with the pre-
 fixes
 ent and entgegen, as,
 entgegenzueilen, to hasten to meet.
 entgegengehen, to go to meet.
 entgegenkommen, to come to meet,
 &c. &c.

quently rendered by a nom-
 inative in English; as,
 Ihm fehlt Geld. *He lacks
 money. Es glückte mir ihn
 zu finden. I succeeded (was
 lucky) in finding him.*

abgehen, es geht mir ab, I want,
 (I lack).
 es ahnt mir, I have a presenti-
 mate.
 es schwant mir (quaint), I fore-
 bode.
 anheimfallen, to fall to, to devolve
 upon.
 anstehen, to stick to, to adhere to
 (a fault).
 (ankommen). Es kommt mir (auf
 das Ding) an. (The thing)
 matters to me.
 anstehen, to suit, to please.
 aufstoßen, to light on.
 es bangt mir (ver), I am afraid,
 anxious about.
 es begegnet mir, it happens to me.
 es fällt mir bei, it occurs to me,
 I recollect.
 es bekommt mir, it agrees with me.
 es besieht mir, I chose, please.
 bevorstehen, to be near or im-
 pending.
 es deutet mir, }
 es dünkt mir (or mich), } methinks.
 es fällt mir ein, it occurs to me.
 es geht mir (nicht) ein, it does
 (not) take with me.
 es leuchtet mir ein, it is clear, ob-
 vious to me.
 es eßelt mir (or mich) ver, I loathe.
 entfallen, to fall from, out of.
 es entfällt mir, I forgot.
 entfahen, to slip out of, (words,
 sighs).
 entfließen, =quellen, =rauschen, =sel-
 len, =strömen, &c. to flow, gush,
 rush, roll, stream, &c. from, out
 of.

- erliegen, to succumb to.
 erscheinen, to appear, to seem.
 fehlen, to be wanting.
 fügen (sich), to accomodate oneself to.
 gefallen, to please.
 genügen, to suffice, to satisfy.
 gleichen, to be like, to resemble.
 gleichkommen (or sein) to be equal to.
 mißfallen, to displease.
 nacharten, to take after, to resemble.
 nachhelfen, to hasten after.
 nachgehen, to go after, to follow, to prosecute.
 nachhängen, to give oneself up to (a frame of mind &c.).
 nachkommen, to come after, up with, to comply with.
 nachlaufen, to run after, and other verbs with the prefix *nach* and expressing motion.
 nachstehen, to be inferior to.
 obliegen, to study, — to be incumbent upon.
 scheinen, to seem.
 sein (Sinem Etwas), to be (something to some one).
 unterliegen, to succumb.
 verfallen, to fall to, to become liable to.
 Verbs expressing motion, composed with *voran* & *voraus* at the head of, *voraus* in advance, before, and *vorbei* & *vorüber* past; as,
voran, *vorausziehen*, to march at the head of.
vorausgehen, to go before.
vorbei, *vorüberreiten*, *kommen*, to hasten or come past.
vorkommen, to appear to.
vorleuchten, to shine before, to set an example.
werden (Sinem Etwas), to become something to some one.
- es fällt mir schwer (leicht), I feel, find it difficult (easy).
 was fehlt dir? what ails you? what is the matter with you?
 es fehlt mir an, I want (I lack).
 schief schlagen, to prove a failure.
 es steht mir frei, I am at liberty to, I am free to.
 es gebricht mir an, I want (I lack), I am deficient in.
 gebühren, to be due to.
 es gefällt mir in, I like (a country, place).
 es geht mir gut (schlecht), I am faring well, getting on well, (badly).
 gehören, to belong to, to be requisite to.
 gelingen, to succeed, to turn out a success.
 (eine Sache [Nem.] gelingt, glückt, geräth einer Person [Dat.], a person succeeds, is successful with a thing).
 genügen, to suffice.
 gerathen, see *gelingen*.
 gereichen, to turn out, to redound.
 es geschieht mir, it happens to me.
 es geschieht mir recht, it serves me right.
 es geziemt mir, it befits, behoves me.
 es glückt mir, I am lucky with it, I succeed, (see *gelingen*).
 es graut (graust) mir vor, I have an aversion to (horror of).
 es kommt mir zu statten, &c., it is of use, of service to me.
 es läßt mir, (colloquially, of dresses), it becomes me.
 es liegt mir daran, it matters to me, is of consequence to me.
 (es liegt an, the fault is).
 es liegt mir fern, it is far from me, (to do &c.).
 es mangelt mir an, I want, (I lack).

wehthun, to do good, to be beneficial to.
zugehören, to belong to.

The dative occurs also in the following idioms: wenn dem so ist, if so; wie dem auch sei, or sei dem nun wie ihm welle, however that may be; Heil (sei dir)! hail (to you)! likewise Wehl (dir)! well (for you)! Wehe (mir)! woe (is me)!

Note 1. Besides the above verbs, there are a number of compound verbal expression governing the dative, the first component or adverbial portion of which is used like a separable prefix, (see Section XX, a, and Section XXX, D); as, den Hof machen, to pay court, to curry favor with; Jemanden (Dat.) zu Hülfe kommen, to succour, to come to the rescue of some one; zur Last legen, to charge with; zu Leibe gehen, to attack; zu Munde reden, to speak to any one's liking; Jemanden (Dat.) Rede stehen, to give an answer, explanation to some one; Jemanden (Dat.) zur Seite stehen, to assist, to support; zu Theil werden, to fall to one's lot; Trotz bieten and Hohn sprechen, to defy, to scoff at; das Wort reden, to advocate; zuwider handeln, to contravene; &c. &c.

The dative, in such expressions, partly bears the character of an indirect object, and partly is governed by the preposition; as, in, zu Hülfe kommen, zu Leibe gehen.

mißgelingen, } to prove a failure, to
mißlingen, } miscarry.
mißrathen, }

es paßt mir, it fits me well.

es schaudert mir vor, I shudder at.

es schwindelt mir (bei), my head turns at.

(schmecken, to be of [some] taste).

es schmeckt mir, I like (a dish, &c.).

schwanken, see ahnen.

(sein), es ist mir als ob, I feel as if.

es ist mir gut, schlecht zu Muth, I feel well, ill, &c. &c. mir ist kalt, warm, I feel cold, warm.

figen and stehen, (of dresses) to suit, to fit.

(thun), es thut mir leid, I am sorry for.

es thut mir weh, it pains, grieves me.

es thut mir wehl, it does me good, it gratifies me.

träumen (also personal, and also impers. with the Acc.) to dream.

es vergeht mir (die Lust, der Muth &c.), I lose my relish, courage &c.

es verfährt mir Nichts (viel), It matters to me nothing, (much); it makes a difference.

vorhergehen, to precede.

es kommt mir vor, It seems to me, I have some notion.

es scheint mir vor, I have a vague idea.

werden (es wird mir), mir wird, I feel, or rather, I begin to feel; as, warm, cold, sick, alarmed, in great trepidation; mir ward (ein Glück, ein Freund), there fell to my lot, was granted to me (a happiness, a friend).

widersfahren, to happen to.

es widersteht mir, it loathes me.

es ziemt mir, it befits, behoves me.

zufallen, to fall to one's lot, share.

zuflicßen, to flow in abundantly.

zugehen and zukommen to reach,
(of letters, news).

es kommt mir zu, it behoves me
I have a right or duty to.

zustehen, to be competent to.

Note 2. The DATIVE OF THE PERSON instead of the English POSSESSIVE OR POSSESSIVE PRONOUN. By the dative of the person, as a secondary object, in German, the relation to the conscious individual of such acts as seem to affect more directly his PARTS OR PROPERTY, is more precisely established than in English, where the possessive case of the noun, or the possessive pronoun, is used for this purpose. Compare, Sie legt den Kranz der kranken Freundin auf das Bett (which involves the absolute presence of the sick friend in the bed) to, Sie legt den Kranz auf der kranken Freundin Bett, she puts the wreath on the sick friend's bed, (the sick friend being possibly absent); Der Arzt untersuchte ihm die Brust with, Der Arzt untersuchte seine Brust, the physician examined his chest, (the latter possibly referring to a *post mortem* examination, the idea of which is decidedly excluded by the former). Similarly, Er lief seinem Herrn fort. He ran away from his master. Ich wasche mir die Hände. I wash my hands. (But figuratively, as in Matth. XXVII, 24, Ich wasche meine Hände.) Er läßt sich die Haare schneiden. He gets his hair cut. Wer hat mir den Stock zerbrochen? Who has broken my stick?

Note 3. The ETHICAL DATIVE. The dative of the first and second person is sometimes used to express the moral interest which the speaker takes in an action, or which he wishes to excite in the hearer for an action expressed by a verb otherwise not requiring the dative, somewhat similar to the English phrase; Do me that nicely! *Mache mir Das recht hübsch!* Compare Numbers, XX, 6: Curse me this people). Examples. *Stirb mir nicht!* Don't die! (I want you to live). *Seid mir recht artig, ihr Kinder!* Be very good, ye children! (I heartily wish you to be so). *Daß mir keiner auf's Eis geht!* (I am anxious) lest one of you should go on the ice. *Das war Ihnen ein Spaß!* I assure you it was capital fun! *Da gab es Euch ein Spektakel!* there was a row, I tell you! *Das soll Ihnen ein Fest werden!* we will make that a feast, I assure you!

5. The dative of the person &c. is required.

a. By the PARTICIPLES of the verbs, given in the above lists, when used as adjectives.

b. By the SUPERLATIVE of any adjective or adverb formed with the particle *zu* too? as, *Das ist mir zu hoch.* That is too high for me. *Das dauert mir zu lange.* That takes too much time, (is too long for me). *Du kommst mir zu oft.* You come too often. *Der Hut ist mir zu groß.* The hat is too large for me.

c. By the following ADJECTIVES, (among which will be found some PARTICIPLES of verbs otherwise requiring the accusative), and by their NEGATIVES formed with the prefix *un* *un*: —

The following list contains a number of adjectives with which the dative is used only when they are specially applied to a person, and when they are construed in English with the preposition *to*; as, *Die Sache war mir ärgerlich. The affair was vexing to me. Das ist mir dunkel. That is obscure to me.* Such adjectives are chiefly given to illustrate a marked tendency of the German language *to limit an assertion by special reference to the subject who thinks or feels a thing to be vexing, obscure, &c.*, whilst it may not be *absolutely* so. The English more commonly say: "*That is vexing, obscure, ridiculous,*" — TAKING FOR GRANTED that it is so to the subject. In order not to extend this long list too much, the author has omitted many adjectives of the class here described, particularly as the list contains synonymous adjectives, leaving it to the pupil to construe them with the dative, in analogy with those given. All those adjectives, however, which absolutely govern the dative, or such as are in English construed with another preposition (for inst. *for*), are given in the list. The pupil must remember that they govern the dative, only when used in the sense indicated, and that they FOLLOW the dative *when they are used as the predicate.*

abgeneigt, averse to.
 abhßß, unfavorable, disinclined.
 abtrünnig, apostate.
 abspänstig, alienated, estranged.
 abwendig, alienated, turned off.
 achtungswerth, { estimable.
 achtungswürdig, {
 ähnlich, resembling.
 (analog, analogous).
 angeboren, innate, inborn.
 angerbt, hereditary, inherited.
 angehörig, belonging to.
 angelegen, interested in.
 angemessen, adequate, suitable.
 angenehm, agreeable.
 angehaunt, innate.
 angst (und bange), greatly alarmed.
 anhängig, pertaining to.
 annehmbar, acceptable.
 anschaulich, clear, as if seen.
 anverwandt, related, kindred to.
 ärgerlich, annoying.
 aüßßßß, bearing ill will.
 bange, apprehensive (corie).

bedenklich, critical, doubtful.
 befremdend (-ßßß), strange, odd.
 freundlich, friendly.
 befriedigend, satisfactory.
 begreiflich, conceivable.
 behaglich, comfortable.
 behüßßß, assisting.
 bekannt, known.
 beliebig, any you like.
 bequem, comfortable, convenient.
 beschwerlich, troublesome, burdensome.
 beweislich, provable.
 bewußt, known.
 sich bewußt, (Dat.) conscious.
 billig (recht), fair, just.
 dankbar, grateful.
 deutlich, distinct.
 dienlich, conducive, beneficial.
 dienstbar, subject, serving.
 dunkel, obscure.
 (egal, all the same).
 ehrwürdig, venerable.
 eigen, proper, peculiar.

eigenthümlich, peculiar.	gewiß, secured, certain.
ekelhaft, loathsome.	gegeben, affectionate.
empfindlich, vexing.	gleich, 'equal, quite the same.
(ennuyant, tedious, annoying).	gleichgültig (=gültig), indifferent.
entbehrlich, dispensable.	gnädig, merciful.
entsetzlich, horrible.	günstig, favorable.
erfreulich, gratifying.	gut (ich bin dir), I like, love thee.
ergeben, devoted.	heilig, sacred.
erreglich, diverting.	heilsam, salutary.
erinnerlich (mir), I remember.	hinderlich, impeding.
erkenntlich, grateful.	heißt, gracious, loving.
erklärlich, conceivable.	klar, plain, clear.
erlaubt, allowed.	kund, known.
ersichtlich, evident.	leicht, easy (for).
erzuehlich, salutary, useful.	lieb (mir), I am glad of; dear to.
erwünscht, welcome, opportunely.	mißfällig, displeasing.
(fatal, sadly annoying).	möglich, possible for.
feil, for sale.	nachtheilig, injurious.
feind (gram), hostile to.	nabe, near.
fern, far from.	natürlich, natural.
flau, faintish.	neu, new.
förderlich, conducive, expedient.	nützlich, useful.
frei, free.	offen, open.
fremd, strange, foreign.	offenbar, manifest.
fürsich, felt by.	peinlich, awkward, painful.
gedehlich, beneficial.	(plausibel, plausible).
gefährlich, dangerous.	räthselhaft, mysterious, a mystery.
gefällig, (Was ist Ihnen gefällig?	recht (mir), agreeable, convenient:
What do you wish?)	sauer, hard (of work, duty).
gegenwärtig, (mir nicht gegenwärtig, I don't recollect).	schädlich, injurious, noxious.
gebißig, spiteful.	schmeichelfhaft, flattering, gratifying:
gehorfam, obedient.	schmerzlich, painful.
geläufig, familiar.	schuldig (sein), to owe.
gelegen, convenient, opportune.	schwer, hard, difficult.
nir ist daran gelegen, it matters to me.	sicher, certain to.
gemäß, in conformity with.	störend, disturbing, inconvenient.
gemein, { common to.	streitig (machen), to contest.
gemeinsam, {	taub (besser with gegen) deaf to.
genehm, agreeable.	theuer, dear.
geneigt, favorably inclined.	tödtlich, deadly, fatal.
genug, enough.	treu, true, faithful to.
gerecht (werden), to do justice to.	tröstlich, consoling.
geständig (sein), to confess.	übel, sick, ill.
gesund, good for.	überlegen, superior to.
getreu, true to.	überraschend, surprising.
gewachsen, a match for, up to	übrig, left remaining.
	undenommen, unforbidden, open to.

unersetzlich, irreplaceable.
 unerwartet, unexpected by.
 unterthänig, subject to (a sovereign).
 unvergessen, never to be forgot by.
 unverloren, not lost to.
 unversehrt, unforbidden.
 verantwortlich, responsible to.
 verbunden, obliged to.
 verderblich, ruinous to.
 verdrießlich, vexing, annoying.
 vergönnt, granted, allowed.
 verhaßt, hateful, hated.

verschlossen, shut, close against.
 verwandt, related to, akin to.
 vorteilhaft, advantageous.
 werth, dear to, of value.
 wesentlich, essential to.
 wichtig, weighty.
 willkommen, welcome.
 wohl (mir ist —), I feel well, easy.
 zugänglich, accessible.
 zugehörig, belonging to.
 zugethan, attached, devoted to, adicted to.
 zukünftig, due to.
 nützlich, beneficial, wholesome.

Special attention is directed to the verbs *sein* and *werden* in Lists 3 and 4. PARTICULARLY, WHEN USED IMPERSONALLY (p. 159); as, *mir ist*, *I feel*, *ihm war*, *he felt*; and *mir wird*, *I begin to feel*; *mir wurde* or *ward*, *I began to feel*, *got*, *became*, these verbs may be construed with all adjectives expressing sensations; as, *mir ist kalt*, *I feel cold*; *mir wird warm*, *I begin to feel warm*, *I am getting warm*; and then, the subject of the sensation is in the dative. The list contains a few examples of this kind also.

7. THE DATIVE IN ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS. The dative is required by the prepositions given p. 38, with those requiring both the dative and accusative (p. 40), the dative is used where no *motion towards* is expressed.

THE ACCUSATIVE (OBJECTIVE).

The Accusative, as the object of the verb, agrees *in general* with the objective in English; as, *Ich liebe ihn*. I praise him. *Wen suchst du?* Whom seekest thou? *Gib mir den Arm*. Give me your arm.

If the transitive verb is used in the PASSIVE VOICE, the accusative becomes the nominative of the sentence; as, *Er wird von mir gelobt*. He is praised by me; and, in this respect, the difference between the German accusative and the English objective is important, as the

objective, if expressed by a dative in German, cannot be changed into a nominative when the sentence is construed in the passive voice; for inst. Man bot mir an —, They offered me —. Mir (not ich) wurde angeboten. I (to me) was offered. (See pp. 153 *b*, 155.)

The ENGLISH OBJECTIVE is often rendered by a GENITIVE, and, still more frequently, by a DATIVE in German, and the rules on these cases (See pp. 147 C, and 152 — 158) contain *complete* information with regard to the points of difference.

Note 1. Lehren to teach has both its objects in the accusative; as, Lehre mich dieses Lied! *Teach me this song!* but here, as well as in the case of heißen to bid, and lassen to let, to allow, the second object is in fact the object of a verb understood, governed by lehren, heißen or lassen; viz. Lehre mich dieses Lied (singen), (*how to sing*) this song. Er ließ mich es bringen, *He bid me bring it.* Laß mich allow me es thun (*to do it*). *Lel me do it.* Er lehrt ihn die deutsche Sprache (sprechen, verstehen &c.). *He teaches him (to talk, to understand) the German language.* Lehren is used neither passively nor reflectively in German.

Sprechen (to speak), when used in the sense of to see, is used with the simple accusative; as, Wollen Sie meinen Vater sprechen? Do you wish to see my father? — In phrases like bittere &c. Thränen weinen, to weep bitter &c. tears; den Schlaf des Gerechten schlafen, to sleep the sleep of the just, in which the subjective verb is used objectively, the languages agree.

Note 2. With the verbs heißen, nennen, to call, taufen, to christen, and schelten, schimpfen, to call abusively, the second accusative bears rather the character of an apposition; as, Er nannte ihn seinen Freund. He called him his friend.

Note 3. On the construction of the verbs, expressing appointing, choosing making &c., which require two objectives in English, see p. 139, 3.

Verbs of declaring and considering, when used with two objects, are construed as follows.

a. The second object is introduced by the preposition für, after erklären to declare, halten to consider, to think, ansehn to take to be, nehmen to take as, erkennen to own, ausgeben to give out, pass off; as, Sie erklärten ihn für einen Propheten. *They declared him a prophet.* Er gab sich für einen Propheten aus. *He gave himself out for a prophet.* Ich halte ihn für einen Mann von Grundsätzen. *I consider him a man-of-principles.* Er nahm ihn für einen Neuling, Er sah ihn für einen Neuling an. *He took him for a novice, thought him a novice.* Similarly: Er gilt für einen Gelehrten. *He is considered a scholar.*

b. The second object is introduced by the conjunction als; after achten to regard, esteem, ansehen to look upon, betrachten to consider,

darstellen, to represent, einführen & vorstellen to introduce, empfehlen to recommend &c.; as, Ich achte ihn als einen wahrheitsliebenden Menschen. *I esteem him as a truth-loving person.* Sie sieht sie als Schwägerin an. *She looks upon them as sisters.* Er betrachtete und stellte es als einen Zufall dar. *He considered and represented it as an accident,* Er führte ihn als seinen Schwager ein. *He introduced him as his brother-in-law.* Er empfiehlt den Mann als einen erfahrenen Führer. *He recommended the man as an experienced guide.* — With the verbs mentioned under *b*, the second accusative bears the character of an apposition, and, hence, both accusatives appear as nominatives, if the sentence is construed in the passive voice.

(Für is used with the verbs given under *a*, and als with those under *b*, even when they refer to an adjective instead of a second object; as, Ich hielt es für unpassend. *I thought it unbecoming.* Ich betrachtete es als nicht der Rede werth. *I consider it not worth mentioning.*)

Note 4. The REFLECTIVE PRONOUN is generally in the accusative. (See, however, p. 57, p. 154 c, and Section XXVI, Reflective verbs).

Note 5. By the IMPERSONAL FORM of the verb, a sensation experienced by the subject is represented as acting upon the subject; which, consequently, generally stands in the accusative; as, Mich hungert für Es hungert mich. *I am hungry; (hunger acts upon me, troubles me).* Mich durstet für Es durstet mich. *I am thirsty.* Mich dünkt. *Me thinks.* In p. 156, List 4, the impersonal verbs are given which are construed with the dative of the person. (See, also Section XXVII, Impersonal form).

2. The accusative is used in connexion with adjectives or adverbial expressions denoting MEASURE, WEIGHT, AGE, OR VALUE; as, einen Fuß, einen Zoll lang, one foot, one inch long; einen und einen halben Centner an Gewicht, one and a half cwt. in weight; einen Monat alt, a month old; einen Thaler werth, worth a dollar; drei und einen halben Schritt in der Breite, three steps and a half in breadth.

Of, in phrases like *at a distance of, height of*, is rendered by von with the Dative; as, in der Entfernung von einer Meile, *at a distance of a mile.*

After: gelten and kosten to cost, messen to measure, and wiegen to weigh, the object is in the accusative; as, Ein Block von diesem Material, der einen und einen halben Fuß misst und einen halben Centner wiegt, kostet einen Gulden. *A block of this material, measuring one foot and a half, and weighing half a cwt., costs one florin.*

3. In connexion with the adverb genug, and similar adverbial expressions referring to quantity, transi-

tive verbs like *besitzen*, *kaufen*, which otherwise require the accusative, take their object in the genitive; as, *Ich besitze genug solcher Dinge*, I have got enough of such things; or relatively, *Au der See finden Sie deren so viel Sie mögen*. On the shore you find as many of them as you like.

4. TIME DEFINITE *when*, is expressed by the accusative; as, *diesen Monat*, this month; *den dritten Juli*, the third of July. *Er ging jenen Morgen weg und kommt diesen Abend wieder*. He went away that morning, and is to come back to-night. Dates are frequently introduced by the preposition *an* contracted with the dative of the article; as, *am zweiten Mai*, on the second of May. Also *an jenem Morgen*, on that morning, &c. This form, however, seems to be used narratively rather than in fixing the date. (Comp. p. 46, *a' — d*).

SECTION XIX.—ON THE USE OF THE NUMBERS.

1. Certain ABSTRACT NOUNS denoting *dispositions of the mind*, &c., have in German no plural as such; *Furcht*, for instance, *fear*, *dread*, *awe*; *Verrath*, *treachery*, *treason*, *Betrug*, *deceit*. They are, however, frequently identified with acts proceeding from such dispositions; and since such acts may be repeated, as in English, *fears*, *apprehensions*, *treacheries*, it is necessary to express them in the plural, and such plurals then are derived from other nouns, expressing exactly the single act; as, *die Befürchtung* the apprehension, *die Verrätherei* the treachery, *die Betrügerei* fraud; — *plurals*: *Befürchtungen* apprehensions, *fears*, *Verräthereien* treacheries, *Betrügereien* frauds. Likewise, *der Zank* the quarrel, *Zankereien* quarrels; *der Streit* the dispute, altercation, plural, *die Streitigkeiten*; *der Wahn* illusion, but *illusions* *die Täuschungen*, from *die Täuschung* illusion; *das Lob* the praise, *Lobeserhebungen* praises; *thanks* *der Dank*, pl., *Dankfagungen* expressions of gratitude; *Schuld* guilt, *Versehdungen* trespasses.

Others like *Vorsicht* precaution, *Sicherheit* safety, security, form the plural by compounds with *Maßregeln* measures, as, *Vorsichtsmaßregeln*, *Sicherheitsmaßregeln*.

Jorn wrath, anger, *Ärger* fret, chagrin, *Schred* fright, *Tadel* blame, take in the plural *wiederholter Ärger* repeated anger, *wiederholter Schred* frights, *wiederholter Tadel* censures. *Die Schreden* is the plural of *der Schreden* the terror.

2. The following PECULIARITIES may be noticed.

a. The noun *die Sache* *thing*, is in the singular always used in a moral sense and has the force of *the cause, the affair, the case*; as, *die Sache ist sehr unangenehm*, *The thing, the affair is very unpleasant*; whilst *das Ding* *the thing*, is generally used to denote a material object; as, *Sehen Sie jenes Ding dort?* *Do you see that thing yonder?* These two nouns, however, interchange *their plurals* in such a manner, that *Sachen* means *material objects*, whilst *Dinge* refers to *moral things, affairs*; as, *Nehmen Sie diese Sachen hier weg*. Take away these things here. *Wo sind meine Sachen?* Where are my things, (luggage &c.)? — *Wer kann heute sagen, wie die Dinge in Europa und Amerika sich gestalten werden?* Who can tell to-day what shape things in Europe and America may assume? *Mischen Sie sich nicht in die Dinge, die Sie Nichts angehen!* Don't meddle with things which don't concern you!

b. Compounds of *Mann*; as, *Kaufmann* *merchant*, *Landmann* *peasant*, form their plural in *Leute* (*people*) when a *class* is to be denoted; as, *Kaufleute* *merchants*, *Landleute* *peasants*. (*Ehemann*, pl., *Ehemänner* *husbands*; but *Eheleute* *married people*). *Eltern* *parents*, has no singular like *the parent* in English.

c. *Das Volk* *the people*, forms the plural *Völker* when it means a *nation*; as, *die Völker Europas*, *the nations of Europe*. *Volk* also means *the people, populations (of a city)*, especially when assembled in masses, but it becomes a contemptuous term, when applied to the inhabitants of a house, or to any small gathering. For such *die Leute* must be used; as, *die Leute in die-*

sein Hause, the people in this house; die Leute sagen, people say.

d. COLLECTIVES IN THE SINGULAR; as, das Volk *the people*, die Familie *the family*, der Ausschuss *the committee*, der Rath *the council*, CANNOT take the verb or the possessive pronoun in the plural; as, dieses Volk liebt seine Königin. This people love their queen; (not, dieses Volk lieben ihre Königin). Die Familie ist verreist. The family are from home.

e. For nouns used in the plural only, see below 4, and for English plurals used as singulars in German, see 5. p. 170.

3. a. Terms used in *measuring, weighing, counting* &c. when stating an actual amount, remain unaltered in the plural if they are of the MASCULINE OR NEUTER gender; (*nor do they take the possessive of the name of the material, article &c.*, as expressed by OF in English); as,

Dreißig Fuß (m.). sechs Zoll (n.) (30' 6") hoch, thirty feet and six inches high; Drei Maß (n.) Milch, six quarts of milk; sechs Pfund (n.). vier Loth (n.) Zucker, six pounds, two ounces of sugar; drei Paar (n.) Strümpfe, three pairs of stockings; drei Duzend (n.) Teller, three dozen of plates; zwei Schock (n.) drei Mandel (n.) Eier, two times sixty and three times fifteen eggs; drei Rieß (n.). neunzehn Buch (n.). zwanzig Bogen (m.) Papier, three reams, nineteen quires and twenty sheets of paper; 6000 Mann (m.) Fußvolf und 1500 Reiterei, 6000 men infantry and 1500 men cavalry; mit einer Mannschaft von 16 Mann, with a (ship's) crew of 16 hands; neun Stück (n.) Wild, nine heads of game.

Observe: drei Gläser Wein, three glasses of wine.

b. All FEMININE TERMS of this kind, however, form the usual *plural* in en. These can be readily distinguished, as they alone end in e, except die Last *a burden of two tons*, Pl. Lasten, and die Mark *the mark* (silver), Pl. unchanged, 50 Mark 50 marks. (Klafter *fathom*, is properly neuter; yet it occurs as a feminine and then forms the Pl. Klaftern).

Examples: zwei deutsche Meilen, two German miles, (4½ English miles each); fünfzehn Ellen Leinwand, fifteen ells or 10 yards of linen; sechs Unzen, six ounces; zwei Drachmen two drachms; zwei Flaschen Wein, two bottles of wine; zwei Tassen Kaffee, two cups of coffee;

vier Tonnen und drei Kannen Bier, four barrels and three quarts of beer.

Note. After a fraction, the numerator of which is *ein*, *one*, and which in German is made to precede the term of weight, measure &c. the latter is always used in the singular; as, *drei und eine halbe Elle*, three ells and a half; *sechs und eine viertel Meile*. Six miles and a quarter. (See p. 103).

c. The NAMES OF COINS are treated like the above terms; as, *sechzehn Mark*, acht Schilling *hamburgisch*, sixteen mark, eight Shillings *hamb.* (= £1 *Sterl.*); *zwölf Dublonen*, twelve doubloons; *dreißig Schennen*, 30 sequins; — of *der Pfennig* ($\frac{1}{4}$ penny), the plural is commonly *Pfennige*.

d. All the terms given in this paragraph are used in the plural if no definite amount is stated; as, *Wir verkaufen es nur in ganzen Pfunden* (*pfundweise*). We sell it only in whole pounds. *Ich habe sie zu Dutzenden gesehen* (*Duzendweise*). I have seen them in dozens. *Mit ein paar Thaler kann man nicht viel machen*. With a few thalers one can't do much.

e. The TERMS OF TIME, *Jahr* century, *Jahr* year, *Monat* month, *Woche* week, *Tag* day, *Stunde* hour, *Minute* minute, *Secunde* second, form the ordinary plurals after a number preceding them, except after fractions, the numerator of which is *ein*, *one*, which are made to precede the term; as, *drei und ein halbes Jahr*, three years and a half; *fünf und einen halben Monat*, five months and a half; *zwei und eine Viertelstunde*, two hours and a quarter. (See p. 103, Notes 1 & 2).

4. Nouns used in the plural only are less numerous than in English. The pupil may notice the following *which have the Verb in the plural*, except occasionally the church-feasts. *Ostern* *easter*, *Pfingsten*, *pentecost*, and *Weihnachten* *Christmas*, consist each of two days observed by the Christian churches, and hence are *plurals*. In Compounds, they are singulars; as, *die Ostertage* *the easterdays*, *der Pfingstmorgen* *the morning of pentecost*, *der Weihnachtsabend* *the Christmas-eve*. These and other church-feasts are called *Feiertage*; as, *der erste und zweite*

Freiertag, *the first and second day of the (church-) feast*; whilst days of festive occasions are Festtage; and Ferien means *holidays, vacations* (of the schools, courts &c.). A single day of the latter kind is called ein freier Tag, or ein Spieltag, *a playday*.

Farther, die Fasten *Lent*, and the following: die Alpen, Andes, Apenninen, Ardennen, Cordillern, Karpaten, Pyrenäen, Scvennen, Sudeten and Vogesen. The singular die Alp occurs with adjectives; as, die rauhe Alp, die fränkische Alp, die schwäbische Alp for minor ranges, and also means an *alpine meadow, pasture*. Briefschaften letters, papers, Geräthschaften utensils, Eltern parents, Geschwister the children of a family, brothers and sisters, Gebrüder brothers joined in business, Einkünfte income, revenue, Gefälle duties, rates, Kosten and Unkosten expense and expenses, (one item of expenses eine Ausgabe), Gebühren and Sponteln fees of office, fees of court, Gliedmaßen limbs, Laren lares, Leute (some) people, Manen manes, Masern or Rôtheln measles, Molken wheys, Penaten penates, Ränke and Umtriebe cabal, machination, Trümmer ruins, Zeitläufte junctures, Kriegsläufe warlike times. Träber and Trester husks.

5. From the above complete list of plurals, the pupil will perceive that a great many nouns used only as plurals in English must be used as singulars in German, or both in the singular and plural. Of the former kind are for inst. all the names of sciences ending in *ics*, such as *mathematics* die Größenlehre or Mathematik, metaphysics die Metaphysik, politics die Politik; and of the latter kind are many names of implements &c., consisting of two equal parts joined together, and hence generally used with *a pair of*, in English; as, spectacles die Brille, PL. die Brillen several pairs of spectacles; nippers die Aneisjange, scissors die Schere, compasses der Zirkel, breeches die Hose, the colours die Fahne, &c.

SECTION XX. — THE VERB*.

CONJUGATION. — A. UNIVERSAL FORMS.

The infinitive (see p. 123, and Section XXV, C), the stem (see p. 117, 5) and the present and past participles (see Section XXV, D.) occur as nouns.

a. The INFINITIVE terminates in *en*, and the root, or better the STEM is found by dropping this termination; as, *lernen to learn*, stem *lern*. To the stem the inflectional terminations (see p. 175) are added.

The infinitives in *eln* (often diminutive), and *ern* (frequentative) [see p. 36, E] are contractions of *clen*, *clern*, and only *n* is to be dropped in order to find the portion of the verb to which the inflectional terminations must be added; as, *lächeln to smile*, for *lächclen*; *winuern to whimper*, for *wimueren*; 2^d pers. Sing. Pres. Ind. *lächelst*, *wimuerst*. When only *e* is to be added to verbs in *cln* and *ern*, the *e* preceding the *l* or *r* is dropped; as, *Lächle*, *wimure*.

There are derivatives in *ichn*, *igen* etc.; as, *beredhtigen* to entitle, and verbs of foreign origin in *i'ren* (*leren*) (p. 36, E); as, *musclren to make music*. To these, the inflectional termination is added after dropping the *en* of the infinitive; as, *beredhtigst*, *musclrst*.

b. The PRESENT PARTICIPLE is formed by adding *b* to the infinitive; as, *lernend learning*.

c. The PAST PARTICIPLE (see S. XXI) takes the prefix *ge*; as, *gelernt learned*, unless the infinitive has already one of the unaccented inseparable prefixes *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, *hinter* and *wider*, or is used inseparably with one of the prefixes explained below, Note 2; as, *erlernen to acquire by learning*; past part. *erlernt acquired*; *verlernen to unlearn, to forget*, past part. *verlernt forgöten*. Hence *ge* is not an infallible sign of the P. P.

Verbs of foreign origin in *iren* and *ieren* likewise form the past participle without *ge*; as, *muscl'iren to make music*, p. part. *muscl'irt*; *regie'ren to govern*, p. part. *regie'rt*; *spazie'ren to promenade*, p. part. *spazie'rt*.

* In treating of the verb, the author has deliberately set aside as confusing and not practical all theories not strictly bearing on the relation of the forms of the English verb to those of the German. The arrangement of the tenses, &c., and the rules with regard to their use, &c., whilst exhausting the subject, are there fore given in as close analogy to the English arrangement, as is compatible with their peculiarities.

d. In verbs with SEPARABLE PREFIXES, the *ge* is placed between these and the verb; as, *auslernen' to serve one's apprenticeship*, p. p. *ausgelernt*; *dazulernen to learn in addition*, p. p. *dazugelernt*.

e. If the INFINITIVE of the verb is used with *zu* to, this particle must likewise be placed between the separable prefix and the verb; as, *aus'zulernen to finish learning*, *dazu'zulernen to learn in addition*.

SEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS and COMBINATIONS OF VERBS, the adverbial portion of which can be detached to the end of the clause, are treated like verbs with separable prefixes; as, *Theil nehmen, to take part*. *Ich nehme an dem Werke Theil, wie ich lange daran Theil genommen habe und immer Theil zu nehmen wünsche*. I take part in the work, as I have long taken part in it and as I always wish to do. *Zu Stande bringen, to accomplish*. *Sie brachten das schwierige Werk glücklich zu Stande*. They successfully accomplished the difficult task. *Sie hatten das Werk glücklich zu Stande gebracht*. They had successfully accomplished the task. *Man hofft das Werk glücklich zu Stande zu bringen*. They hope to accomplish the task successfully.

Such separable combinations often have a meaning *vastly different* from that which would result from a *literal translation* of the combining portions severally; as, *zu Stande bringen*, not to *bring to a stand*, but to *accomplish*, and their signification must be carefully ascertained from the dictionary, in which it is generally given with either of the portions, (either with *Stand* or with *bringen*, &c.).

DETAILS REGARDING THE PREFIXES.

(See Section IV, p. 27.)

1. (For the position of the SEPARABLE PREFIXES, see Section XXX. D.) Besides the prepositions given p. 56, E, where the statement regarding the use of *her* and *hin* is of particular importance, the following adverbial particles are used as separable prefixes: — *ab* off, (disconnexion); *da* there, (Existence); *dar*, (offer, display); *ein*, (preposition in) in, into; *em* up, upward; *fort* away, (also expressing continuation); *her* hither; *hin* thither, (passing away); *nicht* not.

down; *es* only in the verbs *absteigen* to apply one's self, *abshweben* to be pending, *abwalten* to prevail, and in the past participle *abgedacht* above-mentioned; *weg* away; *wieder* again, (repetition, return); *zusuf* back; *zusammen* together. *Auf* up, (opening), and *zu* (closing).

2. WORDS USED BOTH AS SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE PREFIXES are the following: *durch* through, *über* over, across, *um* around, *over* again, down, *unter* under, down, *voll* full and *wieder* again, back. The particulars with regard to these must be studied in p. 29, C, and p. 30. When these are used *figuratively* and hence *inseparably* and *unaccented*, the verb does not take the augment *ge* in the past part., and when the particle *zu* is required, it is placed before the compound infinitive; as, *übertre'ten* to *transgress*, to *trespass*, p. part. *übertre'ten* *trespassed*, inf. *zu übertre'ten* to *trespass*. But when they are used in a *literal* sense, and hence *separably* and then *accented*, the augment *ge*, as well as the particle *zu* are placed between the prefix and the verb; as, *ü'bertreten* to *tread* or *go* over, p. part. *ü'bergetreten*, inf. (with *zu*) *ü'bergetreten*. (The author has observed that, as in the above example, the translation by words of Latin origin, as, *transgress*, is common with the inseparable forms having a figurative meaning, whilst those verbs in which the prefix is separable with a more literal or primitive meaning are generally rendered by Saxon words; as, to *tread* or *go* over; compare *unterhal'ten* to maintain, to support, with *un'terhalten* to hold under).

3. (See p. 27, 31). One *unaccented inseparable* prefix can never be combined with another. Yet an *unaccented inseparable* prefix is frequently met with BEFORE or AFTER an *accented* prefix; as, 1. BEFORE the accented prefix: *beantworten* (*be-antworten*) to reply, *überantworten* to deliver up, *verantworten* to answer, *besürworten* to support a request, *bevorworten* to premise, *beunruhigen* to trouble, *veruneinigen* to separate, to disagree, to fall out, *beurtheilen* to criticise, *verurtheilen* to condemn. *benachtheiligen* to injure, *bevortheilen* or *übevortheilen* to defraud; or 2. AFTER the accented prefix: *anbefehlen* (*an=be-fehlen*) to enjoin, *empfehlen* to recommend, *anerkennen* to acknowledge, *anvertrauen* to entrust, *aufbewahren* to preserve, *mitempfinden* to sympathize, *auswählen* to select, *angehören* to belong to, *eingestehen* to confess, *zugestehen* to grant, *missverstehen* to misapprehend, *widervergeltten* to retaliate.

Only in verbs of the latter kind the *separable* accented prefix can be DETACHED; as, *Er befahl den Truppen Schweigen an*, *He enjoined silence upon the troops*; *Ich gestehe Ihnen das zu*, *I grant that to you*; — and the particle *zu* of the infinitive is INSERTED after the *separable* prefix; as, *Es wurde nöthig, es strenger anzubefehlen*. It became necessary to enjoin it more strictly. *Er weigert sich es mir zu gestehen*. He refuses to grant it to me.

The PAST PARTICIPLE of *neither* kind is formed with *ge*; as, *beantworten* p. part. *beantwortet*; *verneinen*, p. part. *verneinet*; or, *missverstehen*, *missverstanden*, *zugestehen*, *zugestanden*.

4. The following few verbs, with *accented inseparable* prefixes; take the augment *ge* in the PAST PARTICIPLE: — *antworten* to reply, *ge-*

antwortet replied; urtheilen to judge, gerurtheilt judged; misachten to despise, mißbilligen to disapprove, mißbrauchen to abuse, mißdeuten to misinterpret, mißhandeln to maltreat, mißtrauen to distrust; — *as*, gemißbilligt disapproved, gemißbraucht abused, &c. In the past participle of mißarten to degenerate, the *ge* is placed *after the prefix*. All other verbs with the prefix *miß* form the past participle *without ge*.

5. The following INSEPARABLE COMPOUND verbs, which have the accent on the *first* component, form the past participle by prefixing *ge*; *as*, argwöhnen to suspect, geargwöhnt suspected. The particle *zu* in the infinitive precedes the whole Compound; *as*, zu frühstücken, to breakfast. These verbs being Derivatives, follow the WEAK conjugation; *as*, willfahren, willfahrte, gewillfahrt. (See Section XXI.)

abenteueru, {	to lead an adventure.	brandtsagen, to extort contribu-
argwöhnen, {	rous life.	tions.
argwöhnen, to suspect.		deutelsagen, to act as interpreter.
frühstücken, to breakfast.		radebrechen, to murder a language.
handhaben, to handle.		rathschlagen, to deliberate.
besuieisern, to act the tutor.		rechtfertigen, to justify.
selbsteln, to keelhaul.		schristellern, to write for publica-
langweilen, {	to be ennuyé, to be	tion.
{	tedious.	schulleisern, to teach a school.
liebäugeln, to look fondly on.		wallfahrten, to go on a pilgrimage.
lieblosen, to caress.		weglagern, to waylay.
lustwandeln, to walk for pleasure.		weisagen, to prophesy.
nachtwandeln, to walk in the sleep.		wetteisern, to emulate.
brandmarken, to stigmatize.		willfahren, to comply with.

6. As to the FORCE OF THE INSEPARABLE PREFIXES, the following may be observed: —

a. *be*, much like the English *be*, indicates the directing of an activity *upon*, or the extending of an influence or condition *all over*, and therefore makes the verb *transitive*, generally with the object in the accusative; *as*, beschleßen to bombard, belachen to laugh at, bewundern to wonder at, to admire, belagern to beleaguer, beängstigen to put to anxiety, beschämen to put to shame.

b. *ent*, generally like the English *e* (*ex*), indicates a passing *forth from within*, or taking *out of*, consequently, making independent, disconnecting; *as*, entschuldigen to excuse (from die Schuld *guilt*), entfallen to fall out of, entfeßeln to unfetter, entfalten to unfold, entfliehen to flee from, entspringen to spring forth (a fountain), to escape (from a prison), entbinden to set free, to deliver, entlassen to dismiss, to let out of. Compare beschuldigen to accuse, with entschuldigen to excuse, bevölkern to people, with entvölkern to depopulate; bedecken to cover, with entdecken to discover; — *ent* CHANGES INTO *emp* in empfinden to feel, empfangen to receive, empfehlen to recommend.

c. *er* indicates developing *from within*, and a pervading thoroughly; *as*, erbleichen to grow pale, to change colour, erröthen to blush, erblühen to develop into flower, erwachsen to accrue, erleuchten to enlighten, to illuminate, erglänzen to shine forth, erschüttern to shake,

to quake, erquickten to pervade with freshness, to refresh; — therefore often merely the thoroughness of a process as *leading to the result*; as, erschöpfen to find out, to explore, erschöpfen to exhaust, ererben to conquer, erretten to rescue; erringen to gain by a struggle, erlangen to obtain.

d. ge in the infinitive is intensifying and confirming, as in *ge-
deihen* to thrive, *gelingen* to reach, to accede, *gelingen* and *gerathen* to succeed, *gewinnen* to gain. (In nouns ge denotes *collectiveness*).

e. ver (akin to the English *far*) has in the first place the force of *farther* before verbs derived from adjectives in the comparative degree; as, verlängern (from lang, länger longer) *to lengthen*, vergrößern (from größer larger) *to enlarge*, verbessern (from besser better) *to improve*, verfeinern *to refine*. — Hence, with verbs indicating a negative process, ver denotes its completion; as, verbluten to bleed to death, verdammen to condemn, verzweifeln to despair (from zweifeln to doubt), verrinnen to elapse, verschwinden to vanish, from schwinden to diminish, verenden to die. In the second place and MORE COMMONLY, ver has the force of *too far*, indicating that the action of the verb is turned *beyond*, and *altogether away* from its proper object, and leads to a negative result; as, verbringen to squander, vergehen to trespass, verfeiten to mislead, vergehen to give away, versagen to deny, verwesen to decay, to decompose, from the old wesen to be, to exist.

f. zer indicates *dissolution* or *destruction*; as, zerrinnen, zerfließen to melt away; zerfallen to decompose, zerstreuen to disperse, zerbrechen to break to pieces, zererschlagen to smash, zerschmettern to dash to pieces.

The preceding definitions are, of course, only of a general character, but with a sufficient insight into the language they will be found to hold good even in instances contradictory at first sight.

B. INFLECTIONAL TERMINATIONS.

Only the Present, Imperfect, and Imperative of the active voice undergo inflection, the others being compound tenses, in which *only the Auxiliary* is inflected. (For the Imperative, see p. 178).

The FIRST person *singular*, Present takes *e*; as, Ich lerne. *I learn*. Ich berechtere. *I entitle*. Only a few AUXILIARY VERBS (see Sect. XXIII and XXIV) form exceptions to this rule.

The SECOND person *Sing.* invariably takes *st*; as, Du lernst. *Thou learnest*. Du lerntest. *Thou learnedst*.

The THIRD person *Sing.* of the *Present Indicative* takes *t*, which thus corresponds to the English *s* in the 3^d p. S. Pres. Ind.; as, Er lernt. *He learns*. Es berech-

tig-t. *It entitles.* For exceptions, see *auxiliary* verbs, Section XXIII & XXIV and the List of ancient verbs.

The FIRST and THIRD pers. *plural* invariably take *en* or *n*; as, Wir lern-en. *We learn.* Sie lern-en. *They learn.* Wir lern-te-n. *We learned.* Sie lern-te-n. *They learned.* The verb *sein* to *be*, is excepted, Wir sind. *We are.* Sie sind. *They are.*

The SECOND pers. *Plur.* invariably takes *t*; as, Ihr lern-t. *You learn.* Ihr lern-te-t. *You learned.*

An *e* before *st* and *t* is regularly introduced in the SUBJUNCTIVE; as, Du lern-e-st, *That thou learnest:* Ihr lern-e-t, *That you learn.* Du berechtig-e-st. Ihr berechtig-e-t. The 3^d pers. Sing. Pres. ends in *e*; as, Er lerne, *That he learns.*

THE INSERTION OF THE *e* in the INDICATIVE takes place before the *st*, if the stem ends in *f* or a similar consonant; as, *fch*, *ff*, *ß*, *j* and *ß*, in order to make both the stem-consonant and the termination distinctly audible; as, reis-e-st *travellest*, fisch-e-st *fishest*, reis-e-st *tearest*, reiz-e-st *irritatest*, sitz-e-st *sittest*. The *e* is also inserted after *d* and *t* ending the stem, not only before *st*, but particularly before *t*; as, bind-e-st *bindest*, bitt-e-st *beggest*; bind-e-t *binds*, bitt-e-t *begs*.

The above rules are given chiefly to explain the terminations of conjugation in the tables and paradigms.

SECTION XXI. — STRONG OR ANCIENT, AND WEAK (MODERN) FORM OF CONJUGATION.

(The pupil is particularly referred to p. 31, Leading Remarks, 1.)

Paradigms of both forms are given p. 179.

L. R. 1. Nearly 180 PRIMITIVE verbs, (*expressing the principal functions of life*), and their Compounds form THE IMPERFECT and PAST PARTICIPLE by changing the vowel of the root analogously to the English *begin*, *begin*, *begin*. These verbs are given in the list p. 181 in which the few compounds, not conforming to the rule, (see p. 174, 5) are also stated. The changing of the vowel renders it unnecessary to distinguish those tenses by a termination; (not *begin*, *beganned*) so that the past par-

ticiples of the Ancient verbs *can be known* from its ending in *en* like the infinitive; as, *beginnen to begin*, *begonnen begun*.

THE IMPERFECT, however, drops the *en*, as, *begann began*, because in many verbs the vowel is only changed once, so that the ABSENCE of *en* distinguishes the imperfect; as, *bewegen to induce*, *bewog did induce*, *bewogen P. P. induced*.

(The *past participle*, moreover, is generally distinguished by the augment *ge*; as, *finden to bind*, *band did bind*, *gebunden bound*, which *ge* does not occur in the above instances, as the infinitive has the unaccented prefix *be*. See p. 171 c).

2. THE WEAK VERBS, on the other hand, which *cannot change* the vowel require a TERMINATION IN THE IMPERFECT AND PAST PARTICIPLE. This is a mere help to distinguish those tenses the root vowel being, as it were, dead. Every verb, not contained at all, or not being a compound of a verb contained *in the list* (see however, below, Note 1 and 2) has the WEAK CONJUGATION and takes *t* in the past participle; as, *gelernt learned* from *lern-en to learn*, whilst in the imperfect *e* is added after the *t*; as, *lernte did learn*.

Hence: *lern-en to learn*, *lern-te did learn*, P. P. *gelernt learned*.

When the stem ENDS IN *b* OR *t*, the termination *t* is preceded by an *e* to keep it audible; as, *blend-en to blind*, *blend-ete*, *geblend-et* (*blenden*, *blentete*, *geblendet*) *falt-en to fold*, *faltete*, *gefaltet*.

All *derivative* verbs and a number of radical verbs which have lost their ancient character are conjugated by the weak form.

Note 1. Ten verbs *both* change the vowel and take *te* and *t*; see Section XXII MIXED FORM.

Note 2. The auxiliary verbs of mood (Section XXIII) and the auxiliary verbs of tense (Section XXIV) deviate from the ordinary conjugation.

3. In the ANCIENT form the vowel *changes not only* in the Imperfect and past participle, but also in the 2^d AND 3^d PERSON SINGULAR PRESENT INDICATIVE in which *a*, *au* and *o* of the root are modified, whilst *e* *short*

changes into *i*, and *e* *long* into *ie* (the root-vowel remaining *unaltered* in the plural as well as in the Subjunctive of the Present).

Hence the *Sing.* of the *Pres. Ind.* of *ancient* verbs is thus conjugated.

Singular.

1 st	ich falle,	laufe,	stoße,	gebe,	werfe.
2 ^d	du fällst,	läufst,	stößest,	giebst,	wirfst.
3 ^d	er fällt,	läuft,	stößt,	gibt,	wirft.

Plural.

1 st	wir fallen,	laufen,	stoßen,	geben,	werfen.
2 ^d	ihr fallt,	lauft,	stößt,	gebt,	werft.
3 ^d	sie fallen,	laufen,	stoßen,	geben,	werfen.

The *EXCEPTIONS* from this rule are marked* in the list p. 184—187, where also some obsolete changes of *iz* into *ix* are given.

4. THE IMPERATIVE, *speaking familiarly* to *ONE person* coincides with the 1st person S. Pres.; as, *falle! fall! laufe! run!* In emphatic language the ending *e* is dropped (*fäll! halt! lauf!*). Such ancient verbs, however, as have the root-vowel *e* and change the same into *i* or *ie* in the Sing. Present; as above, *gebe, giebst; werfe, wirfst*, form this Imperative by dropping the *st* of the 2^d pers. Hence: *Gieb! give! Wurf! throw!*

In speaking to several persons familiarly the IMPERATIVE coincides with the 2^d pers. Pl. Pres. Ind.; as, *lauff! run (ye)! Gebt! give (ye)!* In the rest of the Persons the Imperative agrees with the Subjunctive; as, *falle er! let him fall! Gebe er! let him give! Geben wir! let us give! Geben sie! let them give!*

In speaking conventionally TO ONE OR SEVERAL persons, *Sie* you is used with the 3^d pers. Pl.; as, *laufen Sie! run! Geben Sie! give!*

5. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (see p. 179) of *ancient* verbs adds an *e* throughout to the Imperfect Indicative and also modifies the vowel (*a, o* or *u*) of the same, (*würf, würfe*); whilst in the weak verbs the Imperfect Indicative and Subjunctive are alike, (*krante, krante*). This tense is very important, as it is used very

extensively for the **CONDITIONAL**, so that Becker actually calls it *the conditional*. (See Sect. XXXI).

6. Irregularities in the final consonants of the root are noticed in the list p. 182.

ANCIENT (strong) FORM.

Analogy in English: *begin, began, begun*.

werfen, to throw; (werfend, throwing); warf, threw; geworfen, thrown.

WEAK (modern) FORM.

Analogy in English: *learn, learned, learned*.

lernen, to learn; (lernend, learning); lernte, learned, gelernt, learned.

PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Sing. 1.	ich werf-e	ich werf-e
2.	du wirf-st	du werf-est
3.	er wirf-t	er werf-e
Plur. 1.	wir werf-en	wir werf-en
2.	ihr werf-t	ihr werf-et
3.	sie werf-en	sie werf-en

PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Sing. 1.	ich lern-e	ich lern-e
2.	du lern-st	du lern-est
3.	er lern-t	er lern-e
Plur. 1.	wir lern-en	wir lern-en
2.	ihr lern-t	ihr lern-et
3.	sie lern-en	sie lern-en

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Sing. 1.	ich warf	ich wüß-e
2.	du warf-st	du wüß-est
3.	er warf	er wüß-e
Plur. 1.	wir warf-en	wir wüß-en
2.	ihr warf-t	ihr wüß-et
3.	sie warf-en	sie wüß-en

(CONDITIONAL.)
ich wüß-e &c.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Sing. 1.	ich lern-te	ich lern-te
2.	du lern-test	du lern-test
3.	er lern-te	er lern-te
Plur. 1.	wir lern-ten	wir lern-ten
2.	ihr lern-tet	ihr lern-tet
3.	sie lern-ten	sie lern-ten

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, wirf! Plural, werf-t!

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, lern-e! Plural, lern-t!

A separate form for the conditional like *wüß* above, occurs only in a few verbs of the ancient form, and is marked in the list beside the vowel of the imperfect.

SECTION XXII. — MIXED FORM.

The ten verbs conjugated according to this form combine the change of vowel in the imperfect and past participle peculiar to the ancient form, with the termi-

nations of the weak, some of them changing also the final consonant of the root, as, bringen to bring, Imperf. brachte, P. P. gebracht brought; denken to think, Imperf. dachte, P. P. gedacht thought.

nennen, to call, to name; pres. part. nennend, calling; past part. genannt called.

PRESENT TENSE.		IMPERFECT TENSE.	
Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing. 1. ich nenne	ich nenne	Sing. 1. ich nannte	ich nennte
2. du nennst	du nennest.	2. du nanntest	du nenntest
3. er nennt	er nenne	3. er nannte	er nennte
Plur. 1. wir nennen	wir nennen	Plur. 1. wir nannten	wir nennten
2. ihr nennt	ihr nennet	2. ihr nanntet	ihr nenntet
3. sie nennen	sie nennen	3. sie nannten	sie nennten

Singular, nenne!

IMPERATIVE.

Plural, nennt!

LIST OF VERBS CONJUGATED ACCORDING TO THE MIXED FORM.

(None of these verbs changes the radical vowel in the present indicative.)

The vowel of the Imperfect Subjunctive is given in parentheses.

	Infinitive.	Imperfect.	Past Participle.
To burn,	brennen	brannte (e)	gebrannt
" bring,	bringen	brachte (ä)	gebracht
" think,	denken	dachte (ä)	gedacht
" know, with an ob- jective	kennen	kannte (e)	gekant
" call, to name	nennen	nannte (e)	genannt
" run,	rennen	rannnte (e)	gerannt
" send,	senden	sandte (e)	gesandt
" do, to act,	thun	that (ä)	gethan
" turn,	wenden	wandte (e)	gewandt
" know, (when con- strued with a clause) wissen	wissen	wusste (ü)	gewusst

Senden and wenden are often used according to the weak form: past part. gesendet, gewendet. — (Gesandt, gewandt rather adjectively). The Imperf. Subj. always sendete, wendete.

thun (never auxiliary) has in the Present Ind. ich thue, du thust, er thut, wir thun, ihr thut, sie thun, Imperf. Subj. thäte.

wissen has in the Present Ind. ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wissen, ihr wißt, sie wissen. Pres. Subj. ich wisse. Imperf. Subj. ich wüßte (ich weißte, du weißest, er weißt, &c. I white-wash).

kennen and *wissen* correspond with the Latin *noscere* and *scire*; French *connaître* and *savoir*.

To refer the pupil to these, is, however, of little use as those Latin and French verbs are variously, and often imperfectly interpreted. The author is glad to be able to offer the following rule for the rendering in German of the English verb *to know*.

1. Use *kennen*, when *to know* is construed with an OBJECTIVE simply; as, *Ich kenne Sie*, I know you; *Kennen Sie ihn?* Do you know him? *Gott kennt die Empfindungen und Gedanken der Menschen*, God knows the feelings and thoughts of men. *Wer den Werth der Freundschaft kennt*, whoever knows the value of friendship. — *Kennst du diesen Sted?* do you know this stick.

2. Use *wissen*, when the Object of *to know* is expressed by a SENTENCE (by a dependent clause) or by the pronouns *it*, *that*, *what*, &c. whenever they IMPLY a sentence; as, *ich weiß, wer Sie sind*, I know who you are. *Ich weiß, was für ein Mann Sie sind*, I know what sort of a man you are. *Wissen Sie, wer dieser Herr ist?* Do you know, who this gentleman is? *Ich weiß es nicht*, I don't know *it* (*who he is*). *Ich sah Ihre Schwester in Wien*; „*ich weiß das, sie hat es mir erzählt*," I saw your sister at Vienna. „*I know that (that you saw her)*"; she told me so'. *Was wissen Sie davon?* *What do you know about it?* (*tell me what you know about it*). *Gott weiß, was wir empfinden und denken*, God knows what we feel and think. *Wer es weiß, was Freundschaft ist*, — whoever knows what is friendship. —

In comparing the examples given with *kennen* and *wissen*, it will be seen that there is scarcely any difference in the *force* of these verbs, and that the usual interpretation, *connaître une personne*; *savoir une chose*; would be misleading in these and in similar cases.

3. With the nouns *Name* *name*, *Straße*, *Wohnung*, *Haus*, *Weg*, *Ort*, *street*, *dwelling-place*, *house*, *road*, *place* both *kennen* and *wissen* are used since *to know a name*, *a street* &c. may mean two things; viz. 1. to know (to be familiar with) a name, to know a street from its peculiarities, or 2. to know, *what is the name of a certain person* and where a street &c. is situated. In the latter case a sentence is implied on account of which *wissen* must be used. e. g. *Kennen Sie einen solchen Namen?* „*Ich kenne viele englische Namen, aber diesen Namen kenne ich nicht*." „*Do you know such a name?*” I know many English names (such as *Jones*, *Black*, *Smith*, *Brown*) but this name I do not know. *On the other hand*; *ich kenne diesen Herrn*, aber *ich weiß seinen Namen nicht*. I know this gentleman but I don't know his name (*how he is called*). *Ich muß schon einmal hier gewesen sein, denn ich kenne diesen Weg, diesen Bach, diese Felsen, diese Bäume*. I must have been here once before, for I know this road, this brook, these rocks, these trees. *Dieser Mann will nach N. gehen*, aber er *weiß den Weg dahin nicht*. This man wishes to go to N., but he does not know the road thither (*which road to go*). *Der Dieb kannte das Haus genau*, da er in demselben gedient hatte. The thief knew the house thoroughly as

he had been a servant in it. *Wissen Sie die Straße, das Haus?* Do you know the street, the house? (in which *street, house* he lives).

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE ANCIENT OR STRONG VERBS.

The *alphabetical* arrangement greatly facilitates reference to the many points of detail connected with these verbs, and it will also be found to ensure the necessary familiarity with their forms, if the pupil will commit to memory a limited number of the verbs each lesson from an early stage of his studies.

For those who wish to adopt the seemingly easier course of learning the ancient verbs according to their agreement in the vowels, the author has added to this alphabetical list another in which the Infinitives are divided into the usual classes and subdivisions see p. 189.

REMARKS 1. The weak verbs given in parentheses in this list are such as are apt to be confounded with forms of the strong verbs of which most of them are derived. The strong verb then has generally a PASSIVE MEANING, whilst the weak verb has a active and causative force; compare *bleichen, erschrecken, liegen, sitzen* &c.

2. Of the verbs with inseparable prefixes contained in the list (such as *beginnen, empfehlen, erschrecken, geminnen, verlieren*) no simple form exists, except *fehlen*, which is weak. The simple verbs, on the other hand, occur in numerous forms of composition conjugated by the ancient form, except in the cases stated in parentheses, which may be referred to without requiring to be committed to memory.

3. Verbs, the tenses of which are given in full, show irregularities in the root-consonants. The tenses of the rest will be readily formed according to the rules pp. 176 — 8.

4. Verbs marked with an *asterisk* do NOT ALTER the radical vowel in the second and third person PRESENT Indicative. Other changes in the Present are marked with the Infinitive.

5. If there exists, besides the regular modified form of the Imperfect Subjunctive, a separate form for the Conditional, the vowel of the latter is given in parentheses along with the Imperfect.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To bake, (being baked)	backen (weak, backen, backte, gebackt to bake trans.)	back	a
„ command, to order	befehlen (weak, fehlen to be wanting, verfehlen to miss).	a (ö)	o
„ apply oneself to,	(sich) befeissen	i	beßissen
„ begin,	beginnen	a (ö)	o
„ bite,	beißen	i	gebissen

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To conceal,	<i>bergen</i> (weak, <i>herbergen</i> or <i>beherbergen</i> to shelter, to harbour, to lodge: <i>der. from die Herberge</i> the inn, lodging).	<i>a</i>	<i>o</i>
" burst,	* <i>bersten</i>	<i>a</i> or <i>o</i> (<i>ö</i>)	<i>u</i>
" induce,	<i>beeugen</i> (from <i>wiegen</i>) (weak, deriv. <i>bewegen</i> (from <i>Weg</i>) to move; also to affect).	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" bend,	<i>biegen</i> (deriv. weak, <i>beugen</i> , to bend morally, bow down).	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" offer, to bid,	<i>bieuen</i> (<i>heutst</i> , <i>heut</i> obs.)	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" bind,	<i>binden</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>
" ask, to beg,	<i>bitten</i> (deriv. weak, <i>beten</i> to pray, to say prayers).	<i>bat</i>	<i>gebeten</i>
" blow,	<i>blasen</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>a</i>
" remain,	<i>bleiben</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>ie</i>
" blanch, to fade,	<i>bleichen</i> (weak, <i>bleichen</i> to bleach, to make white).	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
" roast, to fry,	<i>braten</i> , <i>bräts</i> , <i>brät</i> (weak, <i>braten</i> ought to be used transitively, but is not usual).	<i>ie</i>	<i>a</i>
" break,	<i>brechen</i> (deriv. weak, <i>radebrechen</i> to murder a language).	<i>a</i>	<i>o</i>
" hire, to haggle,	<i>dingen</i> (weak, <i>bedingen</i> to condition, to qualify).	(bung) <i>dingte</i>	<i>u</i>
" thresh, to thrash,	<i>dreschen</i>	<i>a</i> or <i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" penetrate, to press,	<i>dringen</i> (weak, <i>drängen</i> to throng, to urge).	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>
" recommend,	<i>empfehlen</i>	<i>a</i> (<i>ö</i>)	<i>o</i>
" become extinguished,	<i>erlöschen</i> (<i>erlöscht</i> , <i>erlischt</i>) (weak, <i>löschen</i> and <i>auslöschen</i> to extinguish)	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" get a fright,	<i>erschrecken</i> (weak, <i>erschrecken</i> to frighten).	<i>erschraf</i>	<i>u</i>
" shrink from fright,	<i>zusammenschracken</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>zusammengeschrackt</i>
" eat,	<i>essen</i> , <i>isst</i> , <i>ist</i>	<i>aß</i>	<i>geessen</i>
" go in a conveyance,	<i>fahren</i> (weak, <i>führen</i> to conduct, <i>wallfahren</i> to comply, <i>wallfahren</i> to make a pilgrimage).	<i>u</i>	<i>a</i>
" fall,	<i>fallen</i> (weak, <i>fällen</i> to fell).	<i>fiel</i>	<i>a</i>
" catch,	<i>fangen</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>a</i>
" fight,	<i>fechten</i> , <i>sichst</i> , <i>sicht</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" find,	<i>finden</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>
" twine, to braid, to plait	<i>flechten</i> , <i>sichst</i> , <i>sicht</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>u</i>

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To fly,	<i>fliegen</i> (<i>fliegt</i> , <i>fliegt</i> obs.)	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" flee,	<i>fliehen</i> (<i>fliecht</i> , <i>fliecht</i> obs.)	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" flow	<i>fließen</i> (<i>fliehet</i> obs.) (weak, <i>flößen</i> to float timber, to instil).	<i>o</i>	<i>gefloßen</i>
" to inquire, to ask	<i>fragen</i>	<i>frag</i> (obs.)	<i>gefragt</i> (weak)
" eat (said of beasts)	<i>fressen</i> , <i>frist</i>	<i>fraß</i>	<i>e</i>
" to freeze	<i>frieren</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" ferment	<i>gähren</i> (weak, <i>gähren</i> to be agitated, to ferment politically &c.).	<i>o</i> (<i>ä</i>)	<i>o</i>
" bring forth	<i>gebären</i> , <i>gebierst</i> , <i>gebirt</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>o</i>
" give,	<i>geben</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>
" thrive, to prosper,	<i>gedeihen</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>te</i>
" go, to walk, to pass,	* <i>gehen</i> , (O. H. G. <i>gangan</i>)	<i>ging</i>	<i>gegangen</i>
" succeed with,	<i>gelingen</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>
" be worth, to be thought of	<i>gelten</i> , <i>giltst</i> , <i>gilt</i>	<i>a</i> (<i>ö</i>)	<i>o</i>
" recover from illness,	* <i>genesen</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>
" enjoy,	<i>genießen</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>genossen</i>
" happen, to be done	<i>geschehen</i> (<i>geschicht</i> obs.)	<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>
" win, to gain,	<i>gewinnen</i>	<i>a</i> (<i>ö</i>)	<i>o</i>
" pour, to shed,	<i>gießen</i> , (<i>gießest</i> , <i>gießt</i> obs.)	<i>o</i>	<i>gegossen</i>
" be like to,	<i>gleichen</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
" glide,	<i>gleiten</i> (weak, <i>begleiten</i> , to accompany from lei- ten to lead).	<i>glitt</i>	<i>geglitten</i>
" glimmer, to smoulder,	<i>glimmen</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" dig,	<i>graben</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>a</i>
" grasp, to touch,	<i>greifen</i>	<i>griff</i>	<i>gegriffen</i>
" hold,	* <i>halten</i> , <i>hältst</i> , <i>hält</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>a</i>
" be suspended, to cling,	<i>hängen</i> (weak, <i>hängen</i> and <i>hengen</i> , to hang, to make hang).	<i>i</i>	<i>a</i>
" hew, to strike,	* <i>hauen</i>	<i>hieb</i>	<i>gehauen</i>
" heave, to lift,	<i>heben</i>	<i>o</i> (<i>ü</i>) (<i>hub an</i> &c. obs.)	<i>o</i>
" be called, to call, to bid,	<i>heißen</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>ei</i>
" help, to aid, to avail,	<i>helfen</i>	<i>a</i> (<i>ü</i>)	<i>o</i>
" scold,	<i>keffen</i> (better weak)	<i>kiff</i>	<i>getiffen</i>
" choose, to espouse,	(<i>er-</i>) <i>kiesen</i> , (<i>er-</i>) <i>fären</i>	<i>erfor</i>	<i>erfozen</i>
" climb,	<i>klimmen</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To <i>cling</i> , to <i>sound</i> , to <i>ring</i> ,	<i>klingen</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>
" <i>pinch</i> , to <i>nip</i> ,	<i>kneifen</i> (<i>kneipen</i>)	<i>kniiff</i>	<i>gekniffen</i>
" <i>to come</i> , to <i>reach</i> ,	* <i>kommen</i>	<i>kam</i>	<i>o</i>
	(weak, <i>be willkommen</i> , better <i>be willkommen</i> = <i>new to welcome</i> from the Adj. <i>willkommen</i> welcome).		
" <i>shriek</i> , to <i>screech</i> ,	<i>kretschén</i> ,	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
" <i>creep</i> ,	<i>kriechén</i> , (<i>krenschén</i> , <i>krecht</i> obs.)	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" <i>load</i> , to <i>invite</i> ,	* <i>laden</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>a</i>
" <i>let</i> , to <i>permit</i> , to <i>cause</i> , to <i>leave</i> ,	<i>lassen</i>	<i>ließ</i>	<i>a</i>
	(weak, <i>veranlassen</i> to occasion).		
" <i>run</i> ,	<i>laufen</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>gelaufen</i>
" <i>suffer</i> ,	<i>leiden</i>	<i>litt</i>	<i>gelitten</i>
	(weak, <i>be mittheiden</i> to pity from das <i>Mitleid</i> compassion; <i>verleiden</i> to mar, to make dislike).		
" <i>lend</i> , to <i>borrow</i> ,	<i>leihen</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>ie</i>
" <i>read</i> , to <i>pick</i> , to <i>gather</i> ,	<i>lesen</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>
" <i>lie</i> , to <i>rest upon</i> ,	<i>liegen</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>
	(weak, <i>legen</i> to lay, to make lie).		
" <i>lie</i> , to <i>tell a falsehood</i> ,	<i>lügen</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" <i>grind</i> (corn &c.)	<i>mahlen</i>	<i>mahlte</i>	<i>gemahlen</i>
	(weak, <i>malen</i> to paint).		
" <i>avoid</i> , to <i>shun</i> ,	<i>meiden</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>ie</i>
" <i>milk</i> ,	* <i>melken</i> (also weak)	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" <i>measure</i> ,	<i>messen</i>	<i>maß</i>	<i>e</i>
" <i>take</i> ,	<i>nehmen</i> , <i>nimmst</i> , <i>nimmt</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>genommen</i>
" <i>whistle</i> ,	<i>pfeifen</i>	<i>pfiiff</i>	<i>gepfiiffen</i>
" <i>keep up</i> , to <i>tend</i> , to <i>hold</i> (council &c.)	<i>pflegen</i>	<i>o</i> or <i>a</i>	<i>o</i>
	(weak, <i>pflegen</i> to use to, to nurse).		
" <i>praise</i> , to <i>extol</i> ,	<i>preisen</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>ie</i>
" <i>spring forth</i> , to <i>well</i> ,	<i>quellen</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" <i>revenge</i> ,	<i>rächen</i> (better weak)	<i>rächte</i>	<i>gerächt</i>
" <i>advise</i> , to <i>counsel</i> ,	<i>rathén</i> (<i>räth</i>)	<i>ie</i>	<i>u</i>
	(weak, <i>heirathén</i> to marry).		
" <i>rub</i> ,	<i>reiben</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>ie</i>
" <i>tear</i> ,	<i>reißen</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>geriiffen</i>
" <i>ride</i> (on horseback),	<i>reiten</i>	<i>ritt</i>	<i>geritten</i>
" <i>smell</i> ,	<i>riechén</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" <i>struggle</i> , to <i>wrestle</i> ,	<i>ringen</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>
	(weak, <i>umringen</i> from <i>Ring</i> to surround).		

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To run (of fluids) to flow, *	rinnen	a	a
" cry out, to call	rufen	ie	u
" drink (said of beasts),	saufen	soff	geseffen
	(weak, erſäufet to drown beasts).		
" suck,	* ſaugen	o	o
	(weak, ſäugen to nurse, to suckle).		
" create,	ſchaffen	ſchuf	a
	(weak, ſchaffen to procure, to do, abſchaffen to abolish, to dismiss, anſchaffen, herbeſchaffen to procure, to provide, fortſchaffen to transport, verſchaffen to procure, beſchaffen to remove, and similar compounds expressing moving).		
" sound, to resound	ſchallen (ancient only o in its Compounds).		o
" part, to separate,	ſcheiden	ie	ie
" shine, to seem,	ſcheinen	ie	ie
" scold, to chide,	ſchelten, ſchiltſt, ſchilt a		o
	(ſchälte Imperf. from ſchälen weak, to peel).		
" shear,	* ſcheren	o	o
	(weak, ſich ſcheren to vex one's self).		
" shove, to push,	ſchieben	o	o
" shoot,	ſchießen	o	geſchoſſen
" flay, to skin,	ſchinden	ſchindete	u
" sleep,	ſchlafen	ie	a
" beat, to strike,	ſchlagen	u	a
	(weak, rathſchlagen to counsel, to deliberate).		
" tread softly, to steal, to sneak,	ſchleichen	i	i
" sharpen, to polish,	ſchleifen	ſchliff	geſchliffen
	(weak, ſchleifen (ſchleppen) to trail, to drag, to raze).		
" slit (little used)	ſchleißen	i	geſchliſſen
" lock, to close, to conclude	ſchließen (ſchleußt obs.)	o	geſchloſſen
" wreath, to twine, to swallow,	ſchlingen	a	u
" sing,	ſchmelzen	i	geſchmiſſen
" melt, (being melted)	ſchmelzen	o	o
	(weak, ſchmelzen to melt, to make melt).		
" snort, to blow,	* ſchnauben	o	o
" cut,	ſchneiden	ſchnitt	geſchnitten
" screw,	ſchrauben (also weak)	o	o
" write,	ſchreiben	ie	ie
" cry aloud,	ſchreien	ie	ie
" stride, to pace,	ſchreiten	ſchritt	geſchritten

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To foster,	schwären	schwor	geschworen
" be silent,	schweigen	ie	ie
" rise, to swell,	schwellen	o	o
	(weak, <i>schwellen</i> to make swell, to expand).		
" swim	schwimmen	a (ü)	o
	(weak, <i>schwimmen</i> to wash away, to bathe horses).		
" vanish (being consumed),	schwinden	a	u
	(weak, <i>verschwinden</i> to squander, to waste).		
" swing, to soar,	schwingen	a	u
" take an oath, to swear,	schwören	o or u (ü)	o
" see,	sehen	a	e
" be, (to have),	sein (sēyn, wesen obs.)	war	gewesen
" seethe, to boil (<i>pass.</i>).	sieden	fett	gekottet
	(weak, <i>sieden</i> to make boil, to cook; also to be boiling).		
" sing,	singen	a	u
" sink, to settle downward,	sinken	a	u
	(weak, <i>sinken</i> to sink, to make sink, to lower).		
" meditate, to muse,	sinnen	a	o
" sit (being seated),	sitzen	sah	gesessen
	(weak, <i>setzen</i> to seat, to make sit, to put).		
" split, to slit (<i>pass.</i>)	spalten	spalt	a
" spit, to spew,	spelen	ie	ie
" spin,	spinnen	a (ü)	o
" split, to slit,	spalten	i	gesplitten
" speak,	sprechen	a	o
" sprout,	sprossen	o	gesprossen
" spring, to crack,	springen	a	u
	(weak, <i>sprengen</i> to blast, to gallop).		
" sting, to stab,	stechen	a	o
	(weak, <i>stecken</i> to fix, to put into).		
" stand,	* stehen (<i>Goth.</i> standan) stand (ü)		gestanden
" steal,	stehlen	a (ü)	o
" step (up or down), to climb, to rise,	steigen	ie	ie
" die,	sterben	a (ü)	e
" fly about in atoms,	stieben	o	e
" smell badly, to stink,	stinken	a	u
" toss, to push, to knock against,	stoßen	ie	e
" stroke, to paint,	streichen	i	i
" contest, to dispute,	streiten	tritt	gestritten
" do (see p. 180),	* thun	that	gethan

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To bear, to carry, to wear,	tragen (weak, <i>beauftragen</i> to commission, from <i>der Auftrag</i> the commission).	u	a
" hit, to meet with, to happen,	treffen	traf	getroffen
" drive, to push, to study,	treiben	ie	ie
" tread, to step,	treten, trittst, tritt	a	e
" drip, to run,	triefen (<i>träufst</i> , <i>träuft</i> obs.)	troff	getroffen
" drink,	trinken (weak, <i>tränken</i> to give to drink, to water).	a	u
" deceive,	trügen	o	o
" spoil, (being spoiled, to rot),	verderben (weak, <i>verderben</i> to spoil <i>trans.</i> , to corrupt, to vitiate P. P. <i>sometimes verderben</i>).	a (ü)	o
" vex, to annoy,	verdrücken (<i>verdreucht</i> o obs.)		verdröffen
" forget,	vergessen	vergaß	e
" lose,	verlieren	o	o
(to wax), to grow, to increase,	verlöschen see <i>erlöschen</i> , wachsen	u	a
" wash,	waschen	u	a
" weave, to make a tissue	weben (weak, <i>weben</i> to weave, to move, <i>gewebtes Zeug</i> woven cloth).	o	o
" yield, to waver,	weichen (weak, <i>weichen</i> to soften, to soak, to steep).	i	i
" shew, to direct,	weisen	ie	ie
" sue, to seek, to enlist,	werben	a (ü)	o
" become, to grow, to turn,	werden (<i>ward</i> (<i>Sing.</i>); <i>wurde</i>)		o
" throw, to fling,	werfen	a (ü)	o
" weigh, to have a weight,	wiegen (weak, <i>wägen</i> to weigh, to ponder). (weak, <i>wiegen</i> to rock, to wave).	o	o
" wind, to turn,	winden	a	u
" accuse of, to blame with,	zeihen	ie	ie
" draw, to rear, to move, to pass,	ziehen	zog	gezogen
" force, to compel,	zwingen (weak, <i>zwingen</i> to force, to press, to constrain).	a	u

THE ANCIENT VERBS ARRANGED ACCORDING TO THE VOWELS.

By referring to the preceding alphabetical list, the pupil will be enabled to write out a complete table of the verbs, which may serve the purpose of an exercise in revision.

First Class.

a. binden, bingen, bringen, finden, gelingen, klingen, ringen, schinden, schlingen, schwinden, schwingen, singen, sinken, springen, stinken, trinken, winden, zwingen.

b. befehlen, beginnen, bergen, bersten, brechen, empfehlen, erschrecken, gebären, gelten, gewinnen, helfen, kommen, nehmen, rinnen, schelten, schwimmen, sinnen, spinnen, sprechen, stechen, stehlen, sterben, treffen, verderben, werben, werden, werfen.

c. bewegen, biegen, bieten, brechen, erkiesen, erküren, erschallen, fechten, flechten, fliegen, fliehen, fließen, frieren, gähren, genießen, gießen, glimmen, heben, klimmen, kriechen, erlöschen, verlöschen, lügen, melfen, pflegen, quellen, rächen, riechen, saufen, saugen, schallen, scheren, schieben, schießen, schließen, schmelzen, schnauben, schrauben, schwären, schwellen, schwören, sieden, sprießen, stieben, triesen, trügen, verdriesen, verlieren, verschallen, weben, wiegen, wägen, ziehen.

d. bitten, cffen, fressen, geben, genesen, geschehen, legen, liegen, messen, sehen, sein or wesen, sitzen, treten, ver-
gessen.

Second Class.

a. (sich) befeissen, beißen, bleichen, gleichen, gleiten, greifen, keifen, kneifen, kreischen, leiden, pfeifen, reissen, reiten, schleichen, schleifen, schleissen, schmeissen, schneiden, schreiten, schleissen, streichen, streiten, weichen.

b. bleiben, gebeissen, leihen, meiden, preissen, reiben, scheiden, scheinen, schreiben, schreien, schweigen, speien, steigen, treiben, weissen, zeihen.

Third Class.

a. blasen, braten, fallen, fangen, gehen, halten, hauen, hauen, heißen, lassen, laufen, rathen, rufen, schlafen, spalten, stoßen.

b. baden, fahren, fragen, graben, laden, mahlen, schaffen, schlagen, stehen, tragen, wachsen, waschen.

SECTION XXIII. — AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

The following six auxiliary verbs of mood, which require the *INFINITIVE* of the principal verb without *zu* to, have a conjugation peculiar to themselves. (see next page). — The words in small capitals give the principal signification. The more *idiomatical* application is given in small print.

As to their *logical* force, the first three of these verbs may be said to express *POSSIBILITY*, viz.

1. können (*can*), possibility simply.
2. mögen (*may, like*), possibility, as determined by the *subject*, often implying the *consent of the speaker*.
3. dürfen (*dare*), possibility, as determined by *some other person* or by *law*.

The other three express *NECESSITY*.

1. müssen (*must*), necessity simply.
2. wollen (*will, wish*), necessity, as determined by the *subject*.
3. sollen (*shall*), necessity, as determined by *some other person*, or by *law*.

1. können TO BE ABLE TO, to know how to, to know (a language, a lesson); e. g. Er kann lesen, He can, (knows how to) read, Sie kann Deutsch, She knows German. Kannst du die Regeln? Do you know (to say) the rules?

können does not merely express ability or power, but also *liberty and possibility*: Sie können es thun, You may do it. Er kann gehen, He may go. Das kann sein, That may be. Du kannst fallen, you may fall. (*I could not but &c.*; see müssen).

2. mögen TO LIKE TO, to be likely to; e. g. Ich mag nicht mehr trinken, *I don't like to drink any more*. Er mag zu Hause sein, (*often*: Er wird zu Hause sein). *He is likely to be at home, he is probably at home*. In the sense of *to like to* mögen, is chiefly used in negative phrases; as, Ich mag nicht spielen, *I don't like to*

play. Affirmatively it generally stands with the *Infinitive understood*; as, Mögen Sie Fische? (*essen*), *Do you like (to eat) fish?* Ich mag ihn gern; (*sehen, sprechen*), *I like (to see, to speak with) him.* (The Adverb *gern*, along with the verb of the clause, expresses *being fond of*, or *liking*; as, Ich esse gern Kirichen, *I am fond of cherries.* Trinken Sie lieber Portwein? *Do you prefer Port-wine?* — See p. 95 E. and Sect. XXVIII).

a. mögen also expresses *ACQUIESCENCE*; as, Du magst ausgehen, *You may go out.* Mag es sein, *Let it be;* Often with the idea of *indifference*: Er mag thun, was er will, *He may do as he pleases;* or *contempt*: Mögen sie klatschen, *Let them gossip.* Mag er doch, *Let him!* And even *menace*: Er möge sich hüten, mich zu reizen, *Let him take care not to provoke me.*

b. Phrases like the following imply *LIKING*, similar to the English 'May it please your grace'; Möchten Sie so gut sein, *Would you be so good!* Ich bat ihn, er möchte kommen, *I asked him (to be so good as) to come.* Möchte es nun sein (*likelihood*), daß er abgehalten werden war, oder daß er nicht kommen möchte, — *Whether it was that he was detained, or that he did not like to come.*

3. DÜRFEN TO BE PERMITTED TO, to be at liberty to; Darf ich kommen? *May I come?* Du darfst ihm Alles sagen, *You may tell him all.* The English: *I (Thou &c.) MUST NOT*—is often rendered by *nicht dürfen*; as, Es darf nicht angerührt werden, *It must not be touched.* Kinder dürfen nicht Alles hören, *Children must not hear every thing.* Wir dürfen Das nicht wagen, *We durst not venture that.*

dürfen used in connexion with the negative adverbs *nur only*, *kaum scarcely*, *nicht not*, occurs with the force of the verb *brauchen*, to *need*, which is construed with the Infinitive with *zu*. Thus, instead of: Sie brauchen nur zu klingeln! It is often said: Sie dürfen nur klingeln, *You only need to ring.* Du darfst es kaum erwähnen, *You scarcely need to mention it.* Sie dürfen sich nicht so anstrengen, *You need not exert yourself so much.* That is: *You are at liberty to exert yourself less.*

Note. Compare the *CONDITIONALS* es könnte regnen, *it might rain.* (It is simply possible). Es möchte regnen, *it might rain.* (It is likely). Es dürfte regnen, *it might rain*, (which is a rather positive assertion expressed with deference).

4. müssen (*must*), expresses necessity: to be ob-

liged to, TO BE COMPELLED TO, (to have to, to require to); as, *ich muß arbeiten*, I must work. *Ich mußte arbeiten*, I had to work. *Dazu muß man ein Mikroskop haben*, For this one requires to have a microscope.

Notice: *Ich mußte lachen*, I could not but laugh, I could not help laughing.

a. *müssen* is, as in English, used with an apparent or inferred necessity; as, *Er muß reich sein*, He must be rich. *Das muß unangenehm sein*. That must be disagreeable. *Es mußte sein*, daß &c., Unless &c.

b. *müssen* occurs in elliptical phrases; as, *Ich muß fort*. (gehen) I must go away, (leave)! *Es muß heraus* (gesagt werden)! It must be said! It must be confessed! *Er muß aufs Land* (gehen) He must go to the country!

c. MUST NOT is rendered by *nicht dürfen* (see above 3), the German *nicht müssen* (having the force of NOT TO BE COMPELLED TO, especially in the 1st person; as, *Ich muß nicht gehen*, I am not compelled to go. *Wir müssen nicht dienen*, wir thun es freiwillig. We are not forced to serve, we do it voluntarily.

The verbs *wollen* (Lat. *velle*; Fr. *vouloir*) and *fallen* (Lat. *debere*; Fr. *devoir*) do NOT denote mere futurity; this is expressed by the AUXILIARY VERB OF TENSE *werden* (See p. 198, 2 a).

5. *wollen* to be willing to, to be going to, TO WISH, to be inclined to, to want to, TO INTEND TO, to mean to, e. g. *ich will kommen*, aber *ich werde nicht dürfen*, I wish to come (I have the will to come), but I shall not be permitted. *Wir wollen nicht hingehen*, aber *wir werden es müssen*. We are not inclined to go there, but we shall be forced to do so. *Wann willst du abreisen?* When do you intend to start? *Ich wollte eben schreiben*, I was just going to write. *Was wollen Sie damit sagen?* What do you mean (to say) by that?

a. *wollen* is used elliptically in phrases like: *Wohin wollen Sie* (gehen, reisen)? Where are you going to? Whither bound? *Ich will nach Berlin*, I am going to Berlin. Compare the Scotch proverb 'Who will to Cupar, maun to Cupar.' *Was will er damit?* What is he going to do whit it? *Was willst du dort?* What do you wish to do there?

b. *wollen* in the 3^d person occurs in the sense of ALLEGING; as, *Er will es gefunden haben*, He alleges (affirms), that he has found it. *Er will in London gewesen sein*, He will have people believe, that

he has been in London. Er mochte ihn erst gar nicht kennen, He at first pretended not to know him at all.

c. wollen expresses *ability*; as, Wie wollen Sie das heut' noch vollenden? How can you accomplish that to-day yet? Wer will das ergründen? Who can fathom that?

Note 2. A distinction must be made between this AUXILIARY verb of mood and the verb ABSOLUTE *wollen to will*, as used in sentences like: Gott will es, *God wills it*. Der Herr hat es gewollt, *The Lord has willed it*. Du wolltest es so, *It was your own will*. Used absolutely *wollen* often means *to want, to wish*, (see Sect. XXV. C.), *to like, may*; as, Gott will, daß wir frei seien, *God wants us to be free*. Wir wollen, daß unsere Kinder gut wären, *We wish our children to become good*. Ihn', was du willst, *Do what you like*. Sei dem wie ihm wolle, *Be that as it may*. Komme was will! *Let come what may*.

6. sollen expresses *DUTY*; to be bidden to; as, Du sollst nicht falsch Zeugniß reden, *Thou shalt not bear false witness*. Die Gesellschaft sollte die Kunst fördern, *Society should (ought to) promote art*. Wer soll das thun? *Who is (bidden) to do that?* Ihr sollt jetzt in die Schule gehen, *You are to go to school now*. Die Brücke soll in einem Jahre fertig werden, *The bridge is to be finished in a year*.

a. sollen is often used with an appointment or destination; as Die Kirche soll reparirt werden, *The church is to be repaired*. Er soll nach Paris gehen, *He is to go to Paris*.

b. Elliptically: Er soll aus dem Hause, *He is to leave the house*. Sage mir, was soll ich, *Tell me what I have to do*. Wo soll das hinaus? *Where is that to end?* Was soll ich damit? *What am I to do with that?* also: Of what use is that to me? Was soll mir das? (*understood nützen, helfen*), *Of what use is that to me?* Was sollen diese Thränen? *What is the meaning (the use) of these tears?* Was soll das? *for: Was soll das heißen?* *What is the meaning of that?*

c. sollen is used in indefinite statements with the force of *people say*, — it is reported; as, Er soll ein reicher Mann sein, *He is said to be a rich man*. Sie soll sehr liebenswürdig sein, *People say she is very amiable*. Der Feind soll sich zurückziehen, *The enemy is reported to be retreating*.

7. The verb lassen *TO LET* and some other verbs, used in the capacity of auxiliary verbs of Mood; are explained p. 197.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXIL. VERBS OF MOOD,

The tenses, of which only the first person is given, are conjugated regularly: —

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

INFINITIVE.	Singular.			Plural.		
	ich	du	er, sie, es	wir	ihr	sie
können	kann	kannst	kann	können	könnt	können
mögen	mag	magst	mag	mögen	mögt	mögen
dürfen	darf	darfst	darf	dürfen	dürft	dürfen
müssen	muß	mußt	muß	müssen	müßt	müssen
wollen	will	willst	will	wollen	wollt	wollen
sollen	soll	sollst	soll	sollen	sollt	sollen

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.*

(retains the vowel of the Infinitive, and has *e* throughout, as, *ich könne*, *du könntest*, *er könne*, *wir können*, *ihr könnt*, *sie können*).

ich könne *ich möge* *ich dürfe* *ich müsse* *ich wolle* *ich solle*
 that I can that I may that I am that I am that I want that I shall
 or may, or might. or was per- or was ob- or wanted or should.
 might or mitted to. liged to. to.
 was able,
 that I may
 be able.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

(The vowel is not modified).

ich konnte *ich mochte* *ich durfte* *ich mußte* *ich wollte* *ich sollte*
 I could, I liked to. I durst, I was obli- I intended I was (bid-
 was able. was per- ged to, *had* to. den) to.
 mitted to. to.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, GENERALLY USED AS CONDITIONAL.†

(Formed by modifying the vowel of the Imperfect Indicative, except in *wollte* and *sollte*).

ich könnte *ich möchte* *ich dürfte* *ich müßte* *ich wolle* *ich sollte*
 I could, I I might, I I were per- I should be I would, I I should, I
 should be should, or mitted to. compelled should or ought to.
 able, I would like I might. to, I would would be
 might. to. have to. inclined to.

Only *wollen* has an imperative: *wolle!* pl. *wollt!* The compound tenses are formed as with other verbs. (See Sect. XXIV).

* See on the use of the Subjunctive. Sect. XXXI.

† See on the use of the Conditional. Sect. XXXI.

These verbs form the usual PAST PARTICIPLE with the prefix *ge* only when they are used ABSOLUTELY; as, *Ich habe es nie gekonnt, I never had it in my power. Er hat es nicht gemocht, He did not like it. Gott hat es gewollt, God has willed it.* (*Gedurst, gemußt and gesollt* are hardly ever used).

When used as AUXILIARY verbs of mood the form of the *Infinitive* of these verbs as well as of *lassen* and the other verbs mentioned below is used as PAST PARTICIPLE; as,

PERFECT TENSE.

(Generally with the force of the English Past).

1. *Ich habe (kommen) können. I was (have been) able (to come).*
2. *Ich habe nicht (kommen) mögen. I did not like (to come).*
3. *Ich habe (kommen) dürfen. I was (have been) permitted (to come).*
4. *Ich habe (kommen) müssen. I was (have been) compelled (to come).*
5. *Ich habe (kommen) wollen. I was (have been) inclined (to come).*
6. *Ich habe (kommen) sollen. I was (to come).*

PLUPERFECT

(used as in English).

Ich hatte (kommen) können &c. &c. I had been able &c. &c. (to come).

PARTICULAR ATTENTION should be paid to the application of the PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (chiefly used as *Conditional Past*, see Sert. XXXI the Conditional, 2 d).

1. *Ich hätte können I might have, that is: I would have been able.*
2. *Ich hätte mögen. I would have liked to, I would fain have.*
3. *Ich hätte dürfen. I might have, that is: I would have been permitted.*

4. Ich hätte müssen. I would have been compelled to, (I ought to have).

5. Ich hätte wollen. (Used in quotations.) *that I had intended.*

6. Ich hätte sollen. *I ought to have, that is: It would have been my duty to.*

The Future tenses are formed as in other verbs of the Infinitive Present and Past construed with the Present of the auxiliary verb of tense werden (See p. 198, 2 a); as,

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde (kommen) können &c. &c. I shall be able &c. &c. (to come).

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde haben (kommen) können &c. &c. I shall have been able &c. &c. (to come).

Nota. In the rules for the construction of sentences Sect. XXX, 5 a and b the PECULIAR ARRANGEMENT of the various parts of the compound tenses of auxiliary verbs of mood is fully explained.

The following verbs are employed in the manner of auxiliary verbs of mood and then are in the compound tenses both *conjugated and construed* like the above real auxiliary verbs of mood; as,

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
1. lassen to let (see below)	ließ	lassen
2. fühlen to feel	fühlte	fühlen
3. heißen to bid	hieß	heißen
4. helfen to assist in	half	helfen
5. hören to hear	hörte	hören
6. lehren to teach	lehnte	lehren
7. lernen to learn	lernte	lernen
8. machen to make	machte	machen
9. sehen to see	sah	sehen

Ich habe ihn kommen sehen or hören, I have seen or heard him coming. Ich habe ihn achten lernen, I have learned to esteem him.

(As *absolute verbs*, the above form the past participle in the ordinary way; viz. *gelaſſen, geſüßt, geheißen, gehört, geſehen, &c.*).

Laſſen to let, to leave, to cauſe to, to order to, to allow to, to permit to, to ſuffer to, to make, to get or have (something done, ſent, &c.), the moſt important of the above verbs, is always conſtrued with the main Infinitive in the ACTIVE VOICE; as, *Laß es bringen*, where in English the Paſſive voice is uſed, *Let it be brought. Cauſe, order, ſuffer, &c. it to be brought.* *Heißen, hören and ſehen* can likewise be conſtrued with the main verb in the INFINITIVE ACTIVE; *Er hieß ihn enthaupten, He ordered him to be beheaded. Ich ſah ihn enthaupten, I ſaw him being beheaded. Ich hörte ihn Georg nennen, I heard him call George* (for *being called George*); — yet in ambiguous caſes theſe three are followed by ſome other conſtruction; as, *He bade ſome one to behead him. He ſaw how he was beheaded. I heard that he was called George.*

(The reaſon for this uſe of the Infinitive Active inſtead of the English Paſſive voice is ſtated Section XXX C).

SECTION XXIV. — THE THREE AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE.

(Of the uſe of the verb *thun to do* as an Auxiliary but a few traces have remained eſpecially in ballad ſtyle; as in Goethe's '*der König in Thule*'. *Die Augen thäten ihm ſinken. His eyes did ſink.* Or in Schiller's '*Wallenſtein's Lager*'. *War's doch nicht ärger und grauer hier, als der Sach's im Lande thät pochen. For ſurely, it was not worſe and more horrible here, when the Saxons were boating in the land. So ritt ich hinüber zu den Leigißen, ſie thäten ſich juſt gegen Magdeburg rüſten. Thus I rode over to the Leaguers, they were THEN making preparations againſt Magdeburg.* Sometimes in conditional clauses: *Thätſt du zu rechter Zeit dich regen, hät'tſt du's bequemer haben mögen. (Goethe.) Hadſt thou beſtirred thyſelf at the right time, thou mightſt have had it more eaſily.* Also in idioms of the vulgar; as, *Wenn et man dauern dhuen dhäte! If it only did do thaw! for: Wenn es nur thauen wollte! If it only would thaw!*

The following three verbs are alſo USED ABSOLUTELY; 1. *ſein* (obſolete *ſeyn*; originally *wefen*) *war, ge- wefen to be, to exiſt*, as an *Auxiliary ſein* muſt not be

rendered by *to be*, nor *to be* by *sein*; except in the idioms *he is come, gone*; (see below c). 2. *werden*, *ward* or *wurde*, *geworden* (Lat. *feri*) *to be created, to become, to grow, to turn, to get*, (all in the sense of *to become*). 3. *haben* *to have* (in the sense of *to possess*).

1. THE AUXILIARY *sein* *to have* is employed in forming the COMPOUND PAST TENSES.

a. Of the verbs absolute *sein* *to be*, *bleiben* *to remain* and *erscheinen* *to appear*; as, *Er ist gewesen*. He *has* been. *Ich war gewesen*. I *had* been. *Er wird geblieben sein*. He *will have* remained. *Sie müssen erschienen sein*. They *must have* appeared. (*These intransitive verbs denote forms of EXISTENCE*).

b. Of all *intransitive* verbs, denoting TRANSITION OR CHANGE OF CONDITION; as, *Du bist groß geworden*. You *have* become (grown) tall. *Ich war erwacht*. I *had* awoke (that is ceased to sleep). *Sie sind gestorben*. They *have* died. *Es kann nicht verschwunden sein*. It cannot *have* vanished.

c. Of all *intransitive* verbs denoting LOCOMOTION OR CHANGE OF PLACE; as, *Er war gekommen und ist wieder gegangen*. He *had* come and *has* (is) gone again. *Er ist aus dem Fenster gesprungen, ist durch den Garten gelaufen, ist entflohen*. He *has* sprung out of the window, *has* run through the garden, *has* fled. *Das Kind muß gefallen sein*. The child *must have* fallen.

Note 1. When by intransitive verbs of the last kind properly signifying locomotion, a *farther meaning* is to be expressed; as, *tanzten* *to dance*, *fahren* *to drive* (when meaning *to rein the horses or to carry*), *reiten* *to ride* (when meaning *to take exercise on horseback*), *reisen* *to travel* (when meaning *to enjoy or profit by travelling*) they are not conjugated with *sein* but with *haben*; see below).

Note 2. In combinations like: *Es ist (war) zu sehen*. *It is (was) to be seen*, the verb *sein* to be is *not auxiliary*, at any rate, not an auxiliary verb of tense.

2. THE AUXILIARY *werden* forms

a. THE FUTURE TENSES of the main verb, when its *Present tense* is used with the INFINITIVES present and past of the same; as, *Ich werde streben*. I *shall*

or *will* strive. *Ich werde gestrebt haben. I shall have striven. Ich werde alt werden. I shall become old. Ich werde alt geworden sein. I shall have become old.*

b. werden (P. P. *worden*) forms the PASSIVE VOICE, when conjugated through all its tenses along with the PAST PARTICIPLE of the *main* verb; as, *Ich werde geliebt. I am loved. Ich wurde geliebt. I was loved. Ich bin geliebt worden. I have been loved. Ich werde geliebt werden. I shall be loved.*

3. THE AUXILIARY *haben* is used in forming the compound Past tenses of the Active voice of all VERBS TRANSITIVE AND REFLECTIVE and also of all INTRANSITIVE VERBS except those classes mentioned with *sein* *a, b, c*, above.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE.

(The portions given in parentheses are used *absolutely*, whilst the meaning of the rest is that of the verb when used as an *Auxiliary*).

(The present of *sein* is derived from different roots. In *haben* and *werden* euphonic changes of the final consonant of the root occur, as, *du hast, hättest*, instead of *hast, hättest*, *wirst* instead of *wirdest*, &c. Besides the Imperfect Indicative *warde*, there occurs also the singular *ich ward, du wardst, er ward*, used solemnly).

Sein (formerly *wesen*, *Werden* shall, will (future), *seiend* being); *war* (formerly to be (passive voice); (*wer- was*), had; (*gewesen* been, *wend* becoming); *wurde was gewesen sein* to have been). (passive voice); (*ge-*) *worden* been (passive voice); (*ge-*) *worden sein* to have been (pass. voice).

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
I have	that I have or had.	I shall. will	that I shall, will, or should, would;
		I am (passive voice).	I am or was (p. v.)
Sing. <i>ich bin</i>	<i>ich sei</i>	<i>ich werde</i>	<i>ich werde</i>
<i>du bist</i>	<i>du seiest</i>	<i>du wirst</i>	<i>du werdest</i>
<i>er ist</i>	<i>er sei</i>	<i>er wird</i>	<i>er werde</i>
Plur. <i>wir sind</i>	<i>wir seien</i>	<i>wir werden</i>	<i>wir werden</i>
<i>ihr seid</i>	<i>ihr seiet</i>	<i>ihr werdet</i>	<i>ihr werdet</i>
<i>sie sind</i>	<i>sie seien</i>	<i>sie werden</i>	<i>sie werden</i>

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>	
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
I had	that I had; generally, would have.	I was (<i>e. g.</i> , praised).	that I was; generally, I were or would be (<i>e. g.</i> , praised).
Sing. <i>ich</i> war	<i>ich</i> wäre	<i>ich</i> wurde	<i>ich</i> würde
<i>du</i> warst	<i>du</i> wärest	<i>du</i> würdest	<i>du</i> würdest
<i>er</i> war	<i>er</i> wäre	<i>er</i> wurde	<i>er</i> würde
Plur. <i>wir</i> waren	<i>wir</i> wären	<i>wir</i> wurden	<i>wir</i> würden
<i>ihr</i> wart	<i>ihr</i> wäret	<i>ihr</i> würdet	<i>ihr</i> würdet
<i>sie</i> waren	<i>sie</i> wären	<i>sie</i> wurden	<i>sie</i> würden

PERFECT (<i>absolutely</i>).		PERFECT.	
<i>I have been</i> , that I have or rather <i>I was</i>	had been, I was	<i>I have been</i> rather <i>I was</i> (<i>e. g.</i> praised)	that I have or had been or was (<i>e. g.</i> , praised)
<i>ich</i> bin, <i>du</i> bist, &c. gewesen	<i>ich</i> sei, <i>du</i> seiest, &c. gewesen	<i>ich</i> bin, <i>du</i> bist, &c. worden	<i>ich</i> sei, <i>du</i> seiest, &c. worden

PLUPERFECT (<i>absolutely</i>).		PLUPERFECT.	
I had been	I had been, I should or would have been	I had been (pass. voice)	I had been, or I should or would have been
<i>ich</i> war, <i>du</i> warst, &c. gewesen	<i>ich</i> wäre, <i>du</i> wärest, &c. gewesen	<i>ich</i> war, <i>du</i> warst, &c. worden	<i>ich</i> wäre, <i>du</i> wärest, &c. worden

FIRST FUTURE.		FIRST FUTURE.	
I shall, will have	that I shall or will have, would have	I shall or will be (pass. voice)	that I shall or will be (pass. voice).
<i>ich</i> werde sein	<i>ich</i> werde sein	<i>ich</i> werde werden	<i>ich</i> werde werden
<i>du</i> wirst sein	<i>du</i> werdest sein	<i>du</i> wirst werden	<i>du</i> werdest werden.
<i>er</i> wird sein, &c.	<i>er</i> werde sein &c.	<i>er</i> wird werden, &c.	<i>er</i> werde werden, &c.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.		FIRST CONDITIONAL.	
I should or would have		I should or would be (p. v.)	
<i>ich</i> würde sein		<i>ich</i> würde werden	
<i>du</i> würdest sein		<i>du</i> würdest werden	
<i>er</i> würde sein, &c.		<i>er</i> würde werden, &c.	

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
SECOND FUTURE (<i>absolutely</i>).		SECOND FUTURE.	
I shall have been	that I shall, should, or would have been	I shall have <i>been</i> (<i>e. g.</i> praised)	that I shall, should, or would have <i>been</i> (<i>e. g.</i> , praised)
ich werde gewesen sein, &c.	ich werde gewesen sein &c.	ich werde worden sein &c.	ich würde worden sein &c.

(*absolutely*) CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should or would have been	I should or would have <i>been</i> (<i>p. v.</i>)
ich würde gewesen sein, &c.	ich würde worden sein, &c.

IMPERATIVE (*absolutely*).

Sei ich may I be; sei be; sei er
let him be; seien wir let us be; seid
be ye; seien sie let them be; seien
Sie be (you).

IMPERATIVE.

Werde ich may I be (*e. g.*, praised);
werde be; werde er let him be;
werden wir let us be; werdet be ye;
werden sie let them be; werden Sie
be (you).

haben to have; (*habend* having); ich *hatte* I had; *gehabt*
had.

PRESENT.

I have	that I have or had, I may have
Sing. ich habe	ich habe
du hast	du habest
er hat	er habe
Plur. wir haben	wir haben
ihr habt	ihr habet
sie haben	sie haben

IMPERFECT.

I had	that I had, I might or would have
ich hatte	ich hätte*
du hattest	du hättest
er hatte	er hätte
wir hatten	wir hätten
ihr hättet	ihr hättet
sie hatten	sie hätten

* This is the only instance of modification of vowel in a verb of the modern form and has its reason in the necessity of distinguishing ich *hatte* I had, from ich *hätte* I might have.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
PERFECT		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>I have had rather I had</i>	<i>that I have had or had had</i>	<i>I had had</i>	<i>that I had had, I would have had</i>
<i>ich habe, du hast, &c. gehabt</i>	<i>ich habe, du habest, &c. gehabt</i>	<i>ich hatte, du hattest, &c. gehabt</i>	<i>ich hätte, du hättest, &c. gehabt</i>
FIRST FUTURE.		SECOND FUTURE.	
<i>I shall or will have</i>	<i>that I shall or will have, I would have</i>	<i>I shall or will have had</i>	<i>that I shall or will have had, I would have had</i>
<i>ich werde, du wirst, &c. haben</i>	<i>ich werde, du werdest, &c. haben</i>	<i>ich werde, du wirst, &c. gehabt haben</i>	<i>ich werde, du werdest, &c. gehabt haben</i>
FIRST CONDITIONAL.		CONDITIONAL PAST.	
<i>I should or would have</i>		<i>I should or would have had</i>	
<i>ich würde, du würdest; &c. haben</i>		<i>ich würde, du würdest, &c. gehabt haben</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, *habe* (*hab'*) or *haben* Sie have; *habe* er, &c., let him, &c. have.
 Plural, *haben* wir let us have; *habt* or *haben* Sie have (ye); *haben* sie let them have.

PARADIGM *illustrating the formation of the verb.* (For the use of the tenses see Sect. XXV).

Note. The German verb has neither a progressive nor a negative nor a specially affirmative form. *Ich lobe* expresses both *I praise, I am praising, I do praise* and, *ich lobe nicht* *I do not praise*, the adverb *nicht*, being generally separated from the verb by other portions of the clause. (See Sect. XXX, D).

ACTIVE VOICE.

Infinitives: *pres.* (*zu*) *loben* to praise; *past*, *gelobt* (*zu*) *haben* to have praised.

Participles: *pres.* *lobend* praising; *past* *gelobt* praised.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

I praise, I am praising,
I do praise

that I praise or praised,
I may praise

Sing. *ich* lobe

ich lobe

du lobst

du lobest

er lobt

er lobe

Plur. wir loben

wir loben

ihr lobt

ihr lobet

sie loben

sie loben

IMPERFECT.

I praised, was praising,
did praise

that I praised,
I might, should, or would praise

Sing. *ich* lobte

ich lobte

du lobtest

du lobtest

er lobte

er lobte

Plur. wir lobten

wir lobten

ihr lobtet

ihr lobtet

sie lobten

sie lobten

PERFECT.

I have praised, I have been praising, *I praised*

that I (have) praised
that I had praised

Sing. *ich* habe gelobt

ich habe gelobt

du hast gelobt

du habest gelobt

er hat gelobt

er habe gelobt

Plur. wir haben gelobt

wir haben gelobt

ihr habt gelobt

ihr habet gelobt

sie haben gelobt

sie haben gelobt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had praised

that I had praised

I had been praising

I might, should, or would have praised

Sing. *ich* hatte gelobt

ich hätte gelobt

du hättest gelobt

du hättest gelobt

er hatte gelobt

er hätte gelobt

Plur. wir hätten gelobt

wir hätten gelobt

ihr hättet gelobt

ihr hättet gelobt

sie hätten gelobt

sie hätten gelobt

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

FIRST FUTURE.

I shall praise

that I shall praise

I would praise

Sing. *ich werde loben**ich werde loben*

du wirst loben

du werdest loben

er wird loben

er werde loben

Plur. *wir werden loben**wir werden loben**ihr werdet loben**ihr werdet loben**sie werden loben**sie werden loben*

SECOND FUTURE.

I shall have praised

that I shall have praised

I would have praised

Sing. *ich werde gelobt haben**ich werde gelobt haben*

du wirst gelobt haben

du werdest gelobt haben

er wird gelobt haben

er werde gelobt haben

Plur. *wir werden gelobt haben**wir werden gelobt haben**ihr werdet gelobt haben**ihr werdet gelobt haben**sie werden gelobt haben.**sie werden gelobt haben*

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should or would praise

I should or would have praised

Sing. *ich würde loben**ich würde gelobt haben*

du würdest loben

du würdest gelobt haben

er würde loben

er würde gelobt haben

Plur. *wir würden loben**wir würden gelobt haben**ihr würdet loben**ihr würdet gelobt haben**sie würden loben**sie würden gelobt haben*

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. *lobe!* (do) praise! *loben Sie!* praise! (polite); *lobe er!* let him praise.Plur. *loben wir!* let us praise! *lobt!* or *loben Sie!* praise (ye)! *loben sie!* let them praise! Also the past participle is frequently used instead of the Imperative in commanding, rousing, or encouraging.

Derived from the *Infinitive* is the NOUN *das Loben* the praising. The *Infinitive*, with the particle *zu*, is *zu loben* to praise, or praising after certain verbs, as, *beginnen to begin*; or prepositions, as, *anstatt instead of*; *ohne without*, &c. *um zu loben* in order to praise:

PASSIVE VOICE.

The Passive voice distinctly implies an ACTION the object of which is the *subject* of the sentence, and never a mere state or condition, which latter is expressed by the *Past Participle* used as an ADJECTIVE along with the verb *sein* to be. Hence: *Er ist getödtet* means he is killed, *he is dead*, but *Er wird getödtet* means He is *being killed*; that is, they are killing him now.

INFINITIVES: *pres.* gelobt (zu) werden to be praised;
past, gelobt worden (zu) sein to have been praised.

PAST PARTICIPLES gelobt worden been praised.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

PRESENT.

I am (being) praised	that I am or was praised
	I may (might) be praised
Sing. ich werde gelobt	ich werde gelobt
du wirst gelobt	du werdest gelobt
er wird gelobt	er werde gelobt
Plur. wir werden gelobt	wir werden gelobt
ihr werdet gelobt	ihr werdet gelobt
sie werden gelobt	sie werden gelobt

IMPERFECT.

I was (being) praised	that I was or were praised
	I might, should, or would be praised
Sing. ich wurde gelobt	ich würde gelobt
du wurdest gelobt	du würdest gelobt
er wurde gelobt	er würde gelobt
Plur. wir wurden gelobt	wir würden gelobt
ihr würdet gelobt	ihr würdet gelobt
sie wurden gelobt	sie würden gelobt

PERFECT.

I have been or was praised	that I have (had) been praised
Sing. ich bin gelobt worden	ich sei gelobt worden
du bist gelobt worden	du seiest gelobt worden
er ist gelobt worden	er sei gelobt worden
Plur. wir sind gelobt worden	wir seien gelobt worden
ihr seid gelobt worden	ihr seiet gelobt worden
sie sind gelobt worden	sie seien gelobt worden

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.***PLUPERFECT.**

I had been praised

that I had been praised
I might, should, or would have
been praisedSing. ich war gelobt worden
du warst gelobt worden
er war gelobt worden
Plur. wir waren gelobt worden
ihr wart gelobt worden
sie waren gelobt wordenich wäre gelobt werden
du wärest gelobt werden
er wäre gelobt werden
wir wären gelobt werden
ihr wäret gelobt werden
sie wären gelobt werden**FIRST FUTURE.**

I shall be praised

that I shall be praised
I would be praisedSing. ich werde gelobt werden
du wirst gelobt werden
er wird gelobt werden
Plur. wir werden gelobt werden
ihr werdet gelobt werden
sie werden gelobt werdenich werde gelobt werden
du werdest gelobt werden
er werde gelobt werden
wir werden gelobt werden
ihr werdet gelobt werden
sie werden gelobt werden.**SECOND FUTURE.**

I shall have been praised

that I shall have been praised
I would have been praisedSing. ich werde gelobt worden sein
du wirst gelobt worden sein
er wird gelobt worden sein
Plur. wir werden gelobt worden sein
ihr werdet gelobt worden sein
sie werden gelobt worden seinich werde gelobt worden sein
du werdest gelobt worden sein
er werde gelobt worden sein
wir werden gelobt worden sein
ihr werdet gelobt worden sein
sie werden gelobt worden sein**FIRST CONDITIONAL.**

I should or would be praised

CONDITIONAL PAST.I should or would have been praised
edSing. ich würde gelobt werden
du würdest gelobt werden
er würde gelobt werden
Plur. wir würden gelobt werden
ihr würdet gelobt werden
sie würden gelobt werdenich würde gelobt worden sein
du würdest gelobt worden sein
er würde gelobt worden sein
wir würden gelobt worden sein
ihr würdet gelobt worden sein
sie würden gelobt worden sein**IMPERATIVE.**Sing. werde gelobt! or werden Sie gelobt! be praised! werde er gelobt!
let him be praised!Plur. werden wir gelobt! let us be praised! Werdet or werden Sie ge-
lobt! be praised! werden sie gelobt! let them be praised!

By the infinitive are formed: *gelobt zu werden* to be praised, being praised; *um gelobt zu werden* in order to be praised.

SECTION XXV. — ON THE USE OF THE TENSES, MOODS AND PARTICIPLES.

(For the use of the Subjunctive and Conditional; see Sect. XXXI.).

A. The tenses of the Indicative.

The German verb has no special form to represent an action as *progressing* or *continuing*, nor can a safe distinction be drawn between absolute and relative tenses. (See the paradigm p. 202 &c). It therefore depends to a considerable extent on the context what force is to be given to the tense of the verb in each case. The tenses of the Indicative may in the first place be said to agree in sense with the corresponding tenses in English; as, *Ich lebe* I live (I am living). *Ich lebte* I lived (did live, was living). *Ich habe gelebt* I have lived (have been living). *Ich hatte gelebt* I had lived &c. *Ich werde leben* I shall live &c. *Ich werde gelebt haben* I shall have lived &c. With regard to the force of the Passive voice p. 205 Note, may be referred to.

THE FOLLOWING DEVIATIONS, however, must be particularly noticed.

THE PRESENT is used instead of the IMPERFECT, PERFECT AND FUTURE.

a. as in English instead of the IMPERFECT when a NARRATIVE is to be made particularly vivid or impressive; as, in John XI. where Luther uses the Present more freely than the English text. Thus v. 20 *Mis Martha nun hörete, daß Jesus kommt, gehet sie ihm entgegen.* (Literally: *When Martha now heard that Jesus is coming she goes and meets him*). Then Martha, as soon as she heard that Jesus was coming, went and met him. Further v. 23. *Jesus spricht zu ihr. Jesus saith unto her.* v. 24. *Martha spricht zu ihm. Martha saith unto him;* — and v. 25. *Jesus spricht zu ihr. Jesus said.*

b. instead of the English PERFECT when the latter is used in connecting the action expressed by the verb with the Present moment. This is owing to the force of the preposition *seit* (see p. 47 i, *Continuance*) which gives the German Present the effect of the English Perfect when used with an ADVERB OR ADVERBIAL EXPRESSION OF TIME; as, *Ich bin seit dem 30. Juli in Berlin.* I have been in Berlin since the 30th of July. *Ich wohne seit einem Monate hier.* I have been residing here

for a month. Sie arbeiten seit vorgestern, *They have been working since the day before yesterday.* The preposition *seit* is often understood; as, Wie lange sind Sie hier? *How long have you been here?* Ich bin beinahe ein Jahr hier, *I have been here nearly a twelvemonth.*

In sentences like the above the German Perfect *must not* be used, as it would denote a CEASING or at least a MODIFICATION of the action or state (see the Perfect below); e. g. Ich bin lange genug hier gewesen; ich muß fort, *I have been here long enough; I must away.* Die Leute haben seit 5 Uhr gearbeitet, nun sind sie müde, *The people have been working since five o'clock, now they are tired.*

c. With a SURE EXPECTATION, DECIDED INTENTION, OR IMMEDIATE ACTION, the PRESENT takes the place of the FUTURE more frequently than in English; as, Ich gehe heute Abend aus, *I go out to-night, instead of Ich werde heute Abend ausgehen, I shall go out to-night.* Er kommt gewiß, *He is sure to come.* Ich halte Wort, *I shall keep my word.*

For the phrases: *I am going to, I am about to,* see the Future below.

2. THE IMPERFECT, (the narrative tense) is used as in English both relatively and historically (see Note below); e. g. Ich erkannte dich als du eintratest, *I recognized you when you entered.* Er sagte dies, indem er sich erhob, *He said this as he arose.* Ich kam, sah und siegte (*veni, vidi, vici*), *I came, saw and conquered;* but it also occurs instead of the English PERFECT and sometimes instead of the CONDITIONAL PAST.

a. When the English use the *Perfect tense* along with the adverbial expressions *THIS day, (morning, evening), week, month, year &c.,* in stating a fact which has no farther connexion with the Present moment the Germans use promiscuously the Imperfect or the Perfect; as, Ich sah ihn heute Abend or ich habe ihn heute Abend gesehen, *I have seen him this evening.* Quite in the same manner they say: Ich habe ihn gestern gesehen or Ich sah ihn gestern, *I saw him yester-day.*

b. The Imperfect occurs instead of the Conditional, when in a narrative a supposition as then formed is to be represented in a lively manner; as, Ich konnte allerlei thun: Entweder ich ging nach Weimar und traf meine Freunde dort oder ich wartete ihre Ankunft in Berlin ab. *I could (then) do either of two things: either I should (might) have gone to Weimar and met my friends there, or I should have expected their arrival in Berlin.*

Sometimes the Imperfect is used to make a supposition more impressive, although it does not occur in a narrative; as, Kamst du nicht im rechten Augenblicke, so war Alles umsonst. *Had you not come at the right moment all would have been in vain.*

3. THE PERFECT TENSE.

The Perfect differs from the English Perfect in so far as it does not necessarily convey the idea that the action expressed by it is connected *through its effects or results* with the Present moment.

The German Perfect whilst it *may* under all circumstances be used for the English Perfect, has much more generally the force of the ENGLISH PAST* as employed in stating a fact as absolutely completed and without reference to the Present; as, *Ich habe ihn gestern gesehen*, I saw him yesterday. *Er hat im vorigen Jahre sein Haus verkauft*, He sold his house last year. *Ich habe Sie damals noch nicht gekannt*, I did not know you then. (*The English Perfect* expressed by the German Present, see p. 207 b).

Owing to this use of the Perfect tense for the English Past, Germans when speaking English are apt to produce erroneous impressions, and one would hear an enthusiastic admirer of the beauties of some locality say: *It is a splendid view! I have been sitting there last year on a rock and have been gazing &c. &c.*

The phrase *I forget* must be rendered by the Perfect *Ich habe es vergessen*, unless it has the meaning of *I usually forget* which is *Ich vergeesse gewöhnlich*.

Note. In the higher *historical style* the Perfect is employed to distinguish facts and deeds as having had a great and lasting effect, and as being of universal importance; as, *Nachdem dies in langen, schweren Kämpfen geschehen war, hat sie Julius Cäsar in ihrer Feinmuth aufgesucht und in jenen Feldzügen überwunden*. After this had been accomplished by long and severe struggles, Julius Caesar sought them out in their own homes, and subdued them in those campaigns. Man könnte nicht sagen, daß es Helden hervorgebracht hätte wie Karl Martell oder Pipin der Kärstige oder Karl der Große gewesen sind, auf deren Thun und Lassen das Schicksal der Welt beruhte. It could not be said to have produced such heroes as (were) Charles Martel, King Pepin, or Charlemagne, upon whose conduct depended the destiny of the world — (*Ranke, Französische Geschichte*). Dieses Ende nahm der große Tag der Sempacher Schlacht, in welcher Arnold Stutthaus von Winkried mit Aufopferung seines Lebens die Blüthe der schweizerischen Mannschaft von ihrem Untergang,

* The Gothic has no compound tenses, the Present being used for the future, and the Imperfect for the past tenses. Even in the Old-High-German and in the Anglo-Saxon the use of compound tenses is limited, and this may explain to some extent the frequent use of simple tenses for the Perfect and Future in the modern German.

das Vaterland von äußerster Gefahr gerettet (hat). Thus ended that great day of the battle of Sempach, in which Arnold Struthan von Winkelried, at the sacrifice of his life, rescued the flower of the Swiss from destruction, and the fatherland from extreme danger. — (Joh. v. Müller, *Geschichte der Schweiz*). In the same manner: Amerika ist von Columbus entdeckt worden, America was discovered by Columbus. Gustav Adolph hat den Protestantismus in Deutschland gerettet, Gustavus Adolphus saved Protestantism in Germany.

4. The PLUPERFECT agrees with the English; as, Ich hatte geschrieben als du kamst, I had written when you came. Er war eingetreten während ich schrieb, He had entered whilst I was writing.

The PARTICIPIAL PHRASES *Having seen*, *written*, &c. and *After having seen*, *written*, &c. are, when narrative, rendered by the *Pluperfect* introduced by the Conjunctions *als*, *da* (*when*) or *nachdem* (*after*); as, Als (da) ich geschrieben hatte *Having written*, Nachdem ich geschrieben hatte, *After having written*.

5. The FUTURE formed by *werden* with the Infinitive (*without zu*, see p. 198, 2 a) implies in itself *neither intention nor duty* (See p. 192); e. g. Du wirst ins Wasser fallen, You will fall into the water. Ich werde sterben, I shall die.

The English phrases, *I am going to* (write), or *I am about to* (write &c.), when the immediate performance of the act is indicated, are expressed by the Present or Future along with the adverbs *sofort*, *sogleich* immediately; *augenblicklich*, *diesen Augenblick* this very moment, instantly; or *balb* soon; as, ich schreibe *sogleich*, or ich werde *sofort* schreiben, ich werde *augenblicklich* schreiben, ich will or bin im Begriff zu schreiben, &c.

B. THE IMPERATIVE.

The IMPERATIVE occurs, strengthened by the adverbs *einmal*, *nur*, and *doch*. *Einmal* is merely *inviting*, as, Sehen Sie einmal hier, Look here, please; *nur* is *encouraging* and *persuading*, as, Kommen Sie nur, Come by all means, Do come, only come; *doch* is *entreating* and *appealing*; as, Verzeihe es mir doch, Pray, forgive me; Steht doch! Make a stand! Yet there occur phrases like Hören Sie doch nur einmal! Do only listen!

The PAST PARTICIPLE occurs as a sort of general command instead of the regular form of the Imperative (see p. 178); e. g. Stillgestanden! Stand still! Borgehen! Look out! Den Rücken geräumt! Bridle the steed! or *elliptically*: Den Hut ab! (genommen), Hat off! Die Thür zu! (gemacht), Shut the door!

C. THE INFINITIVE.

1. The INFINITIVE WITHOUT *zu* (*to*), is used more extensively than in English, as it is always used ABSOLUTELY; as, *Sein oder Nichtsein, To be or not to be*; and as the German auxiliary verbs of mood govern the *main Infinitive* by simple forms of their Past participles and Infinitives, which are given by phrases requiring *to* in English; as, *Ich habe nicht kommen können*, I have not been able *to* come. *Ich werde bleiben müssen*, I shall be compelled *to* stay. (See p. 195, 196).

Note. In the following VERBAL COMBINATIONS the Infinitive is used WITHOUT *zu* and has more or less the force of a separable component. *holen, suchen gehen* to go *to fetch, to seek*, *kaufen gehen* to go *to buy*, *schlafen gehen* to go *to sleep*, (*nach schlafen legen* to lie down *to sleep*) *spazieren gehen* to go *to walk*, (*spazieren fahren*, to take a drive, *spazieren reiten* to go out on horseback for recreation). Similarly *sagen kommen* to come *to tell*; e. g. *Ich ging es suchen*, I went *to seek* it. *Ich werde ihn holen* I shall go *to fetch* him. *Er ist schlafen gegangen*, He is gone *to sleep*.

2. The Infinitive *without zu* takes the place of the English PRESENT PARTICIPLE, and sometimes also of the past participle, after the verbs *bleiben* to remain, *fühlen* to feel, to perceive, *helfen* to help, to assist, *hören* to hear, *lehren* to teach, *lernen* to learn, *sehen* to see; as, *Er blieb sitzen*, He remained sitting. *Sie bleibt stehen*, She stops (walking). *Ich fühlte Nacht über mich kommen*, I felt night coming over me. *Ich hörte ihn nahen*, I heard him approaching. *Ich sah sie kommen*, I saw her coming. *Ich hörte dich tadeln*, I heard you blamed (people blaming you). *Ich habe ein Kind taufen sehen*, I saw a child baptized (the minister baptizing).

3. The Infinitive *without zu* is used for the English *present participle*, when employed in the capacity of a NOMINATIVE (subject of the clause); as, *Angreifen, die Schanze erstürmen, und Alles niederhauen, war das Werk einer Minute*, Making the attack, taking the redoubt by storm, and massacring them all, was the work of a minute.

THE ACTIVE FORM USED FOR THE PASSIVE.

The pupil may here particularly notice the following, respecting the use of the Infinitive, Participle &c. of the

ACTIVE VOICE INSTEAD OF THE PASSIVE VOICE IN ENGLISH.

a. The auxiliary verbs *lassen* to let, to cause to, to order to, to allow to, to permit to, to suffer to, to get or have (something done, sent &c.), *hören* to hear, *sehen* to see (and sometimes *heißen* to bid), see p. 197) are by themselves transitive verbs with an object of their own. This is often indefinite (*some one, people, them*) and then it is generally omitted in German, whilst the English in such cases prefer a passive construction; e. g. *Laß Jemanden das Buch bringen*, Let *some one* bring the book,—is usually expressed: *Laß das Buch bringen*, Let the book be brought. *Ich ließ (die Leute) das Haus reinigen*, I caused (*the people*) to clean the house; i. e. I caused the house to be cleaned. *Ich hörte es sagen*, I heard (*them*) say it; i. e. I heard it said. *Ich sah die Thür öffnen*, I saw (*some person*) open the door; i. e. I saw the door being opened. *Der König ließ (seine Diener) ihn fortführen*, The king ordered (*his servants*) to conduct him away; i. e. The king ordered him to be conducted away. *Ich sah ein Kind taufen*, I saw *the minister* baptize a child; i. e. I saw a child baptized.

With a *definite* object the construction is alike in German and English; as, *Laß ihn das Buch bringen*, Let him bring the book. *Ich hörte den Mann sagen*, I heard the man say; or *intransitively*: *Laß ihn kommen*, Let him come, *Ich hörte ihn singen*, I heard him sing.

Lassen is therefore ALWAYS construed with the Infinitive of the main verb *without* *zu* in the ACTIVE VOICE.

b. With the *Gerund-phrases*: *Es ist (war) zu* (and, rather stiffly,) *es sieht (stand) zu*, *It is to, it was to*, and with *es bleibt (blieb) zu* it remains (remained) to, the Infinitive Active of the main verb is used where

in English the Passive is employed; as, *Es ist zu hoffen*, It is to be hoped. *Es war zu fürchten*, It was to be feared. *Es stand zu erwarten*, It was to be expected. *Es bleibt zu beweisen*, It remains to be proved. *Es bleibt zu sehen*, It remains to be seen. (*Es ist nicht zu begreifen*, It is incomprehensible).

This *Active construction* is extended even to PRESENT PARTICIPLES USED AS ADJECTIVES; as, *Das zu hoffende Glück*, The happiness to be hoped for. *Die zu erwartenden Gäste*, The guests to be expected. *Der zu beweisende Satz*, The thesis to be proved.

The reason for these constructions is likewise the *omission* of a phrase; as, It is *for us* to hope, it is *allowed* to see it, i. e. it is to be seen.

c. Phrases with the indefinite personal pronoun *man* one, they, are frequently rendered passively; as, *Man sieht*, It is seen. *Man wird finden*, It will be found. *Man sagt*, It is said. *Man wird denken*, It will be thought (Compare the use of *sollen* p. 193. b).

d. The reflective form is frequently rendered by the passive in English; as, *Der Keim entwickelt sich*, The germ is developed. *Ihre Sinne verwirrten sich*, Her senses became confused. *Ich verspätete mich*, I was delayed. (*Ich irre mich*, I am mistaken. *Ich wundere mich*, I am astonished.)

THE PASSIVE FORM USED IMPERSONALLY is extended to *intransitive verbs* in indefinite statements analogously to phrases like: *Es wird behauptet*, It is asserted (*people assert*). Thus: *Es wird getanzt*, There is dancing going on; some people are dancing. *In dem Saale wurde muscirt und gesungen*, In the hall there was music and singing. *Es wird Manches geschwatzt*, People talk a great deal. *Es wurde von beiden Seiten wüthend gekämpft*, They were fighting furiously on both sides.

The verb *geschehen* to happen, to take place often signifies to BE DONE; as, *Das Unheil war geschehen*, The mischief was done.

THE INFINITIVE WITH *zu* (*to*).

Clauses containing the Infinitive with *zu* have the value of dependent clauses but are not separated from the context by a comma (see p. 21, 5) and *must not be inserted* between the nominative and the verb of another clause, *unless* both clauses are very short, as in *Weil ich dich zu sehen wünsche*, Because I wish to see thee.

1. The Infinitive with *zu* can, generally speaking, be employed wherever the English Infinitive with *to* occurs. Even the phrases which in English are substituted for the compound tenses of the auxiliary verbs of mood can be rendered by analogous forms with the Infinitive with *zu*; as, *Ich bin nicht im Stande gewesen zu kommen*, I have not been able to come. *Ich war gezwungen zu bleiben*, I was compelled to stay; *for Ich habe nicht kommen können, ich habe bleiben müssen*. (Compare p. 195).

2. The Infinitive with *zu* is besides used instead of the English present participle after the prepositions *anstatt instead of* and *ohne without* if both the leading verb and the present participle have the same subject; as, *Er floh anstatt zu kämpfen*, He fled instead of fighting (*he fled, he did not fight*). *Du darfst nicht gehen, ohne es mir zu sagen*, You must not go without (*you*) telling me.

By the Infinitive with *zu* also the English present participle must be rendered, if introduced by *of, with, &c.*, after nouns, adjectives, or verbs requiring these prepositions; as, *The honour of being invited, die Ehre eingeladen zu werden*. The pleasure of seeing you, *Das Vergnügen, Sie zu sehen*. Farther: *Die Nothwendigkeit das Land zu verlassen*, The necessity of leaving the country. *Man klagte ihn an den Umstand verborgen zu haben*, He was accused of (charged with) having concealed the fact.

3. THE INFINITIVE WITH *um zu* ought to be used only in clauses retaining the nominative, or subject of the main sentence; as, *Thust du es, um mich zu bewegen, &c.*, Do you do it in order to induce me? (*i. e.*, Do *you* do it that *you* may induce me)? *Um*

always stands at the head of the clause, *zu* with the Infinitive at the end. Compare, *Ich komme, um es zu nehmen*, I come in order to take it, and the colloquial, *Es ist zu schlecht, um es zu nehmen*, It is too bad to take it; i. e., it is not worth taking.

EXCEPTED from the general rule are the following cases:

1. *a.* When the English construe certain verbs of BELIEVING AND WISHING with another verb in the Infinitive with *to*, and when both these verbs have the same subject, the Germans indeed use the same construction; as, *I expect to arrive*, *Ich erwarte anzukommen* (i. e. *I expect that I shall arrive*). *Er wünscht zu gehen*, He wishes to go (i. e. *He wishes that he himself should go*; or with an object: *Ich erwarte Sie zu sehen*, I expect to see you. *Er wünscht mich zu sehen*, He wishes to see me.

But when this construction is used in English along with an objective which is in reality a different subject of the Infinitive with *to*; as, *I believe him to be better* (i. e. *I believe he is better*); *He wishes her to go* (i. e. *He wishes that she should go*); the German Infinitive with *zu* must not be employed, but the sentence must be divided into two clauses in the second of which the Objective is changed into a *Nominative*; and the Infinitive into a *finite tense*, after the manner of the examples given in parentheses, above; thus: *Ich glaube er ist wohlter* or *Ich glaube, daß er wohlter ist*, I believe he is better or that he is better. *Er wünscht, daß sie gehe*, He wishes that she should go. *Er wünscht sie möchte gehen*, He wishes she might go.

The author has observed that it is not after ALL the verbs of *believing* and *wishing* that the Infinitive with *to*, thus joined to an improper Objective, is changed into a separate clause, but that the English construction is retained* after the verbs *bitten* to beg, to ask, *einladen* to invite, *ersuchen* to request, *auffordern* to call upon, *bringen in*, *nöthigen* to press, to urge &c., as, *Er bat mich zu kommen*, He asked me to come. *Er drang in mich* or *nöthigte mich zu trinken*, He pressed me to drink. The pupil therefore must notice the following list of verbs after which the Infinitive with *to* construed with an improper Objective in English must be rendered by a separate clause in German as above.

1. *Verbs of believing*: I believe *ich glaube*, I conceive *ich sehe ein*, *ich halte für*, I expect *ich erwarte*, I fear *ich fürchte, befürchte*, I find *ich finde*, I hope *ich hoffe*, I know *ich weiß*, I perceive *ich bemerke, finde*, I suppose (suspect) *ich glaube, vermute*, I think *ich glaube, denke*, I understand *ich nehme an, glaube, verstehe*.

2. *Verbs of wishing*: I desire *ich verlange, wünsche*, I get *Ich ver-*

* It will be seen that the usual statement that there is no *Acc. c. Inf.* in German does not solve the difficulty here dealt with.

anlasse, I like ich mag gern (I should like ich möchte gern), I tell ich sage, I want ich will, ich wünsche, I wish ich wünsche.

Examples: Ich glaube (fürchte, weiß, vermuthet), er irrte sich or daß er sich irrte, I believe (fear, know, suppose, suspect) him to be mistaken. Wir erwarteten, daß Sie früher ankommen würden, We expected you to arrive sooner. Du wirst einsehen, daß es unmöglich ist, You will conceive the thing to be impossible. Mein Vater verlangt, daß du nach Hause kommst, Your father desires you to come home. Sage ihr, sie soll sich beeilen, Tell her to make haste (she is to make haste). Ich möchte gern, daß Sie ihn sagten, er solle warten, I should like: you to tell him to wait. Wollen Sie, daß ich hingehe, Do you want me to go. Veranlassen Sie ihn zu schreiben, Get him to write.

The reason why only the verbs in the lists 1 and 2 require the construction with daß &c. is obviously this, that they are liable to be construed with a simple Objective; as, I believe him, He found his brother, She likes her sister, He wishes the book; and that this may tend to a momentary ambiguity in phrases like: I believe him—to be a rogue, He found his brother—to be absent, I expected you—not to come back again, He wishes the book—to be burnt. In sentences on the other hand like; I request you to come, the object is unmistakably the coming, and hence they are rendered with the Infinitive with zu; as, Ich bitte (ersuche, lade Sie ein) Sie zu kommen, I beg (request, invite) you to come.

b. The personal verbs to happen to, to chance to sich treffen, sich zutragen, sich ereignen, geschehen, are rendered in German either IMPERSONALLY, and then they are followed by a clause introduced by daß; that; as, Es traf sich, daß ich ihn bemerkte, I happened to observe him. Es trug sich zu, daß wir uns begegneten, We chanced to meet. Or their sense is expressed ADVERBALLY; as, Wir sahen uns zufällig an, We happened to look at each other. Wir trafen uns von ungefähr in Paris, We chanced to meet at Paris.

c. I am (was) to do a thing, is rendered by sollen without zu; as, Er soll es mir senden, He is to send it to me. Ich sollte Ihnen sagen, I was to tell you. (See p. 193).

D. USE OF THE PARTICIPLES.

The participles govern the same case as the verb from which they are formed. The use of the PRESENT PARTICIPLE is more limited in German than in English.

BOTH PARTICIPLES OCCUR:

1. as ADJECTIVES declined compared and construed as such, (see Rules for the Construction of Sentences, A and C. Position of the Adjective); as, Das singende Kind, the singing child. Das auf der Straße singende Kind, The child singing in the street. Gine treffen-

derer Antwort, An answer more to the point. Die dringlichsten Bitten, The most urgent requests. THE PAST PARTICIPLE: Der gesuchte, gesuchtere, gesuchteste Artikel, the article sought for, more sought for, most sought for.

The participles used as adjectives in English may generally be employed as such in German. It is advisable, however, to consult the dictionary, on account of certain deviations; as, INFIN. reizen *to irritate, to provoke, to charm*; PRES. PART. reizend, used chiefly in the sense of *charming*; PAST PART. gereizt, used only for *excited, enraged*; schmeicheln *to flatter*, yet not schmeichelnde, but schmeichelhafte Berichte *flattering accounts*, whereas schmeichelnd means *bland*.

2. As SUBSTANTIVES, chiefly denoting *persons engaged in*; as, Der Reisende the travelling man, the traveller, die Reisende the travelling woman, der (die) Eintretende the entering man (woman); but also in the NEUTER gender *characterizing an act, &c.*; as, Das Ueberraschende dieses Ereignisses, The surprising *character* of this event. Das Demüthigende dieses Austritts, The humiliating *nature* of this scene. THE PAST PARTICIPLE: Der Gelehrte the learned man, der Getödtete the killed person, die Gerettete the rescued woman, das Uebertriebene dieser Behauptung the exaggeration of this assertion, das Geschehene things done, das Gesagte the aforesaid.

Only past participles of transitive and of such intransitive verbs as are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *sein* (see p. 198, 1) can be used as adjectives or nouns.

3. The PRESENT AND PAST PARTICIPLES are employed in German where they are used in English along with a verb *in the same clause* in order to express ADVERBIALLY THE MANNER in which a thing is done; as, Er lernt es spielend, *He learns it playing*. Das Kind kommt singend durch den Garten, *The child comes singing through the garden*; or the CONDITION in which the SUBJECT or the OBJECT of the clause is said to be; as, Du liegst hier träumend? *You lie here dreaming?* Er fought mit Wunden bedeckt, *He fought covered with wounds*. Ich glaubte dich davon unterrichtet, *I believed you informed of it*. Ich fand ihn schlafend or eingeschlafen, *I found him sleeping or fallen asleep*.

NOTES RESPECTING THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

1. The past participle occurs ABSOLUTELY as in English; as, *unter uns gesagt*, (said) between ourselves; *zu Ihnen gesagt*, said to you (only); *zugegeben*, granted; *angenommen*, (assuming) supposed; *verausgesetzt*, premised (supposed); *gesagt, gethan*, said and done, no sooner said than done.

2. Sometimes it expresses a command; as, *stillestehen!* stand still! *vorsehen!* take heed! *losgelegt!* let us begin! *go on!* *zufahren!* drive on! (See p. 210, B).

3. Its use, instead of the PRESENT PARTICIPLE, along with the verbs *kommen* and *bringen*, indicating the *manner of coming and bringing*, is remarkable; as, *Er kommt geritten, gegangen, gelaufen, gefahren*, He comes riding, walking, running, driving. *Sie bringen ihn geführt, getragen, geschleppt, gefahren*, They bring him, leading (him), carrying, dragging him, driving him in a carriage.

4. The past participle is used more correctly than the present participle in English to distinguish a condition from a simple act in clauses like *auf den Arm gestützt*, *leaning on his arm*. On the other hand, reflectively, *sich auf den Arm stützend*, *assuming that posture*.

THE ENGLISH PRESENT PARTICIPLE IS RENDERED DIFFERENTLY IN GERMAN.

a. The German present participle CANNOT be used like the English as an ABSTRACT NOUN denoting an occupation, art, &c., as, *the riding*, not *das Reitend* but *das Reiten*, formed of the Infinitive (see p. 111 C and 123), *painting* (occupation) *das Malen*; (art), *die Malerei*, a painting ein Gemälde, hunting *das Jagen*, fishing *die Fischelei*, *das Fischen* (occupation).

b. After the verbs *fühlen*, *heissen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *machen*, *sehen*, the English present participle must be translated by the Infinitive in German; as, I heard him saying, &c., *Ich hörte ihn sagen*, &c.; I saw him running, *Ich sah ihn laufen*. (See pp. 196 and 211, 2).

c. When INTRODUCED BY A PREPOSITION, and having the same subject (nominative) as the verb of the clause; as, *He is accused of having stolen*, (*i. e.*, *he is accused that he has stolen*). Here the present participle is rendered by the Infinitive with *zu*; *Er ist angeklagt gestohlen zu haben*. I saw him without knowing him, *Ich sah ihn ohne ihn zu kennen*. Instead of waiting

for me he went off, *Anstatt auf mich zu warten ging er weg.* (Compare p. 214, 2).

d. *When* INTRODUCED BY A PREPOSITION along with a possessive or personal pronoun, and having a *subject different* from that of the leading verb; as, You reply without his asking you. Here the participle must be resolved into a finite tense with the conjunction *daß*, that: *Sie antworten ihm, ohne daß er Sie fragt.*

e. The English present participle, *introduced by a preposition*, is often used in CONTRACTING TWO CLAUSES, the first of which may be understood as containing a *demonstrative* pronoun (see p. 72 c) which the preposition governs, and to which the second clause refers. Thus, "*I thank you for warning me,*" must be rendered, *I thank you for this that you warn me, Ich danke Ihnen dafür, daß Sie mich warnen.* He was satisfied with having discovered the cause, *Er begnügte sich damit, die Ursache entdeckt zu haben.* (The Infinitive *zu haben* is explained by rule c above.) She is angry at your telling it, *Sie ist böse darüber, daß Sie es gesagt haben.*

In some cases the English present participle, introduced by a preposition, can be expressed in German by the Infinitive used as a noun, as, Excuse me for coming so late, *Entschuldige mich wegen meines Spätkommens.*

f. *PARTICIPIAL CLAUSES*, expressing ADVERBALLY TIME, REASON, OR CAUSE, must be resolved into DEPENDENT CLAUSES introduced by such CONJUNCTIONS as are or would be used in English if the participle were changed into a finite tense: as, EXPRESSING TIME, *When residing at Paris I often saw him, Als ich in Paris wohnte, sah ich ihn oft (When at Paris, &c., Als ich in Paris war, &c.). (After) having dressed his wounds, she refreshed him with wine, Nachdem sie seine Wunden verbunden hatte, erquickte sie ihn mit Wein. (Whilst) being thus engaged, I remarked, Während ich so beschäftigt war, bemerkte ich.* EXPRESSING REASON OR CAUSE, *Being much occupied, I cannot write to you any more, Indem (since), da (as), weil (because) ich sehr beschäftigt*

bin, kann ich dir nicht mehr schreiben. *The road being very bad, we moved but slowly, Da or weil der Weg sehr schlecht war, bewegten wir uns nur langsam fort.*

Note 1. *Indem* frequently expresses merely the simultaneousness of action, as, *Indem er das Zimmer verließ, sagte er, In leaving the room he said.*

Note 2. *Da* is substituted for *als when*, (referring to one single fact of the past), as, *Da ich ein Kind war, hatte ich kindische Gedanken, When I was a child I thought as a child.*

This, however, ought to be done only when both time and reason are implied; *viz. When I was a child and because I was a child. Or in Isaiah LIII: Da er gestraft und gemartert ward, that er seinen Mund nicht auf.*

g. Participial CLAUSES, NOT expressing adverbially time, reason or cause are either construed like adjective clauses, (see Sect. XXX E. Position of the Adjective and Participle) or are resolved into relative clauses; as, *The man thus accosting me, Der mich so anredende Mann, or der Mann, der mich so anredete. The man beating him mercilessly, der ihn unbarmherzig schlagende Mann, or der Mann, welcher ihn unbarmherzig schlug. The ship, being filled with water, sank, Das mit Wasser gefüllte Schiff sank, or Das Schiff, welches mit Wasser gefüllt war, sank. The troops, exhausted to the utmost, began to lose heart, Die aufs äußerste erschöpften Truppen or die Truppen, welche aufs äußerste erschöpft waren, begannen zu verzagen.*

SECTION XXVI. — REFLECTIVE VERBS.

(In this section the paragraphs 2, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9 are of particular interest).

A verb in the reflective form expresses an activity affecting the person or thing from which it proceeds, as, *I feel (myself) well, when the feeling well proceeds from and affects the same individual. A considerable number of verbs occur in the reflective form only, like the English, to betake one's self (sich begeben), avail one's self (sich bedienen). Yet almost any tran-*

sive verb may be used reflectively, as, *Er schonet sich*, he spares himself.

A verb in the reflective form is CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE, sometimes with the *dative* of the personal pronoun which forms its nominative, as, present: *Ich befinde mich I feel myself* (well, ill, &c.), *wir befinden uns we feel ourselves*, *du befindest dich* and *ihr befindet euch you feel yourself (selves)*. In the third person singular of either gender and in the plural the reflective pronoun *sich* (see p. 57) must be substituted for the accusative or dative, as the German *ihn* or *sie selbst* has not the force of the English reflective, (see p. 59, 5 a) therefore: *er (sie, es), befindet sich*, he (she, it), feels him-, (her-, it-) self; *sie befinden sich*, they feel themselves; *Sie befinden sich*, you feel yourself. Imperfect: *Ich befand mich*, I felt myself.

Accordingly a verb in the reflective form is thus conjugated.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT.

I rejoice, I am glad (happy).

Sing. *ich freue mich*
du freust dich
er (sie, es) freut sich
 Plur. *wir freuen uns*
ihr freut euch
sie freuen sich

IMPERFECT.

I rejoiced, I was glad (happy).

Sing. *ich freute mich*
du freutest dich
er freute sich
 Plur. *wir freuten uns*
ihr freutet euch
sie freuten sich

PERFECT.

I have been (*was*) glad (happy).

Sing. *ich habe mich gefreut*
 Plur. *wir haben uns gefreut*

PLUPERFECT.

I had been glad (happy).

Sing. *ich hätte mich gefreut*
 Plur. *wir hätten uns gefreut*

FIRST FUTURE.

I shall be glad (happy)

Sing. *ich werde mich freuen*
 Plur. *wir werden uns freuen*

SECOND FUTURE.

I shall have been glad (happy).

Sing. *ich werde mich gefreut haben*
 Plur. *wir werden uns gefreut haben*

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

I should be glad (happy)

Sing. ich würde mich freuen

Plur. wir würden uns freuen

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should have been glad (happy)

Sing. ich würde mich gefreut haben

Plur. wir würden uns gefreut haben

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. freue dich! (and *politely*) freuen Sie sich! rejoice!

freue er (sie) sich! let him (her) rejoice!

Plur. freuen wir uns! let us rejoice! freut euch! (and *politely*)

freuen Sie sich! rejoice ye! freuen sie sich! let them rejoice!

INFINITIVE.

Sich (zu) freuen to rejoice, sich gefreut (zu) haben to have rejoiced.

The COMPOUND PAST tenses of all reflexive verbs are conjugated with the AUXILIARY *haben*, because reflexive verbs are of a *transitive* or rather *objective* nature.

The tenses of the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD will be readily formed in analogy to the above.

2. POSITION OF THE REFLECTIVE PRONOUN.

a. If the verb in the simple tense or its Auxiliary, as in the above paradigm, directly *follows the nominative* the reflexive pronoun is placed immediately after the verb or the Auxiliary; e. g. Ich freue mich deinen Wunsch erfüllen zu können, I rejoice to be able to fulfil thy wish. Wir haben uns sehr gefreut, Sie zu sehen, We have been very glad to see you. Der Vater wird sich des Wiedersehens freuen, Your father will rejoice at meeting you again. Man muß sich nicht über das Unglück seiner Feinde freuen, One must not rejoice at the misfortune of one's enemies.

b. But the reflexive accusative or dative is placed IMMEDIATELY AFTER ITS NOMINATIVE if the simple verb or the Auxiliary is removed to the beginning or the end of the clause; as, Ich höre, daß er sich heute besser befindet, I learn that he feels better to-day. Wie befinden Sie sich? How are you? Hast du dich über das Geschenk gefreut? Were you pleased with the present?

Ich glaube nicht, daß er sich darüber sehr freuen wird, I don't think he will be very glad about it. (Compare Sect. XXX, Construction).

3. A number of reflexive verbs, given p. 150, 4, have, besides the reflexive accusative, AN OBJECT IN THE GENITIVE; as, sich erinnern to remember; Ich erinnere mich des Mannes, I remember (of) the man.

4. The REFLECTIVE DATIVE (for which in the third person likewise sich, to him-, her-, itself, is substituted) is used with verbs having besides a real object in the accusative; as, Ich eignete mir diese Fertigkeit an, I acquired (to myself) this facility. Er verbittet sich alle Complimente, He deprecates all ceremonies.

The reflexive verbs of this kind are given p. 154, c. Other verbs TAKING THEIR OBJECT IN THE DATIVE (see p. 154, 2—159) of course retain that case when used reflexively; as, Du schadest dir, You injure yourself. Er schmeichelt sich, he flatters himself.

5. THE MEANING of common verbs is frequently ALTERED BY THE REFLECTIVE FORM, and in this respect particularly the dictionary must be consulted; as, denken to think, to meditate, sich denken to fancy, to imagine, fügen to join, to put together, sich fügen to submit, schlagen to strike, sich schlagen to fight, betragen to amount to, sich betragen to demean oneself, behave.

6. ENGLISH VERBS used with both a transitive and an intransitive meaning are generally rendered by the REFLECTIVE FORM when used INTRANSITIVELY; as, I open the door, Ich öffne die Thür. The door opens, die Thür öffnet sich. I turn the key, Ich drehe den Schlüssel. The key turns, der Schlüssel dreht sich. He assembled the people, er versammelte das Volk. The people assembled, das Volk versammelte sich. She gathers flowers, Sie sammelt Blumen. The water gathers, das Wasser sammelt sich.

7. THE ENGLISH PASSIVE used impersonally, (or rather without stating the agent, BY WHOM the action is performed) is extensively rendered by the reflex-

tive form in German; as, *The plant is developed*, Die Pflanze entwickelt sich. In a similar manner: *I am afraid* ich fürchte mich, *I am mistaken* ich irre mich, *I am ashamed* ich schäme mich, *I am astonished* ich wundere mich, *I am vexed or grieved* ich gräme mich.

8. Reflective verbs are FREQUENTLY IMPERSONAL; as, Es ereignet sich, es trägt sich zu, es begiebt sich it happens, it occurs, (*personally* ich begeben mich I betake myself), es gehört sich, es schickt sich it is becoming, it is proper, es fragt sich it is questionable, to be questioned, es handelt sich (um Etwas) (French: *Il s'agit*) the question is, it concerns, something is at stake, es verlohnt sich it is worth while, it repays the trouble; or rendered by the English passive, Es begreift sich it may be easily conceived, es versteht sich it is understood, (daß versteht sich of course), es wird sich finden it will be found. Sometimes they are rendered by the English PRES. PART.: Daß sagt sich leichter, als es sich thut, It is easier saying than doing that, or that is more easily said than done.

9. THE AUXILIARY VERB OF MOOD *lassen* (to allow to), when used in combinations like the above, may be rendered as follows: Es läßt sich denken, It can be imagined. Es läßt sich nicht sagen, It cannot be said. Daß ließ sich erwarten, That might have been (was to be) expected. Es ließe sich Manches unternehmen, Many a thing might be undertaken. Es läßt sich hören, It is plausible. The pupil will remember that the verb *lassen* as an *Auxiliary* is always followed by the Infinitive of the ACTIVE VOICE. (See pp. 197 and 212 a).

SECTION XXVII. — THE IMPERSONAL FORM

is in the first instance proper to verbs expressing an activity, which cannot be ascribed to a conscious individual and hence it occurs

1. With the PHENOMENA OF EXTERNAL NATURE; as, Es dämmert es tagt, it dawns; es dunkelt, it is growing dark; es blizt, donnert, regnet, hagelt, schneit und weht heftig it lightens, thunders, rains, hails, snows and blows

violently, es regnet there is hoar-frost, es friert it freezes, es thaut it thaws, es wettert it is boisterous. Likewise with the verbs sein and werden in es ist kalt, warm it is cold, warm, es wird dunkel it is growing dark, es wird Nacht night is coming on, es ist aus it is all over, es ist über it has passed over.

2. With phenomena or sensations of OUR OWN PHYSICAL NATURE by which the person is sensible of being acted upon, and accordingly appears in the accusative (sometimes in the dative), the impersonal pronoun es being the grammatical subject, as in the English phrase: It pains me. *i. e.* I feel pain; as, Es friert mich, es ist mir kalt I feel cold, es schmeckt mir gut I like the taste of it (I have a good appetite), mir wird wohl, unwohl I begin to feel well, ill.

The English language generally substitutes a nominative for this objective accusative or dative, which in German often stands at the beginning of the phrase whilst the nominative es is often altogether omitted (as in the English *methinks*, mich dünkt; as, Mich friert, I feel cold, mich hungert I am hungry (ich bin hungrig), mich dürstet, I am thirsty (ich bin durstig), mich schläfert I am sleepy, mir bangt (vor) I am anxious (about), afraid (of), mich gelüstet (nach) I desire, mir efelt (vor) I loathe, es efelt mich an it makes me sick, it is loathsome to me, es träumte mir I dreamt.

3. MORAL AND INTELLECTUAL SENSATIONS are also expressed impersonally; as, Es ist mir, als ob I have a notion, I feel as if, es scheint mir it seems to me, es schmerzt, verbrüht, empört mich it grieves, annoys, provokes me, es reut mich it repents me, I rue, es fällt mir auf it surprises me, es überrascht mich it takes me by surprise, es fällt mir ein (literally, *It falls in to me*), it occurs to me, es kommt mir vor (literally, *It comes before me*), es dünkt mir it appears to me, mich dünkt methinks.

If the pronoun es is made to follow the verb it is often CONTRACTED with it, the e being ELIDED; as, mir gebricht's (an) I am in want (of), ihm glückt's, ihm

gelingt's he is lucky, he succeeds with, mir geht's wohl I am getting on well, wie geht's how do you do, uns gefällt's hier we like this place.

Note 1. Observe the following distinctions: Ich bereue I repent, es reut mich (*it* repents me), I am overcome with remorse; ich bedaure I pity, es dauert mich *it* moves me with compassion, ich wundere mich I wonder at, es wundert mich it makes me wonder, ich freue mich I rejoice, es freut mich it makes me rejoice, ich verlange I demand, ich verlange nach I have a desire for, es verlangt mich I am anxious, ich bewege mich I move, es bewegt mich it moves me, it induces me, ich rühre mich I move about, es rührt mich it touches me. From these instances it will be seen that the verb, when used personally, involves a more *voluntary* and spontaneous direction of feeling, proceeding from a conviction established in the mind, whilst in the impersonal form it indicates the immediate or impulsive feeling by which the individual is *overcome*, as if from without.

A COMPLETE LIST of the impersonal verbs governing the DATIVE has been given p. 156, 4, and will, on account of its idiomatical character, be found to repay the trouble of special study by the more advanced pupil.

The following idioms may here be noted: — es kommt vor it occurs, es geschieht it happens, es geht los, an it begins, es geht, es geht an it will do, it is tolerable, practicable, es geht nicht, es geht nicht an it won't do; es thut Nichts it does not matter; es geht über it passes off; es dauert lange it takes a long time.

USE OF *Es ist, Es sind, Es giebt, THERE IS, THERE ARE*
(French: *Il y a*).

a. The English phrases *there is, there are*, are rendered by *Es ist Sing.* and *Es sind Plur.* when the statement is DEFINITE WITH RESPECT TO THE LOCALITY in which a thing &c. is said to be, however indefinite the statement may be as to the *thing itself*; as, *Es ist Etwas in meinem Auge*, There is something in my eye. *Es war eben Etwas an der Thür*, There was just now something (some creature) at the door. *Es ist Jemand in dein Zimmer gewesen*, Somebody has been in the room. *Es sind zehn Zimmer in diesem Hause*, There are ten rooms in this house.

In the same manner *Es ist, es sind* are used in general statements having the character of MANIFEST TRUTH; as, *Es ist ein Gott*, There is a God. *Es sind Sterne am Himmel*, There are stars in the skies. *Es sind Fische in der See*, There are fish in the sea.

As the verb *sein to be* governs the nominative, the impersonal pronoun *es* is RENDERED SUPERFLUOUS when the phrases *there is, there are, there was, there were* occur in the middle of the clause; as, In diesem Hause sind zehn Zimmer, In this house there are ten rooms. In dem kleinen Stübchen waren mehrere Personen, In the little room there were several persons.

b. There is and there are are rendered by the Singular form *es giebt* (*there was, there were es gab*) when the statement, however definite as to the thing &c. *itself* is VAGUE or intended to produce the impression of VAGUENESS WITH RESPECT TO LOCALITY; as, Es giebt viele schöne Gebäude in dieser großen Stadt, There are many fine buildings in this large town. Es giebt nur einen Mann in diesem Reiche, der dich retten kann, There is only one man in these realms who can save thee. Es giebt hier einen jungen Menschen, der seine Aeußerungen ein wenig mehr bewachen könnte, There is here a young fellow (whom I do not chose to point out) who might be a little more guarded in his expressions. *Likewise* where vague ideas are premised in the hearer. Es giebt einen Gott, There is (exists) a God.

Especially with ABSTRACT NOUNS Es giebt has the force of *there occurs, there occur*; as, Es giebt im Menschenleben Augenblicke, There are (there occur) moments in the life of man. Es giebt Manches, was sich nicht sagen läßt, There is many a thing, which cannot be told; also: Es giebt auch schöne Forellen in diesem Bache, There are (there occur) also fine trout in this stream. Es giebt ein Ding, das es nicht giebt, Such a thing does not exist (occur).

From the above instances Es giebt einen Mann &c. Es giebt einen jungen Menschen &c. it appears that *es giebt* has THE LOGICAL SUBJECT IN THE ACCUSATIVE. This is owing to the verb *geben* of which *giebt* is the 3^d Pers. Sing. Pres. Ind. governing the accusative. This is farther the reason why the impersonal pronoun *es* MUST BE RETAINED even in the middle of the clause along with *giebt, gab*, because the sentence would otherwise have no nominative, hence: In Berlin giebt es einen Arzt, In Berlin there is a physician. Unter diesen Umständen giebt es keinen andern Rath, Under these circumstances there is no other expedient. Damals gab es noch keinen Buchdruck, In those times typography did not yet exist. Hier giebt es keinen Wein, There is no wine to be got here. (Compare p. 142 Note 2 and Sect. XXX B. The inverted order &c.)

4. The IMPERSONAL PRONOUN NOT expressed IN ENGLISH. Especially in poetry and in solemn language, the verb sometimes occurs in the impersonal form, although its proper subject is not suppressed, similar to the English: *it is I, ich bin es*; as, Es grüßen euch alle Brüder, All the brethren greet you; and in Goethe's *Erkönig*: Es schreinen die alten Weiden

so grau, It is the old willows that gleam so grey. *Es donnern die Höhen, es zittert der Steg* (Schiller), The heights are thundering, and quaking the pass.

5. The impersonal form of the verb *to be* is NOT used in German before the personal pronouns *I, thou, he, she, we* &c. but the personal pronoun assumes the government of the verb which is followed by the impersonal *es*; as, *Ich bin es* it is I, *bist du es?* is it you? *er war es nicht* it was not he, *wir sind es* it is we. *Sind Sie das gewesen?* Was it you?

Before NAMES and nouns signifying PERSONS *It is* &c. is rendered by *Es ist*; as, *Das ist Georg*, It is George. *Es war euer Vater*, It was your father; *Es being retained even in the Plural*; as, *Es sind meine Freunde*, These are my friends. (Compare p. 70 a).

6. THE PASSIVE VOICE *of verbs used impersonally* corresponds to the Latin *dicitur*, they say, it is said; and to the German *man sagt*, people say; thus in Schiller's *Wallenstein*: In dem Zelte wird gesungen und gejubelt, In the tent they sing and shout, there is singing and shouting in the tent. *Es wird geschossen*, they are shooting.

SECTION XXVIII. — ADVERBS AND INTERJECTIONS.

(On adjectives formed of adverbs, see p. 69, 9 and on the comparison of adverbs, see Sect. XIII., p. 91).

Adjectives when used as adverbs are generally NOT ALTERED, *except* in a few cases where the suffix *lich* occurs with the force of the adverbial suffix *ly*; as, *demüthig* humble, *demüthiglich* humbly, *ewig* everlasting, *ewiglich* everlastingly, *gewißlich* certainly, *lediglich* merely, *schwerlich* hardly, *sicherlich* surely, *wahrlich* really, verily.

Observe: *freilich* certainly, indeed, (NOT *freely*); *fürzlich* lately, recently, (NOT *shortly*) and *neulich* the other day (NOT *newly*).

The pupil may make himself familiar with the

PECULIAR APPLICATIONS of the following adverbs, adverbial conjunctions, and interjections:

When an INTERJECTION is followed by a phrase like, *said he, cried he, &c.* the phrase retains the inverted order in German; as, *Gi! sagte sie, Dear me! said she. O! rief er, Oh! exclaimed he.* Otherwise the interjection does not affect the arrangement of words.

The POSITION OF ADVERBS is explained Sect. XXX D.

aber but; in scriptural and similar narratives *and*; (see *nur, noch, sondern*; *nothing but nichts als*, all but dead *fast leblos*, not he but she *nicht er, sondern sie*, but few *nur wenige*). The PREPOSITION *but* is *außer* or *bis auf*.

ach ah! (interjection), expresses sorrow, desire, and admiration.

ah ah! (interjection), expresses surprise and wonder and sometimes pain.

allein alone (CONJUNCTION): however, yet.

also (not *also*), *accordingly, consequently*. Often: *so, thus*. In narrative: *well then*.

anders otherwise, differently; *ein anderer, &c.*, another (a different one), (see *nach ein &c. and sonst*).

au! and au weh! interj., expressing bodily pain.

auch also, likewise, auch nicht neither; *Ich auch nicht neither I, nor I; auch nicht ein Wort, not (even) one word.* (See Conjunctions).

balb soon, (eher, sooner), almost; *balb Dies balb Das sometimes this, sometimes that*; *balb hier balb dort now here, then there*.

da there, in that place; *da then thereupon*. *Da sometimes means here*; as, *Da bin ich, Here I am*. Sometimes it is an expletive: *So viel Blümlein, als da blühen, As many flowerets as are blooming. Wer da weiß, Whoever knows.*

da, CONJUNCTION as, whereas.

daher from that place, hence. Dorthin to that place, thither.

damit with it, with this; (conj., in order that).

dann then, at that time, after that; *denn for* (see p. 234).

doch yet, still, has often the force of the colloquial *though*: *Du siehst es doch, You see it though. Sieh doch! Pray do see! Du kommst doch? You will come, I trust? Er ist doch hier, He is here nevertheless. Er ist doch hier? He is here, I hope.* (See Construction of Sentences, inverted order 4, and p. 210, B).

dort there, at that place (properly at a place not in view). Dorthin to that place.

drauf! on, attack! drauf und dran! up and at them!

drunter und drüber, all in a confusion.

eben just, exactly; *jetzt eben or so eben, just now*; *eben derselbe the very same*; *Das kann man eben nicht wissen, That is the (very) thing one cannot know*; *eben so exactly the same (manner)*; *eben so gut quite as good or well*; (*eben, adj., smooth, level*).

ei! (eh) colloquially ih! interject., dear me! *Gi, ei! take care!*

einmal once, one time; *Ich habe es einmal gesehen, I once saw it.*

Sie müssen ihn einmal sehen, You must see him once (one day).

Sehen Sie einmal, Just look. (See p. 210, B).

erst once, used both with past and future time; *Einmal* war ich frei, I was free once. *Einmal* werden wir frei sein, We shall one day be free.

erst first, therefore, with a view to continuation, *not later (longer, more) than; only*; on the other hand, with a view to the termination or accomplishing of an action, *not sooner than, not before*; *Erst* ich, dann du, First I, then you. Du bist erst eine halbe Stunde hier, und brauchst erst um 6 Uhr dort zu sein, You have been here only (not longer than) half an hour, and you need not be there before six o'clock. Wir sind erst eine halbe Meile gegangen: wenn wir so fort gehen, kommen wir erst Mittags an, We have walked no more than half a mile: if we continue thus we shall not arrive before (not sooner than) noon. Dies ist erst der Anfang, das Vorspiel; warten Sie erst das Ende ab, This is only the beginning, the prelude; wait for the end first; eben erst, just a moment ago; erst recht (idiom), in right style, so much the more.

etwa perhaps; *Etwas*, something; *etwas* besser, somewhat (a little) better.

ganz quite, thoroughly; *ganz und gar*, altogether; *adj.*, entire, all the.

gar very, *gar* sehr very much, *gar* nicht not at all; Warum nicht gar! What an idea! Bist gar, You don't say so! Du hast es wohl gar gesehen? You don't mean to say you have seen it? (*gar* *adj.*, ready boiled).

grade exactly, the very. The *adverb* *grade* may be often rendered by *to happen to*; as, Ich ging grade über die Straße, I happened to cross the street. Es lag grade auf dem Tische, It happened to lie on the table. (*Gerade* *adj.*, straight; *gerade* *zu*, downright).

gern gladly, readily, willingly; Ich möchte gern, I should like to. Er redet gern, He likes to talk, he is fond of talking. Er isst gern, noch lieber trinkt er, aber am liebsten schläft er den ganzen Tag, He is fond of eating, he likes drinking still better, yet best of all he would like to sleep all day. Er hat es gern, wenn ich es thue, He likes me to do it. Ihr müchtet mich gern fangen, You would fain catch me. Entschuldigen Sie, ich habe es nicht gern gethan, Excuse me, I have not done it intentionally. (See p. 96 E).

gut good, morally good, of good quality; (adverbially), well; Es ist gut, all right; Lassen Sie es gut sein, Never mind.

halb half; *halben* or *halber* (preposition), for the sake of; *Anstands halber*, for the sake of appearance.

he! he! *he!* interj., demanding attention, halloo!

her hither, *hin* thither; Er ging hin und her, He walked up and down. In compounds *her* is used with coming towards, *hin* with going away, from, going to: Er kommt her, He comes hither (to us). Gehen Sie heute hin? Do you go thither to-day? (See p. 56 E).

hier here, *at this place*, *hierher* or *her*, *hither*, *to this place*, *hieselbst* in this city, town, *hinten* in the back part of; *hinten am Schiffe* ist das *Steuer*, At the stern of the ship is the rudder; *hinter* behind (separately); *Ein Delphin schwimmt hinter dem Schiffe*, A dolphin swims behind the vessel.

immer always, *auf immer* for ever, *immer besser* better. and *better*, *immer schöner* more and more beautiful.

indessen yet; *indess* whilst.

ja yes, ay. IN THE MIDDLE OF SENTENCES: *Du siehst es ja*, You see it I am sure! Don't you see it? *Stehen Sie ja still!* Stand still by all means. *Fallen Sie ja nicht!* Take care not to fall. *Thun Sie es ja nicht!* Do it by no means. *Da steht er ja!* There he stands; don't you see him? *Da kommt er ja!* There he is coming indeed! IN CONDITIONAL CLAUSES it generally means *contrary to expectation*: *Hier ist der Schlüssel, wenn Sie sich ja verspäten sollten.* Here is the key, if (contrary to expectation, by any accident, &c.) you should be late. *Ja* is often equivalent to the English *nay*: *ja* sogar, nay even.

je and *jemaß* are like the English *ever*, used both with regard to the PAST and the FUTURE; *as*, *Ich erinnere mich nicht je* (or *jemaß*) davon gehört zu haben, I do not remember having ever heard of it. *Aber wenn es je* (or *jemaß*) *geschähe*, wäre es ein Unglück, But if it should ever happen it would be a misfortune; *von jeher* always (past) ever since. (See Conjunctions.)

jetzt AT PRESENT, JUST NOW, denotes an ABSOLUTE present but it occurs improperly with the force of *nun now* (that a certain circumstance has taken place). *Wir essen jetzt*, We are at dinner at present. *Unsre Arbeit ist gethan, jetzt* (for *nun*) *wollen wir zum Essen gehen*, Our work is done, let us now go to dinner.

kaum scarcely, *kaum . . . als* or *kaum . . . so* no sooner than.

lange, *lang'* long (in point of time); *Es ist lange her*, It is long since; *längst* long ago; *Tage lang* for days, *Stunden lang* for hours, (but *Meilen weit* for miles); *lang lang* (in size), *längs* along.

lieber, *am liebsten* see gern.

mehr more (a larger number or quantity); *mehr* is used with the force of *rather* in comparing two adjectives in the positive degree, which have a certain analogy: *not mehr reich als weise*, richer than wise, but *mehr gelehrt als weise*, learned rather than wise; *mehrere* several.

nein no, reply; (no, not a *kein*; no person *kein Mensch*); *nicht* not.

nein (INTERJECTION rather colloquial). Dear, dear! *Nein!* das war prächtig, I can not tell you how splendid that was.

nieder down (downwards); *Er steigt nieder*, He descends! *Nieder mit ihm*, Down with him. *Nieder* must be distinguished from *unten* down, below.

niemals never, *nie* and *nimmer* are more emphatic, especially the latter. *noch* still, *noch nicht* not yet; *noch so sehr* ever so much, *wenn auch noch so lange*, however long; *noch gestern*, *noch vor einer Stunde*, but yesterday, but an hour ago; *noch einmal* ONCE MORE, *noch ein*,

eine, eines **ANOTHER**: Nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel, Take another apple; noch **nor**, see **weder**.

nun *now*, has **NOT** the force of *at present* (see *jetzt*); (*nun* denotes the present as viewed in relation to a past of which the present fact is the expected or unexpected issue. Ich habe mein Versprechen erfüllt, *nun* erfüllen Sie das Ihrige und thun Sie es *jetzt*, I have fulfilled my promise, now fulfil yours and do so at present. Erst verspricht er Alles, und nun will er gar nichts thun, First he promises everything and now he is not going to do any thing at all).

Nun, was giebt's? *Well*, what's the matter? *Nun*, das war zu erwarten, *Why*, that was to be expected. Now is the time, the moment, Dies ist die Zeit, der Augenblick.

nur, only; *nur wenig*, arm, langsam, &c., but little, poor, slowly, &c. o! interject., much like the English O! Oh! O weß! expressing pain or pity.

schon frequently only **STRENGTHENS THE PERFECT**: Ich habe es schon gesehen, *I have seen it*; otherwise it means *already*, or it expresses confidence like the colloquial *soon — enough*; e. g. Es wird schon gehen, *No fear it will do*. Sie werden ihn schon treffen, *I doubt not but you will meet him*. Er wird es schon erfahren, *He will learn it soon enough*.

selber *self*, not *reflective*; as, Da kommt der Herr selber or selbst, There the master comes himself; von selbst, of him-, her-, itself; selbst **BEFORE THE NOUN OR PRONOUN** *even*: Selbst der Vater lächelte, Even the father smiled.

sondern *but*, in **contradistinction** after a negative phrase: Nicht er, sondern du, Not he, but you. Nicht schlafen, sondern arbeiten, Not to sleep but to work; sander (obs. **PREPOS.**), *without*; sondern (**VERB**), to separate, to sunder.

sonst *else*, otherwise; Thue es, sonst wird er böse, Do it else he will become angry; (elsewhere *anderswo*; sonst, better sonst, *in former times*).

so adverb, *thus*, in this manner, so; So standen die Dinge, Thus matters stood. Die Dinge standen so, daß &c., Such was the state of affairs that &c. (See p. 77 *folcher* and 97, 1).

so, sobald als, &c., (see p. 236); so! **INTERJ.**, well! so? ay? indeed? Es ist nur so so, It is only so so.

um in **COMPOUND VERBS**. 1. *around, round*: Der Vogel umfliegt das Nest, The bird flies around the nest; 2. the accented *um* often means *knocking down or over*; as, umstürzen to overthrow, umfallen to tumble down, but um'gehen to keep company, to hold intercourse.

unten below, in the lower part; *unter* below (separately), under; untergehen to perish, to founder.

verne in the forepart of; *vor* in front of (separately).

wann at what hour, at what time or date *when*, referring to time

chronologically; not to be confounded with *wenn*, (see Conjunctions als p. 235 and *wenn* p. 237, also p. 84).

weder (noch) neither (nor): *weder er noch ich*, Neither he nor I.

weise (from *Weise manner*), joined to GENITIVES OF ADJECTIVES, has the force of *ly*: *natürlicherweise naturally*; or joined to the OWNITIVE OF NOUNS with the force of *as*: *versuchsweise* by way of trial, *versuchsweise* as an advance.

wie like, in the same manner as; *Wie Ihnen bekannt ist*, As is known to you; *wie?* INTERROGATIVE, *how?* *wie auch* as also; but if the *auch* is separated from *wie* by intermediate words, *however*; *wie sehr auch* (viel auch) however much. (See Conjunctions p. 237).

wieder again, not to be confounded with the PREPOSITION *wider* against. *wo* where, (wherefore *weßwegen*, *weßhalb*, *wesfür* for what); *wo* is sometimes USED FOR *wenn* *if* and even for *als* *when*: *Wo du es sagst*, If thou tell it; *wo nicht*, if not. (See p. 84 c and p. 237).

wohl (wel) well (IN HEALTH); *sehr wohl!* very well! *Leben Sie wohl!* Good bye. *Leb' wohl!* Adieu! Farewell! (The ADVERB OF MANNER, *well*, is generally gut: He does it well, *Er macht es gut*). *Wohl* often expresses PROBABILITY: *Es kann wohl sein*, It may be. *Er wird es wohl bringen*, He will bring it likely; *wohl* may often be rendered by *I presume*: *Dies ist wohl Ihr Bruder*, This is your brother, I presume; *wohl indeed*; *Ja wohl muß man sich wundern*, Indeed, one must wonder. *Die Botschaft hör' ich wohl, allein mir fehlt der Glaube*, The message I hear indeed; yet I have no faith in it. *Wohl dir!* Happy you!

ju! on! immer *ju!* on! on! — as an adverb in COMPOUNDS it denotes *shutting*; as a PREPOSITION, *towards*, *to*; *zu* too (SUPERL.) governs the dative, (see p. 160, 5 d).

SECTION XXIX. — CONJUNCTIONS.

The two lists given below contain a number of ADVERBS (see pp. 229 — 233) and for practical reasons some conjunctions have been introduced in the list of adverbs. These two sections may therefore be compared as completing each other. (See for instance; *aber*, *da*, *doch*, *mann*, *wie*, *wo*).

The classification of the Conjunctions according to their logical character is a matter of English Grammar and may be introduced with advantage in a book of exercises for the advanced pupils. Here the alphabetical arrangement under the simple heads of *coordinative* and *subordinative conjunctions* is infinitely preferable as affording greatest FACILITY FOR REFERENCE both with regard to their *meaning* and their *syntactical use*.

PURE CONJUNCTIONS.

The following conjunctions do NOT AFFECT IN ANY WAY the arrangement of words in a clause: *aber* *but*, in the sense of *however*, *allein* *yet*, (not to be con-

founded with *allein alone*), *denn for*, *oder or*, *sondern but*, when used after a NEGATIVE phrase, *und and*; also *doch*, when it has the force of the interjection *yet, still* and occasionally *entweder either*; as, *Entweder ich träume oder du täuschest mich, Either, I dream or you deceive me* (see *entweder* below).

Note. The Conjunction *denn for* differs from the SUBORDINATIVE Conjunction *weil because*, in so far as *denn for* is used in stating a REASON merely in an ACCIDENTAL way; as, *Wir wurden durch seine Ankunft sehr überrascht, denn wir glaubten ihn noch in Paris, We were much surprised by his arrival for we believed him still in Paris*; whilst *weil because* is used in stating a CAUSE as the ESSENTIAL or necessary one, and must therefore be employed in *replying to a question*; as, *Warum beunruhigten Sie Ihre Freunde mit dieser Nachricht? Weil (not Denn) die Sache gefährlich werden konnte. Why did you alarm your friends with this news? Because (not for) the thing might have become dangerous.*

Denn, construed like an ADVERB (see Sect. XXX D) means *unless*; as, *Es sei denn. Unless it be. Ich lasse dich nicht, du segnest mich denn, I will not let thee go except thou bless me.* *Denn* also expresses curiosity and impatience in questions like: *Wo bleibst du denn? Why, where are you tarrying then?*

COORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

These Conjunctions are construed as ADVERBS (see rules for the construction of sentences D); and thus when *introducing* the CLAUSE and referring to the VERB, they INVERT THE ORDER OF THE NOMINATIVE AND THE VERB; i. e. the nominative is placed *after* the *inflected* part of the verb; as, *Also gab ich ihm das Buch, Accordingly I gave him the book.*

Note 1. *Ob* and *wenn if*, when they form part of the subordinate conjunctions *als ob, als wenn as if*; or of the separable conjunctions *wenn auch, wenigstens, wenn schon, and ob auch, obgleich, ob schon although* are often dropped, and, if this is the case, the dependent assumes the form of an inverted principal clause; as, *Er thut als sei er reich, instead of als ob er reich sei, He acts as if he were rich.*

SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

The following conjunctions introduce DEPENDENT clauses in which the verb is placed at the end, the auxiliary standing last of all; as, *Als ich ihm das Buch gab, When I gave him the book; or: Daß ich ihm das Buch gegeben habe, that I have given him the book.*

Note 2. Conjunctions consisting of TWO WORDS and SEPARATED by a — in the list are thus construed; the first part is placed at the HEAD of the clause and the second follows after the nominative or after the objects when these are personal pronouns (used without a preposition); as, *Wenn er es mir nicht morgen giebt, unless he gives it me to-morrow; which must not be confounded with: Wenn er es mir morgen nicht giebt, if he does not give it me to-morrow.*

habe ich es dir gleich gesagt, instead of *wenn*gleich ich es dir gesagt habe, Although I have told it you.

also accordingly, therefore, (thus). auch also, besides, too, even.

auch nicht (*likewise not*), nor, neither; *N*och auch nicht, Nor I.

— auch (after *wann*, *was*, *wer*, *wie*, *wo* and *so*; see these, and p. 84, 7 &c.)

auch in these combinations means *ever*, and is sometimes omitted.

als *when*, (if referring to a SINGLE FACT OF THE PAST); can be used with the IMPERF. and PLUPERF. only.

(Neither *als* nor *wenn* *when* (see below) can be omitted as in the English; *The last time he wrote*, *The next time he writes*).

als *as*; (*So wohl* &c. *als* auch &c., *As well* &c. *as* also &c. *Um so mehr als* &c., *The more so as*, &c. *Als*, in COMPARISONS see p. 97.

als (ob), als (wenn) *as if*; see ob and wenn.

auf daß in order that (with the Subjunctive).

bis until.

bevor before.

begegen on the other hand, again.

daher therefore, hence.

dann then, after that, at that time.

darum therefore.

demnach accordingly.

dennoch yet, still, (nevertheless).

desgleichen likewise.

deshalb therefore.

desungeachtet notwithstanding that, in spite of this.

desto the (e. g., the more, the less).

deswegen therefore.

doch (jedoch) yet, still, however. (See p. 229).

da *as*, (*whereas*), *since*, (often rendered in English participially; *Da ich keine Zeit habe* — *Having no time*; see p. 219 f).

da *when*, rather *as*, combining reason and time. (*Wirst wird kommen der Tag da*, *The day cometh when*.)

dafern if (in case).

dagegen (for *wo*gegen) where on the other hand.

daher (for *wo*her) *whence*.

damit that, in order that; damit with it, with that, (see p. 58, 1 and p. 72 c).

damit — nicht lest.

daß *that*, also *as*, in phrases like: *Such was his zeal as to* &c., *So groß war sein Eifer, daß* &c. (see *such* pp. 77 and 78).

daß nicht lest, but.

ehe before.

einerseits on the one hand, andererseits on the other hand.

endlich finally, at last.

236 COORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS SUBORDINATIVE.

entweder either (oder or).

erst first, at first.

ferner further.

folglich consequently.

gleichwohl nevertheless.

hernach afterwards (after this present moment).

hingegen on the contrary.

indessen in the meanwhile, meantime.

indes yet, however.

ingleich likewise.

inmittlest in the meantime.

in so fern, in so weit so far.

jedoch however, though.

nächstin therefore, consequently.

nachher afterwards (used relatively, after, erst first &c.).

nicht allein } not only — (sondern
nicht bloß } auch but also).
nicht nur }

nichtsdestoweniger nothing the less.
noch nor.

nun now, thereupon. (War es nun
Absicht oder Zufall &c., Now
whether it was intention or ac-
cident).

nur only.

so so, thus (when meaning *then*,
often dropped in English).

somit and sonach hence, accord-
ingly.

sonst else, otherwise.

sowohl as well — (als auch as also)
(Er sowohl als sie, Both he and
she.

falls in case.

gleichwie as, like as.

indem as, whilst, or rendered by
the PRES. PART. in English,
either with or without *in*; In-
dem er hinausging, In going
out. Indem ich sah, I, seeing.
indes (whilst being engaged in).
insfern (als) in as far much) as.
inwiefern how far (in what re-
spect).

je — (desto) the — the (with the
comparison); je nachdem as, ac-
cording as.

nachdem (with the Pluperf.) after,
(often expressed by *having* with
the past part., e. g., Nachdem ich
gesehen hatte, Having seen).

nun (properly nun, da) now (that).

ob if, whether, ob — nicht but; ob
is sometimes omitted especially
before nun.

obgleich and obgleich. obwohl
though, although (gleich wohl
and schon being sometimes se-
parated from ob; see Coordina-
tive Conj. p. 234, Note).

seit (seitdem) since, ever since.

sintemal (obsolete) whereas.

so as, for instance, So oft er kam,
As often as he came; (see p. 97,
1).

so — auch however (e. g., so sehr
auch however much, so lange
auch however long; auch is often

theils — theils partly —, partly.
 überdies moreover.
 um so mehr the more (als as).
 um so weniger the less.
 unterdessen meanwhile.
 vielmehr on the contrary, rather,
 much more.
 viel weniger still less.
 weder neither (noch nor).
 weiter farther, further.
 wohl indeed (see p. 233).

zuerst and zuvor first, (before).
 zuletzt lastly.
 zwar indeed.

understood; as, So groß er war,
However tall he was. See p. 85
 Note 1).
 so occurs in the scriptures for
 wenn if.
 sobald (als), so wie as soon, as
 soon as.
 sofern and soweit in as far as.

um zu in order to.
 ungeachtet although (notwithstanding).

während whilst.
 wann when, *at what time*, hour, &c.
 weil because, as, since.
 weil (used for während) while,
 whilst.
 wenn *if*, frequently omitted and
 then the clause *inverted*; as,
Sehe ich ihn, If I see him.
 wenn when, whenever, cannot be
 omitted.
 wenn — anders provided that.
 wenn — nicht, unless; (see Note
 2, p. 234).
 wenn — auch, wenn — gleich and
 wenn — gleich, wenn — schon, al-
 though, if even. (See Note 1, p.
 234).
 weshalb and deswegen for which
 reason, on account of which.
 wie as, in such manner as. (See p.
 86 d and Note 3).
 wie how, in what manner.
 wie — auch however (e. g., wie
 groß auch, great as, however
 great;) auch sometimes omitted.
 wie fern in how far.
 wie wohl although.
 wo where, sometimes for wenn, *if*,
when.
 wo in Compounds; as, womit, we-
 für, wovon, wonach, wozu &c.
 (see p. 82, 4).
 zumal (da) especially as.

SECTION XXX. — RULES FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE.

The essential parts of a sentence are the subject, the predicate and, strictly speaking, also the object or objects.

a. The SUBJECT (nominative) is SAID to be something; as, *The man is my friend*; or in a certain state; as, *The man is ill, the man lives*; or of a certain quality; as, *The man is good*; or acting; as, *The man sees*; or acted upon; as, *The man is seen*.

b. The PREDICATE is the word or words by which this state, quality, action &c., of the subject is expressed; as, *is my friend, is ill, lives, is good, sees, is seen*.

1. It is well to distinguish at once in the predicate the INFLECTED PART, *i. e.* the verb or part of the verb which assumes personal terminations (*I am, I was, I see, I saw, thou art, thou wast, thou seeest, thou sawst, he, she, it is, was, sees, saw, or I have been, seen, I had been, seen, I can, may, must, shall, will be, see &c.*), from the uninflected part which is the *Past Participle* or the *Infinitive* (*I have seen, I must, shall, will see*).

2. In sentences formed with the simple tenses of the verb *sein* to be; as, *Er ist alt, He is old. Er ist ihr Vater, He is her father. Sie waren zu Hause, They were at home*, the verb *ist, waren*, is called the COPULA, and the adjective (*alt*) or the noun (*ihr Vater*) or the adverbial expression (*zu Hause*) which completes the assertion, is specially termed the PREDICATE.

c. The OBJECTS. If the predicate is a verb the action of which affects another person or thing (verb *transitive* or rather *objective*), as, *sees*, it has the person or thing affected for its OBJECT; as, *The man sees the brother, the light*. The object is a SIMPLE CASE *i. e.* not introduced by a preposition; it is generally the accusative (see p. 163), but often the dative (see pp. 152—158) and sometimes the genitive (see pp. 147—150).

Certain verbs (see p. 152, 1) require besides the direct object an INDIRECT object; as, *The man gives the book (direct object) to the brother (indirect object)*.

d. The ADVERBIALS. The subject as well as predicate and the object may be attended by ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS which are gene-

rally introduced by *prepositions*; as, *The man in the gray dress bought for his children the book with the red cover.* Only the adverbial expression *qualifying the verb* has, however, the character of a REAL ADVERB and is construed as such (see below D). The prepositional phrases, attending the subject or the object (*which they always follow*) have the value of attributes (see *e* below); as, *The man in the gray dress i. e. The gray-dressed man* — the book with the red cover *i. e. the red-covered book.* (See *E* below). In translating from the German all adverbial expressions ought first to be AVOIDED until the essential elements, *viz.* the nominative, the verb and the object have been found, after which the sentence may be completed by the unessential parts.

e. The ATTRIBUTES. Any noun in a sentence may be accompanied by an ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE or GENITIVE or ADVERBIAL (see *d*). The attributive adjective PRECEDES the noun; as, *Das gute Buch, The good book* (see pp. 66 and 68, 3); — the attributive genitive generally follows the noun (*Das Buch meines Freundes, The book of my friend*), but may also be placed before it. (*Meines Freundes Buch, My friends book*). The latter can be done only when the noun has the definite article which then is dropped. This omission of the article increases the difficulty of recognizing the case of the complement; as, *In der Bräute Locken*, which may be either in *den Locken der Bräute*, In the locks of the brides, or: *In die Locken der Bräute*, Into the locks of the brides. (Compare pp. 142, 1 and 143 Note 1).

f. For nouns in APPPOSITION (see p. 141, apposition).

COMPOUND SENTENCES, PRINCIPAL AND DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Every *simple* sentence is a PRINCIPAL CLAUSE but even *compound* sentences may consist of principal clauses only; as, *Er spielt, sie singt und wir hören zu, He plays, she sings and we listen.*

The PRINCIPAL sentence, (leading or main clause) contains a proposition which is NOT NECESSARILY connected with any other clause; as, *I see the man, I have seen the man, I shall see the man; the man is seen, has been seen, &c.*

DEPENDENT CLAUSES are such as depend on, or REFER BY NECESSITY to, the principal clause, or some other portion of the compound sentence with which they are connected either by the relative pronoun (see p. 85) or relative adverb (see p. 84); as, —, *whom I saw*; —, *who has been seen*; —, *where you will see*; or by certain conjunctions, which are called *subordina-*

tive (see p. 238, 1), because they indicate the subordination of the dependent to the main clause; as, —, *if I saw the man*; —, *because I saw the man*; —, *after having seen the man*.

TO KNOW A DEPENDENT CLAUSE in German is easy, as it always *ends with the inflected part of the verb* (see p. 238 *b*, 1); as, — *wer den Apfel findet*, — *who finds the apple*; — *wer den Apfel gefunden hat*, — *who has found the apple*; — *wenn du den Apfel finden kannst*, — *if you can find the apple*. In translating *from English into German*, however, the difficulty is greater and the author would suggest that the pupil should thoroughly learn the following rule:

Every clause introduced by the RELATIVE pronouns: who, that which, what, or by the RELATIVE adverbs: how, when, where and their compounds, or lastly by any of the subordinative CONJUNCTIONS, here following, is a DEPENDENT CLAUSE: after, although, as (in as far as, in as much as, whereas) — because, before, — if, lest, since, that (in case that, in order that, now that), unless, until, when, whether, while (whiles, whilst). The German of these Conjunctions has been given pp. 235, 237 in the *right* hand column, where they must be well studied, but the pupil will more readily remember them in the order here given.

DIRECT AND INVERTED SENTENCES. A principal sentence is DIRECT when it begins with the nominative; as, *She said*. — It is INVERTED when the *inflected part of the verb* is placed BEFORE the nominative; as, *No, said she*. Even dependent clauses can be inverted owing to the omission of the conjunction IF; as, *Were I*, instead of: *If I were*. (See B, below).

CONSTRUCTION OF GERMAN SENTENCES.

The pupil will construe correctly only after mastering the following points, explained below. A. The position of the verb as different in principal and in dependent clauses. B. The inverted order of the nominative and the verb in principal and in de-

pendent clauses. C. The mutual position of the direct and indirect objects and of the same when expressed by personal pronouns. D. The position of the separable prefixes, adverbs and adverbial expressions *qualifying the verb*. E. The position of the *attributive adjective or participle* and of the clauses pertaining thereto.

In *support* of these details, however, the author has to propose the following as the

FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLE OF GERMAN CONSTRUCTION

without which all other rules for the arrangement of the parts of the sentence will be found to remain unsatisfactory.

The genius of the *English* language demands that the part of the sentence expressing the MAIN IDEA shall be introduced AS EARLY AS POSSIBLE after the nominative; and that the qualifying particulars FOLLOW the main assertion and be placed the nearer the END the LESS directly they bear on the asserting verb, the LEAST IMPORTANT element being placed LAST — (*He has not given the book to his brother on his way yesterday*); the *German* language has exactly the OPPOSITE tendency. The element expressing the MAIN IDEA IS PLACED LAST and the qualifying particulars are made to PRECEDE it in such a manner that the LESS DIRECTLY they bear on the main assertion, the EARLIER they are placed after the nominative; e. g. (*Er hat gestern seinem Bruder das Buch unterwegs nicht gegeben*). *He has yesterday to his brother the book on his road not given*. It must be well understood that this *NATURAL* order of the parts of the German sentence is, BY NO MEANS A FIXED ONE, but that it may be varied in manifold ways according to the superior importance, to be given in the mind of the reader to any of the qualifying particulars, and that accordingly any element raised to a greater importance may be placed nearer the end; as,

Er hat gestern seinem Bruder unterwegs nicht das
He has yesterday to his brother on his road not the
 Buch (sondern den Brief) gegeben.
book (but the letter) given.

Er hat gestern das Buch unterwegs nicht seinem
He has yesterday the book on his road not to his
 Bruder (sondern seinem Freunde) gegeben.
brother (but to his friend) given.

Er hat gestern seinem Bruder das Buch nicht unter-
He has yesterday to his brother the book not on his
 wegs (sondern zu Hause) gegeben.
road (but at home) given.

Er hat seinem Bruder das Buch unterwegs nicht
He has to his brother the book on his road not
 gestern (sondern heute) gegeben.
yesterday (but to-day) given.

Certain elements indeed, as for instance the OBJECTS and the ADVERBS (see below C and D) may seem to have a more definite position, but they are nevertheless liable to the above stated law; the operation of which is quite unmistakable when TWO OR SEVERAL ELEMENTS OF THE SAME NATURE, for instance two objects (the direct and the indirect) or several adverbs or adverbial expressions are introduced in the same sentence. These particulars are explained C and D below.

INDIRECT SENTENCES. It may here at once be observed that the frequent occurrence in German of INDIRECT SENTENCES *i. e.* of sentences not commencing with the nominative (*and in which the inflected part of the verb is placed before the nominative*, see B below) has its reason in the desire to impress the hearer from the very outset with the element — not indeed of main importance *grammatically*, — but of particular INTEREST in the statement; as, *Im Anfange schuf Gott Himmel und Erde, In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.*

Thus the sentence: Er hat gestern seinem Bruder das Buch unterwegs nicht gegeben, *He has not given the book to his brother on his road yesterday*, may be

headed by almost any of its parts; as, *Gestern hat er &c., Yesterday has he &c.* *Seinem Bruder hat er &c., To his brother he has &c.* *Das Buch hat er &c., The book he has &c.* *Unterwegs hat er &c., On his road he has &c.* And the negative *nicht* may be placed before any of these parts; as, *Nicht gestern hat er &c., Not yesterday has he &c.* *Nicht seinem Bruder hat er &c., Not to his brother he has &c. &c.*

When the ACTION (the verb) itself is to take an *exclusive* effect upon the mind, the verb is placed before the real nominative and accompanied and preceded by the indefinite impers. pron., *Es*, both in the Sing. and Plur., which then forms the grammatical subject (see p. 227, 4); as, *Es grüßen Euch alle Brüder, (All the brethren greet you), Greetings from all the brethren.* *Es irrt der Mensch, so lang er strebt, (Man errs while he aspires), Error is the lot of aspiring man.* *Es donnern die Höhen, (The summits thunder), There is a thundering on the summits of the mountains.* In verse this construction is sometimes merely used for metrical convenience; as, *Es war ein König in Thule, There was a king in Thule.*

A. POSITION OF THE VERB.

1. The UNINFLECTED PART of the verb *viz.* the PAST PARTICIPLE and the INFINITIVE, as also the PREDICATE of the verb *sein to be* (and of similar verbs, see p. 142, the Nominative) are placed AT THE END of the clause (*see, however, 5 below*); as, *Ich habe den Mann gesehen, I have the man seen.* *Ich kann den Mann sehen, I can the man see.* *Er ist für sein Alter noch stark, He is for his age still strong.* *Er wurde im Laufe der Zeit ein reicher Mann, He became in the course of time a rich man.* *Er ist diesen Augenblick nicht zu Hause, He is this moment not at home.*

2. *a.* The Past Part. of the Auxiliary follows the Past Part. of the main verb; as, *Der Mann muß gesehen worden sein, The man must seen been have.*

b. When the clause contains BOTH a Past Parti-

ciple *and* an Infinitive, THE INFINITIVE IS PLACED AFTER the Past Participle; as, *Sie müssen den Mann gesehen haben*, You must the man seen *have*.

c. When the PREDICATE of the verb *to be* is accompanied by a Past Participle or Infinitive, it is FOLLOWED by these UNINFLECTED parts; as, *Er war im Laufe der Zeit ein reicher Mann geworden*, He had in the course of time a rich man *become*. *Er mag im Laufe der Zeit ein reicher Mann werden*, He may in the course of time a rich man become; or *geworden sein*, become *have*. Other parts of speech must not be thrown in between the parts of the verb when these are at the end, except such words as are used as components of the verb.

3. But the INFLECTED part (see p. 238 *b* 1) is placed LAST OF ALL in all DEPENDENT clauses (see above 239); as, — *daß ich den Mann sehe*, — that I the man *see*; — *welchen ich gesehen habe*, — whom I seen *have*; — *wenn ich den Mann sehen kann*, — when I the man see *can*; — *weil er im Laufe der Zeit ein reicher Mann geworden sein mag*, — because he in the course of time a rich man become have *may*.

The few cases in which this rule is departed from are stated below 5 a, b, c.

4. The INFLECTED PART of the verb is in direct *principal* sentences placed immediately after the nominative (subject) or its attribute (see p. 239 *e* and *d*); as, *Ich sehe den Mann*, I *see* the man. *Ich sah den Mann*, I *saw* the man. *Ich habe (hatte) den Mann gesehen*, I *have (had)* the man seen. *Ich werde (soll, will, muß, kann) den Mann sehen*, I *shall (am to, will, must, can)* the man see; (*or after the attributive*), *Der Vater des Kindes kaufte das Buch*, The father of the child *bought* the book. *Der Mann in dem grauen Anzuge rettete das Kind*, The man in the gray dress *saved* the child.

Note. In English the ADVERB qualifying the verb in *principal* sentences is frequently placed between the nominative subject and a simple tense of the verb; as, *I OFTEN saw the man*, *He GENERALLY disappoints*

his friends. This is NEVER DONE in German. (In *dependent* clauses, where the nominative is at the beginning and the verb at the end, the adverb must of course be placed between the two, but then it generally immediately precedes the verb).

The following CONJUNCTIONS, however, occur in *principal* clauses between the nominative and the inflected verb; they then have more the character of *attributes* to the nominative, (almost with the force of *as to*); aber however, but, (Der Vater aber sagte &c. But the father said &c.; the father, however, said &c., as to the father, he said &c.), also accordingly, dagegen on the other hand, einerseits on the one hand and andererseits on the other hand, indessen however, jedoch however, nämlich namely, nun in the sense of *then*, selbst even, sodann accordingly, überdies moreover, besides, zwar indeed. Der Vater zwar hätte den Muth gehabt, die Mutter jedoch konnte sich nicht entschließen, *The father indeed might have had the courage, the mother, however, could not come to a resolution.*

5. Peculiar construction of the compound tenses of AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD and of werden in DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

a. If in a dependent clause the main verb is accompanied both by an AUXILIARY VERB OF TENSE and by a Past Participle in the Infinitive form (see p. 195) or by an Infinitive of an AUXILIARY VERB OF MOOD, this auxiliary verb of mood is always placed last in the clause, whilst the auxiliary verb of tense precedes the main verb; as, — daß ich es nicht habe sehen können, — that I have not been able to see it; — weil er es wird bringen müssen, — because he will be compelled to bring it; — SECOND FUTURE: — weil er es wird haben bringen müssen, — because he will have been compelled to bring it.

b. In the same manner the INFLECTED part of an auxiliary verb of mood in dependent clauses is made to *precede*, and another auxiliary verb of mood in the Infinitive is made to *follow* the main Infinitive; as, Dies beweist, daß er es nicht konnte hindern wollen, This proves that he could not intend (will) to hinder it. Er bat ihn, daß er es ihn möchte sehen lassen, *He begged him that he might allow him to see it.* Even combinations like the following occur. Dies beweist, daß er es nicht konnte haben hindern wollen, (P. P.), This proves, that he could not have intended (willed) to hinder it.

c. When in a dependent clause the forms of the Present of the AUXILIARY werden *shall, will*, are used along with the Infinitive werden *to be* (by which the passive voice is formed) the former for the sake of euphony directly precedes and the Infinitive werden follows the main verb; as, Ich sehe voraus, daß wir werden geschlagen werden, I foresee that we shall be beaten. Ich muß es sagen, wenn ich darum werde befragt werden, *I must tell it, when I shall be asked about it.* With the 2^d and 3^d person *wirßt wilt, wird will*, the usual arrangement takes place; as, Du mußt es sagen, wenn du darum befragt werden wirst. You must tell it, when you shall be asked about it; because this combination is tolerably euphonic.

REMARKS ON COMPOUND SENTENCES.

a. Dependent clauses, their position, insertion. *b* and *c*. Omission of the Relative and of conjunctions. *d* and *e*. Omission of the auxiliary verb. *f*. Omission of the conjunctions *daß* *that* and *wenn* *if* and *ob* *whether*. *g*. *Such as*. *h*. Relative clauses with the Infinitive with *to*. *i*. Clauses with the Infinitive with *zu*.

a. The *dependent* clause may, as in English, FOLLOW, PRECEDE, OR BE INSERTED INTO another clause of a compound sentence. In all these cases the application of the COMMA (see p. 21, 4) is important for the pupil, as it always separates the dependent from other clauses; as, *Das Buch war nicht, wo du es suchtest, The book was not where you sought it. Daß du das Buch suchtest, wußte ich nicht, That you sought the book I did not know (knew I not). Das Buch, welches du suchtest, ist hier, The book which you sought is here.*

The *dependent* clause either represents the OBJECT; as, *Ich weiß, daß er stark ist, I know that he is strong, (i. e. I know his strength);* or expresses an ADVERBIAL RELATION; as, *Bringen Sie es mit, wenn Sie morgen kommen, Bring it with you when you come to-morrow, (i. e. Bring it with you to-morrow);* or an attributive relation: *Der Mann, welcher alt war, The man who was old, (i. e. The old man);* and according to its nature as an object, an adverbial phrase, or an attribute its position in the compound sentence is regulated very much as in English.

ADVERBIAL INSERTIONS into dependent clauses are not, as in English, made directly after the subordinative CONJUNCTION or the RELATIVE but are like the adverb placed after the nominative or the object especially when expressed by personal pronouns (See p. 255). Thus not: *He said that as he had not the book he could not give me the words of the passage;* — but: *He said that he to me, as he had not the book, could not give the words of the passage, Er sagte, daß er mir, da er das Buch nicht habe, die Worte der Stelle nicht geben könne. If by any chance you should meet him, Wenn Sie ihn zufällig trafen.*

AS THE FIRST STEP IN TRANSLATING must be to ascertain from their agreement the nominative or subject of the sentence, and then directly the *entire verb* with the object it may govern, the reader must abstain from entering upon all INSERTED CLAUSES until

he has made out the enclosing sentence. As the *inserted* clauses are always PRECEDED AND FOLLOWED BY COMMAS, these commas will warn him to pass on until the completing portion of the interrupted sentence is found. Thus: Das Land, in welchem der Flüchtling eine neue Heimath zu finden hoffte, lag endlich vor ihm: Translate: Das Land ————— lag endlich vor ihm, *The land ————— lay at last before him*, and then return to the inserted clause —, in welchem der Flüchtling eine neue Heimath zu finden hoffte, *in which the fugitive hoped to find a new home*.

The greater the number of clauses inserted into each other the more strictly must this manner of proceeding be observed; as, Das Land, in welchem der Flüchtling, der sich bewußt war, daß die Sache, der er gedient hatte, auf lange Jahre eine verlorene war, eine neue Heimath zu finden hoffte, lag endlich vor ihm. Translate first: Das Land, —, —, —, —, —, lag endlich vor ihm, secondly: in welchem der Flüchtling, —, —, —, —, eine neue Heimath zu finden hoffte, thirdly: der sich bewußt war, fourthly: daß die Sache, —, auf lange Jahre eine verlorene war, lastly: der er gedient hatte, — The land in which the fugitive who was aware that the cause which he had served was a forlorn one for long years hoped to find a new home, lay at last before him.

b. The ENTIRE OMISSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN (see p. 85, F.) OR OF THE SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS *als* and *wenn* *when* (see pp. 235, 237), as in the English: *The man (whom) you saw, The man (whom) you spoke of, The day (when) it happened, Each time (when) I cross the place, The next time (when) you write*, — must not take place in German.

The Relative, GOVERNED BY A PREPOSITION, must always be PRECEDED by it; as, Der Mann, von welchem ich sprach, *The man I spoke of*.

c. But the *relative pronoun* or the *subordinative conjunction* when REPEATED in the same form in a SUCCESSION OF DEPENDENT CLAUSES in English is in German generally placed only in the first of these clauses

and omitted in the rest; as, Der Mann, welcher ein Eingeborner der Provinz war, (welcher) die Wege kannte und (welcher) mir von meinem Bruder gesandt war, brachte mich nach dem Hause. *The man who was a native of the province (who) knew the roads and (who) was sent to me by my brother, brought me to the house.*

The nominative (and sometimes the object) is then omitted along with the Relative or conjunction; as, Der Mann, welchen ich fast täglich sah, (welchen ich) oft bei meinem Bruder sprach, und (welchen ich) hundertmal über diese Dinge befragt hatte, *The man whom I saw almost daily, whom I often conversed with at my brother's, and whom I had asked a hundred times about these things.* Du weißt, daß ich diesen Mann fast täglich sah, (daß ich) ihn oft bei meinem Bruder sprach, und (daß ich ihn) hundertmal über diese Dinge befragt habe. *You know that I saw this man almost daily, that I have conversed with him frequently at my brother's and that I have asked him a hundred times about these things.* The INFLECTED verb being placed at the END of such clauses, will cause the pupil to look back for the RELATIVE pronoun or CONJUNCTION to a preceding clause of the sentence.

d. Here it may also be observed, that in a succession of clauses, both principal and dependent, the AUXILIARY VERB need not be repeated, as, 1. IN MAIN CLAUSES, Ich hatte den Mann fast täglich gesehen, (ich hatte ihn) häufig bei meinem Bruder gesprochen und (ich hatte ihn) hundertmal über diese Dinge befragt, *I had seen the man almost daily, had conversed with him frequently at my brother's, and had asked him, &c.* OR, 2. IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES, (Sie wissen) daß ich den Mann fast täglich gesehen (hatte), oft bei meinem Bruder gesprochen (hatte), und hundertmal darüber befragt hatte. *(You know) that I had seen the man almost daily, that I had conversed with him frequently at my brother's, and that I had asked him, &c.*

e. In POETICAL DICTION, the auxiliary is often ALTOGETHER OMITTED in the past tenses, as in Heine's *Die Grenadiere*:

Da hörten sie Beide die traurige	Then they heard the sad story
Mähr',	that France was lost,
Daß Frankreich verloren gegangen	that the brave army was conquered
Beseigt und zerشلagen das tapfere	and scattered,
Heer —	and even the emperor in captivity.
Und der Kaiser, der Kaiser gefangen	
(ist).	

Farther in Schiller's *Tell*: Es sehen viele, die das nicht gesehen (haben), Many live who have not seen that. Der soll mir's zeugen, ob die Fahrt zu wagen, He shall be my witness whether the passage is to be ventured.

f. The CONJUNCTION daß (introducing a clause which represents the object of the leading sentence) may be OMITTED as in English, but then the clause is made a principal clause in German; as, Ich glaube, es ist unmöglich, fer, Ich glaube, daß es unmöglich ist, *I believe (that) it is impossible.* Sie sehen, ich bin beschäftigt, *You*

see *I am occupied*. The leading clause, however, must not be placed after the object-clause; as, *It is impossible I believe*, not: (Es ist unmöglich, ich glaube, but, as above: Ich glaube, es ist unmöglich. *You are working I see*, not: Sie arbeiten, ich sehe, but: Ich sehe, Sie arbeiten. The conjunctions *wenn* *if* and *ob* *whether* are frequently omitted in German, but when this is the case the dependent clause assumes the form of an INVERTED PRINCIPAL sentence. (See p. 251, 5 a).

g. AS (conjunction and Relative) in *such - as* (see pp. 77, 7 and 86, d and Note 3).

h. English RELATIVE CLAUSES WITH THE INFINITIVE WITH *to*, as, *Whom to ask, What to do, Which to take* are elliptical and may be completed by means of the verb *to be* (in this case) *sein* (see pp. 193, 6 and 216, c) and sometimes *to have* *haben* with the personal forms of which they must be construed as dependent clauses in German; as, *Whom (I am) to ask, Wen ich fragen soll. What (he is) to do, Was er thun soll. Which (you are) to take, Welches du nehmen sollst*, or, *Was ich zu thun habe, Welches du zu nehmen hast*.

After the RELATIVE ADVERBS *how, when* and *where* and their compounds such clauses may be construed either with the personal forms of *sein* or impersonally with *sein* and the Infinitive with *zu*; as, *How to begin, Wie ich beginnen soll*, or, *Wie zu beginnen ist*. *When to speak, Wenn du sprechen sollst*, or, *Wenn zu sprechen ist*. *Where to end, Wo er enden soll*.

To know how to in the sense of *to be able to* is rendered by *können* with the simple Infinitive (see p. 190, 1) or by *wissen* followed by the Infinitive with *zu*, if a *general* intellectual ability is implied; as, *Er weiß die Leute zu behandeln*, He knows how to treat people. *In speaking of special cases* *how* is expressed by *wie*, as above; as, *Er weiß, wie er in diesem Falle zu handeln hat*, He knows how to act in this case.

i. CLAUSES CONTAINING THE INFINITIVE WITH *zu* (see p. 214) ought not to be inserted in any other clause, but should be placed separately, as required by the context; as, *Ich habe oft gesucht die Gründe eines Verhaltens zu finden, daß so unnatürlich scheint. I have often sought to find the grounds of conduct which seems so unnatural*. Not: *Ich habe oft die Gründe eines Verhaltens zu finden gesucht &c. They may be inserted*, however, into *short* clauses provided that these do not contain an OBJECT OF THEIR OWN; as, *Ich habe Sie oft zu sehen gewünscht*, I have often wished to see you. But: *Ich habe Sie oft gebeten zu kommen*, I have often asked you to come.

B. THE INVERTED ORDER OF THE NOMINATIVE AND THE VERB.

(See indirect sentences p. 242).

1. The INFLECTED verb is placed before its nominative, as in English, in *interrogative and imperative* PRINCIPAL clauses; as, Haben Sie mein Buch? Have you my book? Sein Sie froh! Be ye glad! Ist er nach Hause gekommen? Has he come home? Mag er sich selbst helfen! May he help himself.

The inversion of the PRINCIPAL CLAUSE is not confined to the interrogative and imperative forms only, but TAKES PLACE. —

2. When the clause begins with ANY WORD NOT the subject (nominative), or its attribute (des Vaters Bruder the father's brother, kaum eine Stunde scarcely an hour, fast alle Menschen almost all men, auch (selbst) der Vater even the father); EXCEPT the following conjunctions, which never affect the order of construction: aber *but*, allein *yet*, denn *for*, oder *or*, sondern *but* (after a negative), und *and*, and sometimes doch *yet*, (see p. 233), and the interjections which, properly speaking, do not belong to the sentence.

Thus the main clause is inverted if it begins — With the object, as (in the genitive), Des Freundes will ich dann gedenken, Then I will remember the friend. (Or in the dative), Dem Herrn gebühret Preis und Dank, To the Lord are due praise and thanks. Dem Freunde send' ich einen Gruß, I send a greeting to the friend. (Or in the accusative), Den Mann sah ich nie, I never saw the man. With an adjective or participle used predicatively or adverbially; as, Böse war er nie, Angry he never was. Lebend stand sie vor mir, Trembling she stood before me. Stärkend ist dieser Trunk nicht, tödlich ist er, This drink is not strengthening, it is deadly. With an adverb or adverbial expression or with a coordinative conjunction (see p. 234).

WORDS OF A SPEECH followed or interrupted by phrases like sagte er *said he*, antwortete er (answered he) *he answered* form the OBJECT of the interrupting phrase and hence INVERT all phrases of this kind; as,

Warum kamen Sie nicht? fragte er, Why did you not come? he asked. Weil ich fürchtete, erwiderte (entgegnete, versetzte) der Freund zögernd, ich möchte unwillkommen sein, Because I feared his friend replied hesitatingly I might not be welcome.

3. The MAIN CLAUSE IS INVERTED IF

FOLLOWING THE DEPENDENT or a clause containing the **INFINITIVE** WITH **zu**; as, Als ich nach Hause kam, sah ich den Mann, When I came home I saw the man. Daß du hier bist, weiß der Vater nicht, That you are here my father does not know. Wenn du kommst, will dein Freund dich erwarten, If you come your friend will await you. Um es zu verstehen, muß man es oft hören. In order to understand it one must hear it often.

Yet, occurring at the head of a main clause after a concessive dependent is rendered by **doch** or **dennoch**, but these are placed after the nominative and the objects when expressed by Pers. Pron.; as, Obgleich ich dich verlieren muß, kann ich dich doch nicht vergessen, Although I must lose thee, yet I cannot forget thee.

4. The inverted principal sentence occurs *without any of the above causes* in a peculiar **COMBINATION** WITH THE **ADVERB** **doch**, by which *wonder* is expressed, or the force of an *argument* rhetorically increased; as, Hab' ich die Stadt doch nie so einsam gesehen, Never, indeed, did I see the town so lonely, or, Did I ever see the town so lonely? or Wirst du es doch selbst, wie schwer das ist, for (Indeed) you know yourself, or Don't you know yourself how difficult that is? Macht die Liebe, die Kunst jegliches Kleine doch groß (*Goethe*), For love and art make little great, or, Do not love and art make little great?

5. THE DEPENDENT IN THE FORM OF AN INVERTED PRINCIPAL CLAUSE.

a. The sense of clauses expressing an **ASSUMED** **CONDITION** AND **IMPLYING THE CONTRARY**; as, *If I had, If I were, If I could, If I should*, may be rendered in English by **DROPPING THE CONJUNCTION** *if* and placing these verbs before their nominative; thus, Had I, were I, could I, should I, (*e. g.* Should I see him, for, If I should see him). The same may be done in German, and *not only* with these *auxiliary* verbs and when, as above, the condition is merely assumed and implying the contrary, but with **ANY CLAUSE** introduced by the conjunctions *wenn* *if* and *ob* *whether* (the latter, however, only when used in the manner explained below) and farther in all clauses in which the conjunctions

wenn and ob are used IN COMBINATION with auch (wenn — auch, ob — auch), with gleich (wenn — gleich, ob — gleich) or with schon (wenn — schon, ob — schon) all in the sense of *if even* or *although* (See pp. 237 and 234, Note 2).

Examples: Hätte ich Zeit *for*, Wenn ich Zeit hätte, Had I time. Wäre ich reich, *for*, Wenn ich reich wäre, Were I rich. Hat er die Mittel *for*, Wenn er die Mittel hat, If he has the means. Ist er zu Hause *for*, Wenn er zu Hause ist, *If he is* (or *he*) *at home*. Kommt er *for*, Wenn er kommt, If he comes. Kame er *for*, Wenn er käme, If he should come. Sollten Sie ihn sehen *for*, Wenn Sie ihn sehen sollten, Should you see him. *Farther:* Hätte ich auch (gleich, schon) Zeit, — *for*, Wenn ich auch (gleich, schon) Zeit hätte or, Ob ich auch (gleich, schon) Zeit hätte, Had I even time, Even had I time, Although I had time. Sehe ich auch (gleich, schon) keinen Grund zur Furcht, Although I see no reason for fear.

Note. It must be observed that the dependent clauses, inverted in the above manner, can be made to FOLLOW the main clause ONLY when they express a *condition merely assumed and implying the contrary*: as, Ich würde es thun, hätte ich Zeit, but NOT when the condition is *expected to be fulfilled*. Accordingly one CANNOT say: Geben Sie es ihm, kommt er, but must either use the dependent with wenn; Geben Sie es ihm, wenn er kommt, Give it him when he comes; or place the inverted dependent first: Kommt er, so geben Sie es ihm, If he comes give it to him.

b. The CONJUNCTION *so*. If the dependent clause THUS INVERTED (owing to the omission of the conjunction wenn *if* or of the first parts of wenn — auch, wenn — gleich, wenn — schon or ob — auch, ob — gleich, ob — schon all in the sense of *although*, *if even*) is placed first, the main clause, following it, is likewise inverted and almost invariably introduced by the particle *so* (sometimes dann) *then* which generally is not translated in English. In German this particle *so* is necessary because both clauses, being inverted might under certain circumstances be taken to be of the same character, BUT FOR THE *so*, which points out the main clause, expressing the inference; *e. g.* Hätte ich Geld,

hätte ich Freunde, might be taken for: *Had I money, had I friends* &c. &c. whilst, *Hätte ich Geld, so hätte ich Freunde*, unmistakably means: *If I had money then I should have friends*. The particle *so* is of particular importance to the reader, as it *assists him in making out the dependent* nature of the preceding clause, especially after a succession of inverted dependent clauses or when other clauses are inserted between these and the main clause; as, *Hätte ich Geld, hätte ich Freunde, hätte ich Einfluß, so könnte ich dir helfen, Had I money, had I friends, had I influence (then) I might help you*. Sieht dein Vater den Ernst, mit welchem du gestrebt hast, deine Situation zu verbessern, so wird er dir vergeben. *If your father sees the earnestness with which you have striven to better your situation (then) he will forgive you*.

In poetical diction the particle *so* is occasionally omitted; as, in Goethe's Tasso: — doch seh' ich näher an, was dieser Dichtung den innern Werth und ihre Würde giebt, erkenn' ich wohl, ich hab' es nur von Guch. *Yet, if I consider more strictly what lends intrinsic value and dignity to this poem I conceive indeed I find it only from you*.

The conjunction *so* is also used BEFORE THE PRINCIPAL clause in order to increase the force of the ANTITHESIS or to point out an INFERENCE, as, Obgleich ich es sah, so konnte ich es doch nicht hindern, *Although I saw it, (still) I could not hinder it*. Wenn du so weise bist, so hilf dir auch selbst, *If you are so wise (then) help yourself*. Weil (da) er nicht kommt, so müssen wir allein gehen, *As he does not come we must go alone*. — *so* is used very conveniently when other clauses are INSERTED between the condition and the inference; as, Wenn er mir das Buch leihen wollte, von dem Sie mir sagten, daß er es besitzt, so würde er mich sehr verbinden, *If he would lend me the book (of) which you told me (that) he possesses (it) he would oblige me very much*.

c. The INVERSION of the *dependent* clause owing to the omission of *ob whether*, *whether it was that* occurs in sentences like the following: *Hätte er nun die Mittel selbst oder waren sie ihm von einem Freunde gegeben worden, — kurz, er unternahm die Speculation. Whether it was that he had the means himself, or that they were given to him by a friend in short, he entered upon the speculation*. For constructions of this kind, the use of the conjunctions *nun* in the first and *oder*

in the second clause as also of the adverb *furz* in the inference is almost characteristic.

6. The NOMINATIVE PRECEDED by the object and by ADVERBS &c. placed after the verb.

a. In *short* clauses, PRINCIPAL OR DEPENDENT, the nominative stands even AFTER THE OBJECT when expressed by a personal pronoun; as, *Sieht uns der Vater?* Does the father see us? *Wenn uns der Vater sieht,* If the father sees us.

In *dependent* clauses which have for their nominative one of the indefinite substantive pronouns *Alles everything, Etwas something, Ir-
gend Etwas anything, Manches many a thing, Nichts nothing* and *Wenig few things*, THE OBJECT when expressed by a personal pronoun is always placed BEFORE that nominative, and also very frequently when expressed by a noun; as, *Weil ihn Alles (Etwas, Manches) beun-
ruhigt,* Because everything (something, many a thing &c.) troubles him. *Weil meinem Vater Alles (Manches, Nichts &c.) gefällt,* Because everything (many a thing, nothing &c.) pleases my father.

The same is done in *principal* clauses with the above nominatives when used *impersonally* with *es* (see p. 243); as, *Es gefällt meinem Vater hier Nichts.* Nothing here pleases my father.

b. In inverted principal sentences an ADVERB or adverbial expression is sometimes placed BEFORE THE NOMINATIVE; as, *Da kam plötzlich der Müller,* Then came suddenly the miller. *Ein Jahr darauf brach während der Nacht Feuer in dem Hause aus.* A twelvemonth after this fire broke out in the house during the night. This, however, can only be done when the nominative is not a personal pronoun.

C. THE MUTUAL POSITION OF THE DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTS and of these when expressed by PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

In arranging the objects in a clause, its nature as a direct main clause or as an inverted, or as a dependent clause must first be taken into account, and also the position of the adverb or adverbial expression (see D below) if any occur.

As already stated, p. 152, verbs conveying the idea of *giving or taking from, granting or refusing, as, to lend, to send, to present with, to show, to prove, to promise, to allow, to permit*, or in the negative, *to withhold from, to rob of, to conceal from, to deny to, to refuse, &c.*, usually require in German the party *to whom or from whom* (indirect object) in the dative, whilst the thing given, &c., or taken, &c. (direct object), stands in the accusative. e. g. *Ich gab meinem Freunde (dative) das Buch (accusative), I gave (to) my friend the book.*

As to the position of the object in general, the pupil has to study p. 241 FUND. PRINC. and INDIRECT SENTENCES according to which the object may assume very DIFFERENT POSITIONS and it must here be added that the position of the object may be farther AFFECTED by the STATEMENTS PRECEDING OR FOLLOWING the clause in which it occurs.

1. ONE OBJECT A PERSONAL PRONOUN.

Thus the object often is a personal pronoun when the thing or person which it represents has been NAMED in a preceding clause; as, *The book is not here; I gave it to your sister. Your sister was here; I gave her the book.* The personal pronoun, as *it, her*, then conveys nothing new to the mind, and being thus of least consequence is placed foremost in the clause so that it PRECEDES EVERYTHING, *except* the nominative and, in direct main clauses, the inflected part of the verb; as, *Ich gab es ihrer Schwester, I gave it to your sister. Ich gab ihm das Buch, I gave him the book.*

In *inverted and dependent* clauses the personal pronoun as the object IMMEDIATELY follows the nominative; as, *Daher gab ich es ihrer Schwester, Hence I gave it to your sister. Daß ich ihm das Buch gab, That I gave him the book.* . . .

2. BOTH OBJECTS PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The accusative of the personal pronoun as the object, precedes any other case of the personal pronoun, used as an object; as, *Du willst dich seiner (Gen.) entledigen, You want to rid yourself of him. Ich kann es ihr nicht geben, I cannot give it to her. Soll ich ihn dir vorstellen? Shall I introduce him to you? Er hat sie euch empfohlen, He has recommended her to you. Ich empfehle mich Ihnen, Good-bye.*

3. **Dies AND das.** The substantive demonstrative pronouns, *dies this* and *das that* as objects must, like the personal pronoun, precede every other element of the sentence except the nominative and, in direct main clauses, the inflected part of the verb; as, *Ich finde dies nicht in meinem Buche, I cannot find this in my*

book. *Ich hörte das neulich bei Ihnen, I heard that the other day at your house.*

But *dies* and *das* INVARIABLY FOLLOW THE PERSONAL pronouns used as objects; *Wer hat Ihnen dies gesagt? Who has told you this? Ich kann dich dem nicht aussetzen, I cannot expose you to that.*

4. BOTH OBJECTS NOUNS. Of these the one BEARING MOST DIRECTLY ON THE VERB, as expressing the main idea of the sentence, is placed SECOND. In ordinary statements this is the direct object in the accusative, because with verbs of *giving* the question naturally arising first is: *You gave what?* to which the object in the accusative is the reply and is hence placed SECOND, whilst the remoter question: *TO WHOM did you give?* is answered by the object in the dative which according to the general law must be placed earlier in the sentence; e. g. *Ich gab dem Manne das Buch, I gave to the man the book.*

When on the other hand the INDIRECT object is to be represented as the PRINCIPAL ITEM of the statement, it is made TO FOLLOW the accusative; as, *Ich gab das Buch diesem Manne, I gave the book to this man.*

5. If one of the objects is used WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE, it is invariably made TO FOLLOW the object used with the definite article or with any pronoun, because a noun introduced by the indefinite article always appears as a NEW ITEM to the mind of the hearer; and hence must be held to be of *primary* importance; e. g. *Ich gab dem Manne einen Thaler, I gave the man a dollar,* (the man is already known and the whole statement is made to shew ~~what you gave~~); *Ich gab den Thaler einem Manne, I gave the dollar to a man,* (here the dative *einem Manne* is placed second, because, the rest being already known, the statement is mainly made with a view to shew ~~to whom the dollar was given~~).

When both objects have the indefinite article, their position is decided by the greater importance attributed to one of them.

6. A SUCCEEDING RELATIVE CLAUSE

affecting the object. The relative pronoun causes the object to which it refers to FOLLOW any other object; as, *Ich gab das Buch dem Manne, der deinen Brief brachte, I gave the book to the man who brought your letter.* *Ich gab dem Manne das Buch, welches du mir geliehen hattest, I gave (to) the man the book which you had lent me.* *Ich will deinem Bruder ihn senden, dem er Alles vertrauen kann. I will send to your brother him to whom he can confide every thing.* *Ich nannte ihr dich, dessen sie sich nicht mehr erinnerte, I named (to) her you of whom she did not recollect.*

Such relative clauses, however, are not often allowed to interfere with the value of the object, and hence, when referring to the less important object, they are inserted immediately after it, thus leaving the principal item in its true position, nearer the end of the leading clause. This must be done at any rate when the latter object likewise stands as the Antecedent of a Relative; as, *Ich gab deiner Schwester, die mich darum bat, das Buch, welches wir neulich lasen. I gave to your sister, who asked me for it, the book which we read the other day; or ich gab das Buch, welches wir neulich lasen, deiner Schwester, die es zu sehen wünschte. I gave the book which we read the other day to your sister who wished to see it.*

NOTE. OBJECTS WITH THE FORCE OF SEPARABLE COMPONENTS OF THE VERB. Especially with the verbs *essen to eat, trinken to drink, spielen to play* and some others of a similar nature, the objects *eaten, drunk, played* &c. form a separable combination, which may often be expressed by one verb in English; as, *Mittag essen, to eat the mid-day's meal* stands for *to dine*; *Kaffee trinken* after the fashion of the Germans is equivalent to *to breakfast*; *Abendbrot essen, to eat the evening meal* is equivalent to *to sup (to take supper)*; *Karten spielen, to play at cards* may be expressed by *to gamble*; *Klavier spielen, to play the piano* simply by *to play*; *einen Walzer tanzen, to dance a waltz* by *waltzen, to waltz*. All such objects (*Mittag, Kaffee, Abendbrot, Karten, Walzer* &c.) and even others of similar verbs are treated like separable prefixes (see D below and compare also p. 172, SEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS &c.)

II. POSITION OF SEPARABLE PREFIXES AND OF ADVERBS OR ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS QUALIFYING THE VERB.

The **SEPARABLE PREFIX** (see pp. 29, B: 37, 3, 56; B: 172, 1 and 173, 2) has in every respect the character of an **ADVERB** from which it differs only in so far as it exercises *so forcible* a qualifying influence on the verb as to be actually joined to it when the verb is placed at the end:

1. If the verb stands at the *beginning* or in the *middle* of a sentence, the separable prefix, the adverb, &c., is placed *at the end of the clause*; as, Er geht mit seinem Bruder aus (from ausgehen), *He goes out with his brother.* Er wünscht dies nicht (ich, oft, manchmal), *He does not wish this, He wishes this very much.* He often (sometimes) wishes this. Er kam mit seinem Bruder nach Hause, *He came home with his brother.*

2. But if the verb or its principal part stands at the *END*, the separable prefix, the adverb, &c. immediately *precedes it*, the prefix being joined to the verb; as, Er ist mit seinem Bruder ausgegangen, *He is gone out with his brother.* Er will mit seinem Bruder ausgehen, *He will go out with his brother.* Ich sah, daß er mit seinem Bruder ausging, *I saw that he went out with his brother.* Er hatte dies nicht gewünscht, *He had not wished this.* Ich weiß, daß er dies nicht wünscht, *I know that he does not wish this.* Er ist mit seinem Bruder nach Hause gekommen, *He has come home with his brother.* Wenn er mit seinem Bruder nach Hause kommt, *If he comes home with his brother.*

3. Adverbs or adverbial expressions stating *WHEN* DEFINITELY, form exceptions to the above rule, being placed *as early as possible* in the sentence, *i. e.*, if the verb or its auxiliary stands in the *middle* of the sentence, the adverb of time is placed *immediately after it*; as, Ich sah gestern den Mann, *I saw the man yesterday.* Ich habe gestern den Mann gesehen, *I have seen the man yesterday.* Ich sprach gestern mit ihm; *I spoke with him yesterday;* but if the verb stands at the *BEGINNING* OR *END* of the sentence, the adverb of time is

placed IMMEDIATELY AFTER THE NOMINATIVE; as: Sprach er gestern mit dir? Did he speak with you yesterday? Weil er diesen Morgen mit dir sprach, Because he spoke with you this morning. Ich will morgen mit dir sprechen, I shall speak to you to-morrow. Sometimes, indeed, the adverb of time is placed after the object, but this should occur only when a particular importance is to be attached to the adverb; as: Ich sah den Mann gestern, I saw the man yesterday (and not at any other time). (See also p. 241, FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLE).

4. According to § 11 above, however, NO ADVERBIAL expression, &c., of this kind CAN PRECEDE a personal pronoun, or demonstrative used substantively, therefore: Ich sah ihn (dies) gestern, I saw him (this) yesterday; unless the pronoun is introduced by a preposition, and thus itself forms an adverbial expression, as: Ich sprach gestern mit ihm, I spoke with him yesterday. Now, if SEVERAL ADVERBS or adverbial expressions (not attributive, see p. 239 d, e) qualify the same verb, they are arranged entirely in accordance with the FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLE, p. 241. The adverb of TIME of importance in the statement is placed NEAREST THE END and is preceded by the others, so that the LEAST important is placed first. This leads to the arrangement of adverbs in the following order; 1st expression of TIME, 2^d of MANNER, 3^d of PLACE; in ordinary statements, that is in statements not made with a view to give prominence to a particular adverb, and not affected by the preceding or succeeding clause; as: y. Er ist heute noch nicht hier gewesen. He has not yet been here to-day. Ich habe sie gestern zuhause gesehen. I saw her at home yesterday. Ich habe sie gestern zuhause gefunden. I found her at home yesterday. In my great surprise, the verb is one expressing to reach, to fly, to stand, to open, to come, to go, to meet, &c. and especially to be, its close connection with the adverbial expression of place is marked by placing the adverb last or immediately before the verb itself, as: Ich habe sie gestern zuhause gefunden. I found her at home yesterday.

zu und kommen, *If you come to our house with your friend to-morrow.* (The order of the adverb is here as in many other cases exactly the reverse of the English according to p. 241).

c. Whenever PARTICULAR IMPORTANCE is to be given to any OTHER adverbial phrase, it must be brought NEAREST THE END; as, *Wenn Sie es heute nicht wünschen, will ich es Ihnen mit Vergnügen auch morgen schicken.* If you do not wish it to-day, I shall send it you with pleasure to-morrow. *Ich kann es beim besten Willen in diesem Augenblicke nicht thun,* I cannot do it at this moment with the best will.

6. a. The NEGATIVE *nicht* not and other adverbs of SUPREME importance *qualifying the verb*, are placed AT THE END unless the verb occupies that place, in which case *nicht* &c. is placed immediately before it; as, *Ich habe dein Buch nicht,* I have not your book. *Er kommt heute nicht,* He does not come to-day. (*Ich habe nicht dein Buch* does not deny the verb nor the having of the book, but merely expresses *The book which I have is not yours*). *Ich habe Ihren Bruder gestern zu meinem großen Bedauern nicht gesehen, und ich fürchte, ich werde ihn auch morgen nicht sehen.* I did not see your brother to my great regret yesterday and I fear I shall not even see him to-morrow.

The supreme importance of the adverb *nicht* appears from sentences like *Er thut solche Dinge nicht,* He does not do such things, which may involve the man's character and for which is a reply the simple negative so may be substantiated.

b. On the other hand *nicht* when not qualifying the VERB is placed before the element which it especially qualifies; as, *Er thut nicht nur solche, sondern auch andre Dinge,* He does not only such but even worse things. The verb *he does* is here not at all denied, but merely the attribute *only such*. In *Sie ist nicht alt,* She is not old, it is the predicate *old* which is denied by the preceding *nicht*, and not the verb *she is* (she exists), as in *To be or not to be,* *Ich bin aber nicht fein.*

c. The adverb *nicht* is generally placed not before adverbs of time, but after them. *Heute nicht,* Not to-day.

Setzt morgen nicht, Not even to-morrow. But it stands generally before adverbs of place from the reason stated above 5 b. *Er war gestern nicht dort, He was not there yesterday.*

It might seem as if in *Heute nicht, Not to-day.* *Nach morgen nicht, Not even to-morrow.* *Er kam gestern nicht, He did not come yesterday,* is the adverb of time, which is especially negated. If more closely examined, however it will appear that the negation after all affects the action, the idea of time being more or less premised.

d. *Nicht loses its negative force* as in English in exclamatory expressions of an interrogative form introduced by *Wie* How, (*Wann* When, *Wo* Where, *Was* What, *Wer* Who &c.); as, *Wie schön waren nicht jene Abende im Kreise treuer Freunde! How beautiful were not those evenings in the circle of true friends! Wie reich waren wir nicht an edeln Gütern, How rich were we not in noble goods.*

EXPOSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE, OR PARTICIPLE USED AS AN ATTRIBUTE, AND OF THE CLAUSES PERTAINING TO IT.

For the use of the Participle, (see Sect. XXV., p. 216).

Only when a particular emphasis is desired, and in poetry, participles or adjectives sometimes occur at the beginning of their clause; as, *Liegend unter grünen Bäumen, Lying beneath the green trees. Die Mutter, neu belebt von dieser Hoffnung, The mother revived by this hope. Ihre Züge, kalt und ruhig in ihrem gewöhnlichen Ausdrücke, gewannen einen besondern Reiz, wenn sie lächelte, Her features, cold and calm in their usual expression, gained a peculiar charm when she smiled.*

In participial clauses the Present and Past Participle are generally placed at the end; as, *Mit der Hand nach der Sonne deutend, Pointing with his hand towards the sun. Auf dem Wasser schwimmend, Swimming on the water. Aus ihrem Vaterlande verbannt, Banished from their country. In den Wäldern angesiedelt, Settled in the woods.*

But even when used attributively, such clauses are like simple adjectives or participles (e. g. *Das arme singende Kind, The poor singing child*), placed before

their noun (complement) unaltered in their arrangement, and so are all phrases pertaining to the adjective, whilst in English such clauses follow the noun, as, *Der noch nicht sehr alte Mann*, The man not yet very old, or who was not yet very old. *Das vom Sturm getriebene Schiff*, The vessel driven by the storm, or which was driven by the storm. *Die aus ihrem Vaterlande verbannten und in den Wäldern angeführten Männer*, The men banished from their country and settled in the woods.

(Here also the qualifying element is placed before the object qualified, this latter being the principal item in the clause and hence last).

Such clauses are often very complicated, more than one adjective being introduced, each with a separate clause; as, *Er erreichte seinen Zweck auf dem von seinem Bruder ihm gewiesenen Wege, indem er mit Energie und Talent verfolgte, was er erreicht hatte*, He reached his object by following the course entered upon previously with great success, and pursued with energy and talent by his brother, or still more extended, *Er erreichte seinen Zweck auf dem, bis dahin ungewöhnlichen, aber schon früher von seinem in London, dem damalsigen Mittelpunkt aller politischen Combinationen, lebenden Bruder mit diesem Glück betretenen und mit ebenso viel Talent als Energie verfolgten Wege*. He reached his object by following a course which had been unusual up to that time, but had been already entered on with great success, and pursued with equal talent and energy by his brother, who was resident in London, at that time the centre of all political combinations.

In sentences like this it is necessary first to ascertain the connexion between the article, the adjectives and the noun, which may be recognised by their agreement in case; here, *auf dem ungewöhnlichen*, betretenen und verfolgten Wege. Before this is done, none of the intermediate clauses should be entered upon. Such combinations are too common; yet not always avoidable in German. If introduced with judgment, they are well adapted to increase the force of speech, conveying to the mind a great complicity of ideas with a precision not otherwise attainable.

SECTION XXXI. — ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL.

A. THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

(This mood differs widely in its application from the English or French Subjunctive and only in some cases coincides with the Latin Subjunctive. Its formation has been given with the conjugation of the verb, Sect. XXI. p. 178.)

The true nature of the German Subjunctive has been by no means sufficiently explained. The author holds it to be a form of speech expressing deference to the judgment of the person to whom a statement is introduced in the form of an indirect quotation or to the consent of the person or being approached with a wish or prayer; and he thinks this view will be found to be justified by the explanation proffered below as quite essential to the correct use of this sometimes very significant form.

The usual application of the Subjunctive in the IMPERFECT and PLUPERFECT is explained under B. THE CONDITIONAL.

1. THE SUBJ. PRES. IN INDIRECT QUOTATIONS. The Subjunctive occurs chiefly in (dependent) clauses containing an INDIRECT QUOTATION; as, Er sagt, daß er ein Fremder sei. *He says that he is a stranger;* Sie denkt, daß er sie getäuscht habe. *She thinks that he has deceived her;* Sie fragten, ob sie kommen dürften. *They asked whether they were permitted to come;* but also with daß omitted; Er sagt, er sei ein Fremder. *He says he is a stranger.* (See *a*. below).

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE is very generally employed instead of the English *Past*, and on the same grounds the Perfect Subjunctive instead of the Pluperfect; as, Sie sagte, sie habe Grund zu fürchten. *She said she had reason to fear it.* Er träumte, daß er nach Hause gekommen sei. *He dreamt that he had come home.*

* It may at least be doubted whether this extensive use of the Present Subjunctive instead of the Imperfect Subjunctive, and of the Perfect Subjunctive for the Pluperfect Subjunctive, justifies some modern grammarians in maintaining that there is no Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive in German at all. These tenses are very freely used in

It appears that the Germans make indirect quotations precisely in the tense used by the person whose speech is reported.

This being generally the PRESENT, PERFECT OR FIRST FUTURE, explains the predominance of these tenses in reported speech. The English on the other hand adhere to a more mechanical sequence of the tenses, following up the Present by a Present and the Past by a Past, saying e. g. *He says he is*, but *He said he was*. *She says she has*, but *She said she had*. *They say they will*, but *They said they would*, EVEN WHERE NO PAST IS EMPLOYED AT ALL.

A person, for instance, sent out to inquire into the condition of a poor woman still standing in the street would, if asked in the Present, '*What does she say?*' report in the Present, '*She says, she is the mother of the child, she has no husband and can procure no bread.*' But the same still present circumstances would be reported in the Past, if the question were by mere accident put in the Past; as, '*What did she say? She said she was the mother of the child, had no husband and could procure no bread.*' In the same manner: '*The professor said, the sun was a luminous body*' or '*He says he would come to-morrow.*' In all such cases the Germans whether introducing the indirect quotation by a Present or by a Past would employ the tense actually used in the speech quoted, but put it in the Subjunctive; as, *Sie sagt*, or *sie sagte*, *sie sei die Mutter des Kindes und könne kein Brod schaffen*. Der Professor sagte, die Sonne sei ein leuchtender Körper. Er sagt (or sagte), er werde morgen nicht kommen.

This use of the Present, Perfect and Future tenses

common conversation and may be met with on almost every page of the writings of the celebrated grammarians, Gebrüder Grimm, and many other authors. Besides, the logical difference between sentences like *Ich glaube*, *du wollest es so*, I have been believing that you wished it so, and *Ich glaubte*, *du wollest es so*, I believed that you (then, at that time) wished it so, certainly warrants the preserving of the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive. (See also below, on the Conditional).

is DEPARTED FROM, only for the sake of distinctly marking the nature of the sentence as an indirect quotation; in all cases where the INDICATIVE and SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS of the Present &c. would be ALIKE, as for instance in the first person Sing. Indicative *ich habe*, Subjunctive *ich hätte*. Indicative *ich finde*, Subjunctive *ich finde*. Indicative *ich werde*, Subjunctive *ich werde*; and in the same way in the 2^d person Sing. and Plur. with the euphonic *e* (see p. 176. The insertion of the *e*) and in the 1st and 3^d person Plur. of the Present. *Wir* or *sie haben*, *finden*, *werden* &c. Then the form of the Imperfect Subjunctive must be adopted; as, *Ich sagte dir, ich hätte es nicht gesehen*, I told you I had not seen it. *Sie sagen, sie fänden keinen Unterschied*, They say they did not find a difference. *Ich hoffte, ich würde Sie finden*, I hoped I would find you.

g. The Subjunctive renders the conjunction *daß* SUPERNUTU, and then the dependent assumes the form of a PRINCIPAL clause; as, *Er sagt, er sei ein Fremder*, He says that he is a stranger. *Sie denkt, er habe sie getäuscht*, She thinks he has deceived her.

h. The conjunction *ob*, *if*, *whether*, is dropped in elliptical clauses like *Erkenn so oder nicht*, Whether that may be so or not. *Wie denn auch sei* and *Bei demman, wie ihm wolle*, Be that as it may. *Werde was da wolle*, *Geschehe was da wolle*, Come what may.

If a dependent clause, introduced by *als ob*, as if, thus assumes the form of a principal clause, *ob* only is dropped; as, *Er thut, als ob er reich sei*, He acts as if he were rich, rendered as an inverted clause, *Er thut, als sei er reich*.

i. The conjunction *denn* when used in the sense of *unless* (see p. 234) requires the Subjunctive both in its own and in the object clause; *Es sei denn, daß er es bringe*, Unless he bring it. *Er kommt denn und bittet seinen Vater*, Except he come and ask his father.

d. Such is the force of the mere Subjunctive, that the principal clause introducing the indirect quotation, as he said, thought, believed, is often altogether omitted; as, *Er machte sie auf den für Frankreich höchst nachtheiligen Unterschied aufmerksam, der zwischen den drei Ländern obwalte*. He called their attention to the difference, most prejudicial to France, which (he said, or was of opinion) existed between the three countries. *England und selbst Holland seien geschlossene Landschaften, denen man nur zur See beikommen könne, wo, doch ihre Macht am größten sei*. England, and even Holland (said he), were waterlocked countries, assailable only by sea, where their power was greatest. — *Ranke, Französische Geschichte*.

2. The SUBJ. AFTER AN IMPERATIVE OR WISH IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. The Subjunctive occurs also in *dependent* clauses, the main clause of which has the verb in the *imperative*, or expresses a wish, entreaty, warning or solemn exhortation, the dependent clause being introduced by one of the conjunctions *und daß* or simply *daß* or *damit*, expressing purpose (*in order that*), or *on daß nicht*, *lest*. In such cases the German Subjunctive is generally rendered in English by the *auxiliary* verb *OF MOOD may*, for which *möge* in the Subjunctive is likewise frequently put; as, *Bitte, du, o Gott, diesen unsern Herrn, daß er dir getreu lich diene*, (or *dienen möge*), *I lead thou, o Lord, this our friend, that he may faithfully serve thee*. *Halte ihn, daß er nicht fällt*, or *fallen möge*, *Hold him lest he fall*. *Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß es dir wohlgehe und du lange lebest auf Erden*, *Honour thy father and thy mother, that it may be well with thee and that thy days may be long upon earth*. (See 6 below).

3. The SIMPLE SUBJUNCTIVE must be used in sentences like *My mother wishes that you should go*. *Meine Mutter wünscht, daß du gehst*.

4. *Damit*, *daß* and *um zu*, in *order that* (expressing purpose) have the Subjunctive even where the wish, &c., is merely implied in the main clause; as, *Ich thue es, damit man es sehe*, *I do it in order that it may be seen*. *Er ging, um zu sehen, ob es wahr sei*, *He went to see whether it was true*.

5. It must be observed that the *auxiliary* *mögen* stands in the Indicative in principal clauses expressing a possibility, as *Es mag sein*, *It may be*. *Er möchte es gesehen haben*, *He had likely seen it*. This proves how unsatisfactory is the common explanation of the Subjunctive as expressing the mere possibility of a fact.

6. 3. The SUBJ. IN MAIN CLAUSES EXPRESSING A WISH, PRAYER &c. The Subjunctive occurs also in principal sentences expressing a wish, prayer, &c., which may be considered as contractions or elliptical forms of such compound sentences as those stated 2 above. Here it coincides in form with the IMPERATIVE; as, *Es gehe dir wohl*, *May it fare well with thee*.

Ich I pray, wish &c., that it may fare well with thee.
 Erhe or sich vor, May he take care, i. e., I warn, com-
 mand him, to, take care. Wäge or lemmen, Let him
 come.

EXPLANATION. That its difficult application may be fully understood, the Subjunctive in indirect quotations may be considered as a form peculiar to the genius of the German language, by which a certain **RESERVE** on the part of the speaker as to the **REALITY** of a statement quoted indirectly is expressed; and by which at the same time it is left to the judgment of the party to whom such a statement is addressed, whether or not it is to be adopted as a reality. The more or less this sentiment prevails, the more or less *strictly* the Subjunctive is employed.

Thus in stating *Er sagt, er sei gefallen*, He says he has fallen, the speaker indicates by the Subjunctive of the indirect quotation *er sei gefallen*, not only that he merely tells what he has been told, with a reserve as to whether he himself considers it a reality or not, and leaves it to the party addressed whether or not this statement is to be believed; and the other hand, if *ist*, or *ist gefallen* is used, if the speaker considers the statement as true.

7. **4. THE INDICATIVE IN THE SPEAKER'S STATEMENT OF HIS PRESENT VIEWS; TRANSFERRED TO INDIRECT QUOTATIONS.** As the person speaking does not quote *indirectly* his own ~~own~~ statements, views, &c., the Subjunctive is not used if the principal clause has the verb in the first PERSON SINGULAR OR PLURAL OF THE PRESENT TENSE (see, however, below, §). The speaker, in fact, is not allowed to express any reserve as to what he at present states, thinks, believes, &c., (because doing so would show a want of frankness and hence of reference). Hence the verb of the dependent clause stands in the INDICATIVE, and hence also this INDICATIVE MAY BE TRANSFERRED EVEN to the verb of a dependent clause quoting *indirectly* other statements, views, &c. of others, if the speaker *plainly* expresses that he himself ADOPTS THEM AS BELIEVED. Thus *Er sagt selbst, das er gefallen ist*, He himself

says (as is also my belief) that he has fallen. *Mein Freund glaubt auch, daß diese Nachricht falsch ist.* My friend also (like me) believes that this news is false.

In this regard the use of the Indicative becomes a MATTER OF SENTIMENT AND GOOD TASTE. The speaker *e. g.* would naturally adopt as absolute reality (and hence not to be deferred to the judgment of the person to whom he communicates them) the statements of his own father, mother and of persons similarly revered, although he may quote them indirectly; as, *Mein Vater sagt, er hat es gesehen.* My father says he has seen it. *Meine Mutter schreibt mir, daß sie wohl ist.* My mother writes me that she is better; and in the same manner when a statement as an indirect quotation is repeated to the person who made that statement, the Subjunctive would be avoided unless some doubt as to its reality were to be implied. Compare *Lieber Freund, du schreibst mir, daß du in Noth bist, weil du Unglück gehabt hast. Kann ich dir helfen?* Dear friend you write me that you are in need, because you have had misfortunes. Can I help you? *weil Du schreibst zwar, du seiest in Noth, weil du Unglück gehabt habest; aber ich fürchte, du bist wie gewöhnlich durch deine Schuld in Noth.* You write indeed, that you are in need because you have had misfortunes; yet I fear you are as usual in need by your own fault.

Indirect quotations like the above introduced by the PAST TENSE, *My father said &c., you wrote &c.*, are however generally made in the SUBJUNCTIVE; the Past having a modifying effect.

5. The SUBJ. IN THE SPEAKER'S VIEWS AS HELD IN TIME PAST. The Subjunctive accordingly is ALSO USED, if the speaker states what HE HIMSELF said, thought, believed, &c., IN TIME PAST. For here the reasons for the Subjunctive are the same as in indirect quotations; as, *Ich dachte die Nachricht sei falsch.* I thought the news was false. *Wir glaubten, Sie wären gekommen.* We believed you had come.

6. The SUBJ. IN THE SPEAKER'S OWN WISH, PRAYER &c. As stated above (2), the Subjunctive stands in dependent clauses, the principal clause of which contains a WISH, PRAYER, &c. Here, again, the Subjunctive expresses that the fulfilment or realization of the wish, request, &c., is deferred to the judgment or will of the person or being under whose control it

stands; and if this sentiment is to be indicated to a certain degree, the Subjunctive in the dependent clause may be used *after a principal clause*, the verb of which stands in the FIRST PERSON SINGULAR OR PLURAL OF THE PRESENT TENSE; as, *Ich wünsche, daß er gehe*, I wish that he may go. *Wir bitten, o Herr, du wollest deinen Ergen geben*, We beseech thee, O Lord; to grant thy blessing.

7. The SUBJ. NOT USED AFTER VERBS EXPRESSING ABSOLUTE REALITY OR DOUBT.

It is evident from the above explanations, that verbs EXPRESSING ABSOLUTE REALITY OR ABSOLUTE DOUBT, as *wissen to know*, *bekräftigen to confirm*, *beweisen to prove*, *zweifeln to doubt*, *vermuthen to guess*, although introducing an indirect quotation, CANNOT be followed by the subjunctive; as, *Er weiß, daß es recht ist*, *He knows that it is right*, *Er vermuthet, daß sie ihn gesehen hat*, *He suspects that she has seen him*.

A DIRECT QUESTION is in itself an expression of deference to the judgment of the person asked and hence is followed by the Indicative; as, *Glaubst du, daß er kommen wird?* Do you believe that he will come? (*Glaubst du, daß er kommen würde* is bad grammar).

B. THE CONDITIONAL.

1. The IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE DEPENDENT CLAUSE. If a *dependent clause* contains a CONDITION merely assumed and IMPLYING THE CONTRARY, its verb stands as in English in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive; as, *wenn ich wäre*, if I were; *wenn ich hätte*, if I had; *wenn ich gehabt hätte*, if I had had.

With a condition, NOT conceived as CONTRARY TO REALITY NOT as unlikely to be fulfilled, the Indicative is used; as, *Sage es ihm, wenn er kommt*, Tell it him if he comes. *Ich will es ihm sagen, wenn er kommen sollte*, I will tell it him if he should come. (See also p. 270, NB, 2^d paragraph).

2. The CONDITIONAL IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. At the same time the verb of the main clause, express-

sing the ~~conditional~~ **conditional**, stands in the Conditional or **Conditional Past**; as, *Wenn ich nicht unwohl wäre, könnte ich mit dir gehen*; IF I were not unwell I would go with you, (the reality is I am unwell, and therefore I do not go). *Wenn ich Wein gehabt hätte, würde ich etwas kauft haben*, IF I had had wine I should have drunk some, (the reality is I had no wine, and therefore I did not drink any).

The **FULL FORM OF THE CONDITIONAL** consists of the Infinitive present or of the Infinitive past, conjugated with the Auxiliary *ich würde* (Imperf. Subj. of *werden*. — See pp. 204 and 206).

3. The **CONDITIONAL OCCURS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES**, when the sentence expressing the contingency is itself introduced as a dependent part in a compound sentence; as, *Ich sagte, daß ich es thun würde, wenn ich bessere Gründe dafür hätte*, I said that I should do it, if I had better reasons for it.

a. Sometimes the Conditional, is used if the fulfilment of the condition is merely doubtful and not likely to take place; as, *Er scheint nicht zu kommen, aber wenn er käme, würde ich gehen*, He seems not to come, but if he should come I would go.

b. Clauses expressing the condition are introduced not only by *wenn* if, but also by the conjunctions *wenn gleich*, *wenn auch*, *wenn schon* and *ob auch*, *obgleich*, *ob schon*, meaning *though*, *although*, *if even*; as, *Wenngleich ich es hätte* or *Wenn ich es gleich hätte, würde ich es dir nicht geben*, (the same); *Obgleich ich es gleich hätte, so würde ich es dir doch nicht geben*, Although I had it I would not give it you.

c. The **CONDITION** is sometimes expressed by the Infinitive with *zu* to, or with *um zu* in order to; as, *Um es zu erreichen, würde ich gehen*, In order to, avoid it I should go.

d. The **CONDITION** is often merely, understood; as, *Gute kommen Sie; meine Mutter würde sich freuen, Sie zu sehen*, Pray, come; My mother would be glad to see you (viz.) if you came; *Welches Buch würden Sie wählen?* Which book would you choose? (suppose you had the choice). *Was würden Sie an meiner Stelle thun?* What would you do in my place? (i. e. if you were in my place).

NB. It will be observed therefore, that the English *I would, I should, &c.*, corresponds to the German Conditional only in the cases defined above, namely

where a condition CONTRARY TO REALITY, or at least doubtful, is expressed or understood. Compare *Er würde kommen, wenn seine Mutter besser wäre*, He would come if his mother were better (as she is not better he does not come) to *Er sagt, er würde kommen* (indirect quotation) *wenn seine Mutter besser sei*, He says he will come if his mother be better (which is possible enough). The latter (or *wäre* form) is merely the Future Subjunctive, (see p. 264. 1).

The PAST of the Auxiliary *I will*, *I would* (*ich würde* &c., and of *I shall*, *I should* (*ich sollte* &c., is likewise NOT TO BE CONFUSED with the Conditional; as, *Ich sah ihn, aber er wollte es nicht thun*, I asked him, but he would not do it (was not inclined to do it). *Ich sollte gehen, aber ich wollte nicht*, I was to go, but I would not (was not inclined).

Nor must *I should* and *I would* &c. in the DEPENDENT clause expressing the hypothetical condition be translated by *ich would be*. In most cases the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive of the main verb, see above 1, suffices; as, *Ich wäre mir lieb, wenn Sie es sähen*, I should be glad if you should find. But *sollen* also is employed as an Auxiliary to the verb in order to strengthen the expression of improbability, and with WEAK verbs when an ambiguity might arise from their being alike in the Imperfect Indicative and Subjunctive; as, *Wenn Sie es finden sollten*, If you should find it. *Wenn er sagen sollte*, If he should say (which is more distinct than *Wenn er sagte*, both *If he said* and *Whenever he said*). The Auxiliary *wollen* is used only where INCLINATION is implied; as, *Wenn ich es thun wollte*, If I chose to do it. *Wenn Sie so gut sein wollten*, If you would be so kind.

4. THE IMP. AND PLUPERF. SUBJ. FOR THE CONDITIONAL PRESENT AND PAST. In English the Conditional *It would be* may be expressed by the simple Past Subjunctive *it were*, i. e. the AUXILIARY *would* is OMITTED and its strength given to the INFINITIVE *be* by making that Infinitive a Past Sub-

junctive. In the same manner, in German, the Conditional, not only of the verb *sein* but of ANY OTHER VERB, may be expressed by the simple Imperfect Subjunctive; and farther the Conditional Past by the Pluperfect Subjunctive. In other words the Past Subjunctive *ich würde* (see p. 200) is omitted and the Infinitive changed into the Past Subjunctive*; as, *Es würde besser sein*, *It would be better*, short form, *Es wäre besser*, *It were better*. CONDITIONAL PAST, *Es würde besser gewesen sein*, short form, *Es wäre besser gewesen*, *It would have been better*. *Ich würde einen Freund haben*, short form, *Ich hätte einen Freund*, *I should have a friend*. COND. PAST, *Ich würde Zeit gehabt haben*, short form, *Ich hätte Zeit gehabt*, *I should have had time*. *Ich würde es finden*, short form, *Ich fände es*, *I should find it*. COND. PAST, *Ich würde es gefunden haben*, short form, *Ich hätte es gefunden*, *I should have found it*.

Passive voice, CONDITIONAL PAST, *Ich würde gefunden werden sein*, short form, *Ich wäre gefunden worden*, *I should have been found*. The first Conditional is generally given in full, *Ich würde gefunden werden*, *I should be found*.

As this use of the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive is uncommon in English, except in the one instance *I were for I would be*, particular attention must be paid to it, more especially if the dependent clause occurs in the form of an inverted sentence (see p. 251 5 q &c.); as, *Hätte ich das Buch*, *so liehe ich es dir*. If I had the book I would lend it to you; *Brächte er mir die Einwilligung meines Vaters*, *so wäre Alles abgemacht*. If he should bring me the consent of my father, all would be settled.

Rare but remarkable is the substitution of the IMPERFECT INDICATIVE for the Conditional Past, the dependent clause having the verb likewise in the Imperfect;

* Historically, the use of the Past as Conditional has preceded that of the full form *ich würde sein* (see p. 209, footnote). The above arrangement refers to the Present use, and by attaching itself to the terms of English grammar, greatly helps to facilitate the use of the Conditional and so prevent confusion (See the end of the Section).

ah, Wenn er kam; ging ich or *Kam er; so ging ich*, If he had come, I would have gone (see p. 208, 2 b).

a. As the *Imperf. Subjunctive* in WEAK VERBS is like the Imperfect Indicative, THE FULL FORM of the Conditional, *ich würde &c.*, *I would &c.*, may be PREFERRED where an ambiguity would arise from the use of the former; as, *Sie würden fremdes Verdienst ehren, wenn sie selbst Verdienst besäßen*, rather than *Sie ehren fremdes Verdienst*, &c., They would honour the merits of others, if they possessed merit themselves.

b. So called OPTATIVE CLAUSES are either dependent clauses expressing a supposition and INVERTED owing to the omission of *wenn* if, whilst the contingency is understood; as, *Käme er doch!* for *Wenn er doch käme!* *If he would only come!* (Contingency understood. *How glad I should be!*) Or they express the CONTINGENCY with the condition understood, *O! daß du nicht so von mir gehst!* *Oh! that thou wouldst not go from me thus!*

Of the latter nature are also exclamations in INTERROGATIVE form like, *Wie, Sie hätten ihn gesehen?* How, you don't mean to say you have seen him? (i. e. If this were truth, I should understand that you had seen him?) *Dies wäre Ihre Schwester?* Am I to understand that this is your sister?

c. *Conditional of deference*: Like the phrases, *I should like, I should think*, in English, the Conditionals *ich möchte, ich wünschte, ich dürfte &c.*, are used where a certain deference is to be expressed, and may be explained by a condition understood; as, *Ich wünschte, Sie könnten mir Gehör*, I (should) wish (*viz.*, if it were not too bold) you would grant me a hearing. *Ich dürfte, wir machten es besser so*, I should think (*viz.*, if my opinion were of some value) we might do it better this way.

These phrases cause the verb in the clause EXPRESSING THE OBJECT of the wish, thought &c. to be *likewise* in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive; as, *Ich wünschte, Sie kämen* (or *Sie wären gekommen*). I (should) wish you would come (or you had come). *Ich dürfte, Sie gäben es mir*, I (should) think you might give it to me. *Ich möchte, du gingest*, I should like you to go. Notice: *Ich wüßte nicht*, or, *Nicht, daß ich wüßte*, Not that I know of, Not to my knowledge.

The above SHORT FORMS of the Conditional do NOT actually imply a contrary proposition (*I should think*, rather means *I do think*). THE FULL FORM *Ich würde wünschen, ich würde denken &c.* on the other hand would be exclusively used where the reality is, I do not wish, I do not think.

d. *I MIGHT, I OUGHT* and sometimes *ich möchte* and *ich sollte* or *würde* are Conditionals with a Conditional understood. They may be resolved into *ich würde können* or *dürfen* I would be able or permitted (if I liked) and *ich würde sollen* or *müssen*, it should be my duty to, I would be compelled to (see p. 194, IMPERF. SUBJ.)

In the same manner are the PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVES (see p. 195) *ich hätte können, mögen* or *dürfen* *I might have* and *ich hätte sollen* or

müssen I ought to have, Conditionals Past, and require to be explained in the following manner:—

Ich hätte es thun können, I might have done it (if I had liked) is to be resolved thus 1. Ich hätte short form for ich würde haben I should or would have. 2. thun to do (main Infinitive). 3. können (Past Participle in Infinitive form), been able; accordingly I should have been able to do it.

Ich hätte es thun sollen (if I had rightly considered it), it would have been my duty to do it, resolved thus, 1. Ich hätte short form for ich würde haben, it (I) would have, 2. thun to do (main Infinitive), sollen (Past Participle in the Infinitive form) been (my) duty.

Ich hätte müssen is often used as a strong expression for Ich hätte sollen I ought to have; but it often occurs in the sense of I would have been compelled to. It is incorrect to translate I ought to have by ich sollte haben or ich müßte haben. The former ought to be used in the sense of I was said to have (see p. 193, 6 c). The latter in the sense of it must be that I have, unless it be that I have; as, Ich müßte es geträumt haben, It must be that I have dreamt it.

e. Notice the idioms, Dann sagte sie wohl. (Then she would say (used to say)). Wenn ein Unglück geschehen war, ging er wohl selbst von Haus zu Haus und sammelte für die Leidenden. When a misfortune had happened he would himself go from house to house and collect for the sufferers. Would in this sense is also translated by pflegte; as, Then my father would smile, Dann pflegte mein Vater zu lächeln.

Concluding remark.

The French language distinguishes between the *Imparf. Subj. si j'avais*, and the *Conditional j'aurais*, the English between the Past Subjunctive *if I had* and the Conditional *I should have*, and in the same manner the German, although originally possessing only a Preterite (*hätte*) for both forms (see p. 209, footnote) yet, impelled by this modern tendency to mark the logical distinction between CONDITION and CONTINGENCY, has developed; exclusively for the latter and NOT TRANSFERABLE to the former, the compound form *ich würde haben*.

This analogy in the French, English and German with the striking advantages it affords to the English pupil should in itself have furnished sufficient reason for retaining the terms of the older grammarians, viz. Wenn ich hätte the Imperfect Subjunctive, ich würde haben the Conditional.

The fact however, that the German language by dint of the greater versatility of its construction has PRESERVED to a great extent the use of the simple form *ich hätte* for the contingency also (e. g. Wenn er Geld hätte. hätte er mehr Einfluß, If he had money he would have more influence) has led to a new arrangement by which 1st the distinction between the condition and the contingency has been destroyed, the verb in both clauses being called the Conditional, and 2^d a distinction between the simple tense *ich hätte* as a Present Conditional and the compound tense *ich würde haben*, as a Conditional Future has been introduced. Although Becker yielded to this formalism in his *Schul-*

grammatik, he has in his *Ausführliche Grammatik* given such qualifying explanations with regard to this point (especially in § 222 which entirely bears out the author's views) that no writer of a German grammar for the English at all conscious of the nature of his task could have adopted the modern arrangement. Nevertheless this has been done in some rather literal translations of the *Schulgrammatik*; the practice in English grammar, decidedly preferable in this point, has been utterly disregarded and the pupil is now taught not only that there is no difference between *if I had* and *I should have*, but even that, *Dann säße ich morgen bei meinen Freunden, Then I should sit to-morrow with my friends*, is a PRESENT and, *Dann würde ich noch bei meinen Freunden sitzen, Then I should still be sitting with my friends*, is a FUTURE; or he is at least induced to believe, that, contrary to the usage of all German authors, a distinction between a Conditional Present and Future ought to be made, whereas the very nature of a mere supposition forbids such a distinction. By simply adhering, as the author does, to the clear and practical arrangement of English grammar the whole of this embarrassing complication is avoided and the only thing remaining to be done is to explain that the use of the Preterite, as a Conditional is a relic of the ancient period of the language when still limited in its tenses.

SECTION XXXII. — REMARKS ON GERMAN METRE.

The German language admits of the formation of all kinds of metres, and its abundance in semi-accented and unaccented syllables greatly facilitates the faithful reproduction of all the varieties of metrical construction in use among the ancients. Without entering into the subject in detail, the following short hints will enable the student to read German poetry with the proper accent:—

As far as the metre is concerned, syllables are either long (—), short (—), or doubtful (≡). The root-syllables and accented prefixes are long, as, *Väter, Gevätter, ausgeht, Unfall*. Unaccented prefixes and suffixes, and the article in its monosyllabic forms, are short, as, *dér, Gévattér, liebéndér*. Semi-accented suffixes, monosyllabic prepositions, adverbs, conjunctions, &c., and the monosyllabic forms of the pronouns and of the auxiliary verbs *haben, sein*, and *werden*, are doubtful; they may be used as long, chiefly when placed between short

syllables, or as equivalent to two short syllables in the same foot; or they may be used as short, with long or doubtful syllables; as, *dōch zu lieblich wār mein Traum*.

A combination of long and short syllables, which is regularly repeated in the same line or verse, is called a *foot*. The metre is *Iambic* if each foot consists of two syllables, the first short, the second long, as in Schiller's *Don Carlos*:

— — | — — | — — | — — | — —
 Ist mei = neu I = de = al nicht reif. Ich lebe,
 Ein Bür = ger De = rer, wel = che sein = men werden.

The metre is *Trochaic* if each foot consists of two syllables, the first long, the second short, as,

— — | — — | — — | — —
 Bil = de Künstler, re = de nicht;
 Nur ein Hauch sei dein Ge = dicht. — Goethe.

In *Iambic* and *Trochaic* metres occur rhymes either of one long syllable, which is called *Male*, as in the above quotation from Goethe, or of a long and short, which is called *Female*, as *Herzen* rhyming with *Schmerzen*.

The metre is *Dactylic* if each foot consists of three syllables, the first long, and the two others short. The principal verse in this metre is the *Hexameter*, consisting of six *Dactylic* feet, into which, however, to avoid monotony, occasionally a foot of two syllables (a *Spondee* — —), or even, in lieu of it, a *Trochaic* foot is inserted. Such is always the case in the sixth or last foot of the line; yet it must not be in the fifth, which remains a regular *Dactyl*, to preserve the character of the verse. Besides, the third foot must be formed of the syllables of two different words, in order to produce a kind of rest (caesural pause); and if this cannot be done in the third, it must be done both in the second and fourth feet; as,

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
 Gütig mit Donner-ge = pol-ter ent = roll te der tüdliche Mar = mor.
 — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
 Sechzehn handbreit ragten, em = por am Haupte die Hörner.
Voss's Homer.

To begin the Hexameter with a short syllable is no improvement. A particularly fine effect is produced by combining Hexameter and Pentameter; which latter metre consists of five Dactylic feet, or, properly speaking, of twice two and a half (— — — | — — — | —). This metre is called the Elegiac, in larger poems like Schiller's *Spaziergang*, or Goethe's *Euphrosyne*; but it is commonly termed the Distichon in short epigrammatic compositions:

Groß-britannien und Deutschland.

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
 — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
 Großes gabst du der Welt; es danken die fernsten Re-gionen
 Deiner be = flü = gel = ten Kraft Glauben. Ge = sit = tung und Recht.
 Doch auch, was Gutes ge = wirkt der be = scheidern ger = manischen Schwester
 Denken, Wissen und Kunst, ehre ein lobender Spruch.
H. Weisse.

DÜBEN, PRINTED BY W. STEINMÜLLER.



DÜBEN, PRINTED BY W. STEINMÜLLER.

